This is a reproduction of a library book that was digitized by Google as part of an ongoing effort to preserve the information in books and make it universally accessible.

Google™ books

https://books.google.com

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Photographed by W. & D. Downey, Ebury St., London.

Digitized by Google

By Authority.

FIELD-MARSHAL HIS ROYAL HIGHNESS ARTHUR, DUKE OF CONNAUGHT AND

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

WITH THE SANCTION OF THE ARMY COUNCIL.
UNDER THE DIRECTION OF
FIELD-MARSHAL EARL HAIG, K.T., G.C.B., ETC. (COLONEL ROYAL HORSE GUARDS AND 17TH LANCERS),
LIEUT.-GENERAL SIR R. S. S. BADEN-POWELL, BT., K.C.B., K.C.V.O., ETC. (COLONEL 13TH HUSSARS),
LIEUT.-GENERAL SIR P. W. CHETWODE, BT., K.C.B., K.C.M.G., D.S.O.,
COLONEL COMMANDANT A. E. W. HARMAN, C.B., D.S.O.,
LIEUT.-COLONEL SIR A. LEETHAM, KT., C.M.G., F.S.A.

Vol. XII

JANUARY to OCTOBER

Published at
ROYAL UNITED SERVICE INSTITUTION, WHITEHALL, S.W.1
LONDON
1922.

Digitized by Google

UE 1
C3
v.12

HONORARY EDITORS AND SUB-EDITORS.

Managing Editor:

Major-General Sir N. M. SMYTH, V.C., K.C.B. (Colonel 3rd Dragoon Guards).

Editor:

The Commandant and Staff of the Equitation School, Weedon.

Sporting Editor:

Lieut.-Colonel T. B. PHILLIPS, O.B.E. (late 13th Hussars).

Sub-Editors:

Royal Horse and Royal Field Artillery.—Lieut.-Colonel WILFRID JELF, C.M.G., D.S.O., Royal Horse Artillery.

Yeomanry.—Lieut.-Colonel F. H. D. C. WHITMORE, C.M.G., D.S.O., T.D., Essex Yeomanry.

Tank Corps.—Bt.-Lieut.-Colonel W. D. CROFT, C.M.G., D.S.O., 2nd Tank Battalion.

Royal Air Force.—Squadron Leader W. R. READ, M.C., D.F.C., A.F.C., R.A.F. (late King's Dragoon Guards).

Australia.—Lieut.-Colonel W. J. FOSTER, C.B., C.M.G., D.S.O., Department of Defence, Melbourne, Victoria.

Canada.—Brigadier-General R. W. PATERSON, C.M.G., D.S.O. (Fort Garry Horse).

Egypt.—Colonel-Commandant A. LAWSON, C.M.G.

India.—The Commandant Cavalry School Saugor.

New Zealand.—Lieut.-Colonel G. C. POWLES, C.M.G., D.S.O., N.Z. Staff Corps, Wellington.

South Africa.—Major N. H. M. BURNE, C.M.G., D.S.O., S.A. Mounted Rifles, Department of Defence, Pretoria.

Sudan.—Lieut.-Colonel GOUGH COBDEN, C.B.E., Commanding Egyptian Army Cavalry and Mounted Infantry.

Published at

THE ROYAL UNITED SERVICE INSTITUTION, WHITEHALL, S.W.1.

Director of Publicity:

C. GILBERT-WOOD, F.R.G.S., F.R.S.A., M.J.I., ETC.,
11, Red Lion Square, W.C.1.

Printers:

EYRE and SPOTTISWOODE, LTD., East Harding Street, E.C.4.

Digitized by Google

INDEX

Arkansas: Carrying the Pistol, 59
Arthur, Captain Sir George, Bart., M.V.O: Field-Marshal H.R.H., Arthur, Duke of Connaught and Strathearn, 1

Beadle, J. P.: Picture of the Charge at El Mughar, 217
Yeomanry in Palestine 355
Big Game Shooting at Night, 381
Blacker, Capt. L. V. S.: Fights with Distances, 83
Burnett, Brig.-General C., C.B., C.M.G.: A Cavalry Episode in the Advance to the Marne, 250

Canadian Cavalry Association, 246
Cavalry, an Essential Arm. By *Field-Marshal Earl Haig*, 6
Cavalry Episode in the Advance to the Marne, A. By *Brig.-General C. Burnett, C.B., C.M.G.*, 250
Cavalry School, Fort Riley, Kansas, 416
Cavalry Spirit, The, 225
Chargers, Some Historical. By *Major-General Sir N. M. Smyth, V.C., K.C.B.*, 234
Connaught and Strathearn, Field-Marshal His Royal Highness Arthur, Duke of. By *Captain Sir George Arthur, Bart., M.V.O.*, 1

Dates of Raising the Existing Regular Cavalry, 222
De Lisle, Lt.-General Sir Beauvoir, K.C.B., D.S.O.: The Height of Polo Ponies, 176
Dening, Lt.-Colonel, L. E.: The Indian Cavalry Man, Past and Present, 333
Disbanded Cavalry Regiments, 20th to 25th Light Dragoons. By *Major H. G. Parkyn, O.B.E.*, 226

Egyptian Expeditionary Force, Operations of the Mounted Troops of the. By *Lt.-Colonel Rex Osborne, D.S.O., M.C.*, 41, 113, 344
El Mughar, The Charge at. By *J. P. Beadle*, 217

Female Light Dragoon, A. By *Lt.-Colonel Sir Arthur Leetham, C.M.G.*, 149
Fights with Distances. By *Captain L. V. S. Blacker*, 83
Fitzmaurice, G.: Lannes, the Vanguard Leader, 69
Fraser, Edward: The Romance of the Drum Banner, 179, 247, 376
French in Egypt, 1791, The, 375

Graham, Lt.-Colonel Malise, D.S.O.: Jumping, 86, 168
Grove-White, Bt.-Major M. FitzG., D.S.O., O.B.E., R.E.: Machinery or Muscle, 157

MS6379

Digitized by Google

UE 1
C3
v.12

HONORARY EDITORS AND SUB-EDITORS.

Managing Editor:

Major-General Sir N. M. SMYTH, V.C., K.C.B. (Colonel 3rd Dragoon Guards).

Editor:

The Commandant and Staff of the Equitation School, Weedon.

Sporting Editor:

Lieut.-Colonel T. B. PHILLIPS, O.B.E. (late 13th Hussars).

Sub-Editors:

Royal Horse and Royal Field Artillery.—Lieut.-Colonel WILFRID JELF, C.M.G., D.S.O., Royal Horse Artillery.

Yeomanry.—Lieut.-Colonel F. H. D. C. WHITMORE, C.M.G., D.S.O., T.D., Essex Yeomanry.

Tank Corps.—Bt.-Lieut.-Colonel W. D. CROFT, C.M.G., D.S.O., 2nd Tank Battalion.

Royal Air Force.—Squadron Leader W. R. READ, M.C., D.F.C., A.F.C., R.A.F. (late King's Dragoon Guards).

Australia.—Lieut.-Colonel W. J. FOSTER, C.B., C.M.G., D.S.O., Department of Defence, Melbourne, Victoria.

Canada.—Brigadier-General R. W. PATERSON, C.M.G., D.S.O. (Fort Garry Horse).

Egypt.—Colonel-Commandant A. LAWSON, C.M.G.

India.—The Commandant Cavalry School Saugor.

New Zealand.—Lieut.-Colonel G. (

South Africa.—Major N. H. M. B
of Defence, Pretoria.

Sudan.—Lieut.-Colonel GOUGH C
and Mounted Infantry.

THE ROYAL UNITED

C. GILBERT-WO
II,

EYRE and SPOTTIS

Digitized by Google

INDEX

Arkansas: Carrying the Pistol, 59
Arthur, Captain Sir George, Bart., M.V.O.: [illegible]
Arthur, Duke of Connaught and Strathearn [illegible]

Beadle, J. P.: Picture of the Charge at E[illegible]
Yeomanry in Palestine 355
Big Game Shooting at Night, 381
Blacker, Capt. L. V. S.: Fights with Distance
Burnett, Brig.-General C., C.B., C.M.G.: [illegible]
Advance to the Marne, 250

Canadian Cavalry Association, 246
Cavalry, an Essential Arm. By *Field-Marshal* [illegible]
Cavalry Episode in the Advance to the [illegible]
C. Burnett, C.B., C.M.G., 250
Cavalry School, Fort Riley, Kansas, 411
Cavalry Spirit, The, 225
Chargers, Some Historical. By *Major-General* [illegible]
K.C.B., 234
Connaught and Strathearn, Field-Marshal [illegible]
Duke of. By *Captain Sir George* [illegible]

Dates of Raising the Existing Regular [illegible]
De Lisle, Lt.-General Sir Beauvoir [illegible]
Ponies, 176
Dening, Lt.-Colonel, L. E.: The [illegible]
333
Disbanded Cavalry Regiment [illegible]
Major H. G. Parkyn, O.B.E. [illegible]

Egyptian Expeditionary Force [illegible]
the. By *Lt.-Colonel* [illegible]
El Mughar, The Charge at [illegible]

[illegible]male Lig[illegible]
[illegible]49
[illegible]s wi[illegible]
[illegible]maur
[illegible]ser, F
[illegible]nch
[illegible]rahan
[illegible]rove-
[illegible]

Digitized by Google

Haig, Field-Marshal Earl: Cavalry an Essential Arm, 6
Hardy, Major E. J., D.S.O.: 'There is no new thing under the Sun,' 280
Hardy, Sir Reginald, Bart.: The Origin of the Yeomanry, 9
Height of Polo Ponies, The. By *Lt.-General Sir Beauvoir de Lisle, K.C.B., D.S.O.*, 176
Historical Notes. By *Lt.-Colonel Sir Arthur Leetham, C.M.G.*, 198, 303, 413
Horse Artillery of the Honourable East India Company. By *Captain Russell Steele*, 414
Horse-Breaking Tips, Some. By *The Toad beneath the Harrow*, 382
Hotblack, Captain F. E., D.S.O., M.C.: The Tank Corps, 307

Independent Air Force in the War, The. By *Squadron Leader A. A. Walser, M.C., D.F.C.*, 387
Indian Cavalry Man, Past and Present, The. By *Lt.-Colonel L. E. Dening*, 333
Inniskilling: Lion Hunting, 160, 273

Jumping. By *Lt.-Colonel Malise Graham, D.S.O.*, 86, 168

Lancers, 109
Lannes, the Vanguard Leader. By *G. Fitzmaurice*, 69
Leetham, Lt.-Colonel Sir Arthur, C.M.G.: A Female Light Dragoon, 149
Historical Notes, 198, 303, 413
Letter Book of General Sir J. S. Denham. By *Major H. G. Parkyn, O.B.E.*, 143
Lion Hunting. By *Inniskilling*, 160, 273

Machine Gun Corps (Cavalry) in France, 1916–18. By *Captain T. Preston, M.C.*, 65, 183, 294, 402
Machinery or Muscle. By *Bt.-Major M. F. Grove-White, D.S.O., O.B.E., R.E.*, 157
Mechanical Warfare, 153
Mounted Infantry on the Sudan Border, 62

Nineteenth Lancers, 231
Nineteenth Royal Hussars, The: Queen Alexandra's Own, 23
'No New Thing under the Sun, There is.' By *Major E. J. Hardy, D.S.O.*, 280

Osborne, Lt.-Colonel Rex, D.S.O., M.C.: Operations of the Mounted Troops of the E.E.F., 41, 113, 344

Parkyn, Major H. G., O.B.E.: A Letter Book of General Sir J. S. Denham, 143
Pistol, Carrying the. By *Arkansas*, 59
Pitman, Col.-Commandant T. T., C.B., C.M.G.: Cavalry Operations on the Western Front, 25
Position Finding in Air Craft, 309

Digitized by Google

Preston, Captain T., M.C.: Machine Gun Corps (Cavalry), 65, 183, 294, 402
Prismatic Compasses, A Simple way to Check. By *Lt.-Colonel W. H. Scott, C.M.G., D.S.O.*, 193
Probyn, General Sir Dighton M., V.C., G.C.B., G.C.S.I., G.C.V.O., 331

Reduction of the Cavalry, 219
Romance of the Drum Banner, The. By *Edward Fraser*, 179, 247, 376
Royal Canadian Dragoons, The, 58
Royal Horse Artillery with Cavalry, The. By *Lt.-Colonel Wilfrid Jelf, C.M.G., D.S.O., R.H.A.*, 238

Scott, Lt.-Colonel W. H., C.M.G., D.S.O.: A Simple Way to Check Prismatic Compasses, 193
Smyth, Major-General Sir N. M., V.C., K.C.B.: Some Historial Chargers, 234
Steele, Captain Russell, late R.A.M.C.: Horse Artillery of the H.E.I.C., 414
Stream Line Bullet, The, 399

Tank Corps, The. By *Captain F. E. Holblack, D.S.O., M.C.*, 307

Western Front, Cavalry Operations on the By *Colonel Commandant T. T. Pitman, C.B., C.M.G.*, 25
Whitmore, Lt.-Colonel F. H. D. C., C.M.G., D.S.O., T.D.: The Changes in the Yeomanry Cavalry, 13
Woodville, R. Caton: Lancers, 109, 112

Yeomanry Cavalry, The Changes in the. By *Lt.-Colonel F. H. D. C. Whitmore, C.M.G., D.S.O., T.D.*, 13
Yeomanry, The Origin of. By *Sir Reginald Hardy, Bart.*, 9

Digitized by Google

PLATES

Field-Marshal His Royal Highness The Duke of Connaught	*Frontispiece*	
The Rt. Hon. John Lord Somerville, 1810	*To face page*	13
The 5th Lancers, 19th and 20th Hussars and 21st Lancers. By R. Caton Woodville	„	23
Views in Palestine	„	41
The Royal Canadian Dragoons	„	58
Methods of Carrying the Pistol	„	59
At Ratisbon	„	78
Hunza Scouts, Kurdish Levies, Lesghian and Turkoman Cavalry	„	84
Guides on the Pamirs	„	85
Lance against Lance in the Battle of the Marne. After R. Caton Woodville	„	109
Lancers crossing the Vistula, 1657	„	110
The Cavalry Charge at Sinho, 1860	„	111
Seven Years' War Lancer. By R. Caton Woodville	„	113
In Palestine	„	119
Aircraft	„	155
Armoured Cars	„	156, 157
Sir Watkin Williams Wynne	„	198
'But the Firmly held Spear Stops the Rush'	„	200
The Image of War. After Horace Vernet	„	201
The Charge at El Mughar. After J. P. Beadle	„	217
24th, 8th and 22nd Light Dragoons	„	230
19th Lancers, 1817	„	231
Marengo. After James Ward, R.A.	„	234
Nonpareil	„	235

Digitized by Google

THE CAVALRY REGIMENT'S BAND OF THE XVITH CENTURY *To face page* 248
DRUM BANNERS . . . . . „ 249
LANCE AND SWORD IN PIEDMONT, 1848 . . . „ 303
THE HOG-HUNTERS' CUP . . . . . „ 314
H.R.H. PRINCE HENRY'S RATHGAROGUE . . . „ 318
POLO . . . . . „ 319
MAJOR-GENERAL SIR DIGHTON PROBYN, V.C., &C. . . „ 331
EAST RIDING OF YORKSHIRE YEOMANRY IN PALESTINE. AFTER J. P. BEADLE . . . . . „ 355
IN PALESTINE . . . . . „ 354
THE FRENCH IN EGYPT, 1791 . . . . . „ 376
DRUM BANNERS . . . . . „ 377
A JUNGLE SCENE . . . . . „ 381
BOMBING AEROPLANES . . . . . „ 388, 389
C.M.D. PRIVATE JAMES HEWITT . . . . . „ 414
THE HORSE ARTILLERY OF THE H.E.I.C. . . . „ 415
HIS MAJESTY THE KING'S CHARGERS, DELHI AND ERSKINE „ 436
POINTER AND SETTER. BY J. C. TUNNARD . . „ 439

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

UNIV. OF CALIFORNIA

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

JANUARY 1922

FIELD-MARSHAL HIS ROYAL HIGHNESS ARTHUR W. P. A. DUKE OF CONNAUGHT AND STRATHEARN, K.G., K.T., K.P., &c., COLONEL-IN-CHIEF THE INNISKILLINGS

By Captain Sir George Arthur, Bart., M.V.O.,
late 2nd Life Guards.

Early in 1850 the Duke of Wellington proposed that on his own retirement the office of Commander-in-Chief should vest in the Prince Consort. The suggestion did not find favour, but the Sovereign, to mark her appreciation of the Duke's courtesy—and common sense—made a *beau geste* and invited him to act as sponsor to her third son—who had been born on Wellington's eighty-first birthday. The Duke did not survive the Prince's infancy; but if the man whose life was passed in ascertaining 'what was going on on the other side of the hill' could have strained his eyes to pierce his godson's future, he would surely have rejoiced in a soldier's career, as distinguished in character as it has been disinterested in conduct.

Before the end of the eighteenth century the Duke of York's strong—if not always steady—hand at the Horse Guards had abolished the scandal of infant commissions;

Digitized by Google

but fifty years ago the newly-joined subaltern was often a stranger to the razor, and Prince Arthur was a lieutenant in the Royal Engineers when a youth of barely eighteen summers. Within thirteen months he had passed through the Royal Artillery to the Rifle Brigade, in which corps he was promoted Captain on his twenty-first birthday. Meanwhile he had crossed the seas to join his Battalion in Canada and had borne his part in checking the Fenian invasion under the so-styled General O'Neill, for which operation a medal was awarded but not distributed until many years later.

The battalion returned to England in the early autumn of 1870, and the opportunity at once arose for Prince Arthur to perform one of the long line of graceful acts which have constantly adorned his record. The tide of war had overwhelmed the Emperor Napoleon, and his Consort had fled to England and found a resting-place at Chislehurst. The Ministers of the Crown were unable to pay their respects to the illustrious refugee, but Lord Granville wrote very correctly from Walmer that he was sure a visit from Prince Arthur would—as it did—please the Empress Eugénie greatly.

Regimental duty with the Rifle Brigade, close and eager study of the science of war, service with the 7th Hussars—a brief but supremely happy period, and on the staff both at Gibraltar and Aldershot, were for the next twelve years part of the Duke's steady training for his test as a commander in the field. Lord Wolseley's eulogy of the officer who led the Brigade of Guards in the short, but trying, campaign of 1882 is on public record; it is less generally known that, in his private correspondence and diary, the same opinion is written large by an incomparably great soldier whose praise was as hard to secure as it was certain to be justified. Nor did his judgment vary. Eleven years later, in meeting some rather loose protests, Wolseley wrote to the Duke of Cambridge: 'In my opinion, it would be greatly to the benefit of the Army, and would be most popular with all

Digitized by Google

ranks in it, that the Duke of Connaught should succeed Sir Evelyn Wood at Aldershot.'* Experience was to justify Wolseley's verdict in every particular, and not least, perhaps, when in the manœuvres of 1898 Sir Redvers Buller was heard ruefully to remark of his opposing commander: 'The Duke always seems to get my guns.'

In October 1899 came the one bitter disappointment of a keen soldier's life. England was constrained to speak effectively with a now close Friend, and the Duke pleaded with all the persuasive force he could put out that he might be employed in any capacity, and with any sacrifice of seniority, in South Africa.

The Government was obdurate. It was not desirable—so ran the pronouncement—that the Sovereign's son should take the field; it was important that he should take over Lord Roberts' responsibilities in Ireland. Without murmur or further protest, if with a heavy heart, the Duke bowed to the official decree and found in Ireland his sphere of duty until the newly-constituted Inspector-Generalship was entrusted to him. Here his special qualities shone so conspicuously as to render it more than lamentable that, for very questionable reasons, a far too early term was set to his office and another appointment thrust upon him.

It is a wholesome axiom that no man really deserves the confidence of the country if he does not know how to resign as well as how to rule. Never did the Duke of Connaught prove himself more entitled to that confidence than when, in the teeth of engineered opposition and at the cost of his cherished seat on the Selection Board, he insisted on vacating the costly and wholly useless post vaguely designated as the Mediterranean Command.

Sternly aloof though the Duke has kept himself from the slightest influence of politics, he has not escaped from being

* Wolseley in 1895 was willing to waive his own claim to the post of Commander-in-Chief if the Duke's candidature were on the tapis.

Digitized by Google

the subject of a political discussion and the innocent cause of a Cabinet difficulty.

In 1885 the Sovereign and the Viceroy of India were alike anxious that the Bombay Command should vest in the Duke, who then held a Major-General's Command in Bengal. The Commander-in-Chief, Sir Frederick Roberts, warmly endorsed the suggestion. 'The Duke,' he said, 'was the best of his General Officers.' The Secretary of State, Lord Randolph Churchill, however, strongly resisted the idea, urging that the appointment then caused the necessity of speaking and voting in Council. The Ministerial discussion was marked by an incident which provoked a bitter protest from Lord Randolph, and demanded all the tact of Lord Salisbury to parry it. The Queen had asked Lord Salisbury to cypher a message to the Viceroy, with whom she often communicated directly. The Secretary of State, on hearing of this, complained that a first-class question of Indian administration had been taken out of his hands; he considered that a lack of confidence in himself had been shown, and reiterated his desire to resign his seals. The sequel of the incident itself was the suggestion of Sir Michael Hicks-Beach, that the Queen's private secretary should be entrusted with the official cypher; while as regards the Bombay Command, the abolition, a few months later, of Residential Commanders-in-Chief with their political functions, rendered the Duke an undeniably eligible tenant for a position which he took up with general approval and held with brilliant success. 'I never met anyone,' wrote Sir George White from Quetta four years later, 'who took more pains to be gracious and considerate. I am greatly struck by his energy and activity, his keenness on all military matters, and his knowledge of detail. I hope he may succeed Sir Frederick Roberts as Commander-in-Chief.'

In Military camp, and council, and command, the Duke had proved his worth; the call to high administration was

Digitized by Google

to come in the autumn of life, when a man who has no special appetite for the sweets of office may justly claim some repose, and when the Duke's own domestic circumstances seemed to plead for his presence at home and offer strong objections to a serious Odyssey. But such consideration weighed as a feather against a call of duty. The summons to work sounded as sharply in his ears as the trumpet in the far-off Cavalry days, and in October 1911 he assumed the duties of Governor-General of Canada.

The historian will assign to him his place in that great gallery of men who with equal dignity and loyalty have represented their Sovereign in his Dominions across the seas; meanwhile the chronicler has not failed to note the special difficulties—as well as the special opportunities which attached to the Duke's tenure of office—difficulties met with quiet determination and untiring patience; opportunities which issued, *inter alia*, in Canada's superb military effort and Canada's mighty military contribution when England had to deal with a bitter enemy on the Continent of Europe.

The biographer of the Duke—and may his task be deferred for many a year to come—will not find his opportunity in any chronological table of military appointments or 'catalogue raisonné' of military merits. Rather, he will beneficially survey a life full with incident, intense with interest, but calm in conduct; he will review a long stretch of public service in which the Servant was careless of personal reward, scrupulously careful of everything else; he will touch on domestic ties as strong as they were gentle; he will dwell with special emphasis on a standard of character held high and kept pure, on inflexible uprightness mated with the most winning manners; and he will surely suggest that a soldier, of whatever grade, may be well content if, on looking back over the years he has spent in his profession, he can accuse himself of nothing which would have rendered him other than worthy to stand to arms beside the Duke of Connaught.

Digitized by Google

CAVALRY, AN ESSENTIAL ARM

On October 10, 1921, Field-Marshal Earl Haig, in the course of an address which he delivered on receiving the Honorary Freedom of the City of Canterbury, spoke as follows :—

'Now, I can feel with reason that an old-time acquaintance with Canterbury has to-day ripened into friendship. As you know, I am a Cavalry soldier, and the Cavalry Depôt so long ago established here brought me to your city on inspection duty on several occasions before the war. They were pleasant visits, and I hope useful ones. At all events, they make me feel that a man who has chosen two cavalrymen as the supporters to his coat of arms, as I have done, can count upon sympathy at Canterbury, even in these days when so many old Cavalry regiments are being or have been disbanded.

'I view the disbanding of those regiments with professional regret, even while I do not pretend to criticise the financial reasons which have led to their dispersal. I certainly am not among those who hold that Cavalry is a dead arm, or that the place of flesh and blood, in man and horse, can ever be wholly taken by petrol and machinery. I do not think that I am alone in that opinion, either here or abroad. Assuredly the time has not yet come when we can afford to dispense with Cavalry. When the lessons of the Great War are properly understood, they will be found, I am confident, to teach no one thing more emphatically than this—that Cavalry is still an essential arm, even in a European war, and more especially so to an Imperial Army such as ours.

Digitized by Google

'Do not think that I disparage or undervalue the new weapons. Tanks and aeroplanes and heavy guns, and the other death-dealing devices that modern science has produced, are all alike indispensable; but, just as they are all in the end dependent on the man, so they have not yet served to eliminate the horse, which, in the hands of a trained cavalryman, is a part of the man himself. On the other hand, the development of mechanical transport of all kinds, both for the purposes of actual fighting and for supply, may well open up new opportunities of usefulness for Cavalry, by giving Cavalry the necessary weight to overcome local and extemporised resistance and by enabling Cavalry to continue its effort over greater distances and for longer periods.

'Even in the late war, and handicapped as it was by conditions of fighting unprecedented in military history and unforeseen—yet conditions which need not necessarily recur in the same form—the limited force of Cavalry at our disposal in France found, on more than one critical occasion, work that only Cavalry could do. Further, but surely not less significant, at least one occasion can be quoted when the absence of Cavalry proved of decisive importance.

'What might have been the result if, on March 27 or 28, 1918, Ludendorff had been able to let loose an adequate force of trained Cavalry against the line of British and French troops east and south-east of Amiens, already strained almost to breaking point? It was a possibility that no one could have contemplated at the time without the greatest anxiety. But Ludendorff had turned his Cavalry into Infantry, and he had no mounted troops with which to seize an opportunity which only mounted troops could turn to account.

'On our own side we had then no more than three divisions of Cavalry in an army of some sixty divisions; but all through the battle those three Cavalry divisions did work that was invaluable, not because it required greater bravery and skill, for the bravery and skill of the Infantry

Digitized by Google

and other arms were unsurpassable, but because it was work that only Cavalry could do. So urgent did the need for mounted troops become on the Third Corps front (down on the right of our line where our junction with the French was threatened) that, as you know, some of the Cavalry units that had been broken up during the winter, when our Cavalry establishment was reduced from five divisions to three, were hastily remounted on whatever horses could be got together and sent out again as Cavalry to do successfully work that they could not hope to do on foot.

'And when our own turn came to advance, the Cavalry again found their chance, and only lack of numbers prevented them from doing more than they did. Cavalry is a special arm, and it is not every occasion on which it can be used; but, when it is wanted, it is wanted very badly. Further, it cannot ordinarily be improvised; for both horse and man need long and careful training. Therefore, if they are to be ready when required, they must be kept on foot, it may be for long periods, when there is little opportunity for their use.

'Here, in a city so long connected with Cavalry units, I feel that I am entitled to say a word for the arm in which I started soldiering. You will not think that I forget your own Infantry regiment, the Buffs, nor yet the splendid work of the other Kentish battalions.

* * * * *

'It is because I know that, in honouring me to-day as you have done, you are through me honouring also the men who performed such gallant deeds as these (your own men of Kent and Canterbury and all the other brave fellows who fought beside them) that I draw an especial pleasure from occasions such as this. They give me opportunities to express my own thanks and gratitude for that loyal service on the part of all ranks without which no general can hope to win victory.'

Digitized by Google

THE ORIGIN OF THE YEOMANRY

By Sir Reginald Hardy, Bart.

In January, 1794, Parliament met, and the speech from the Throne urged the necessity of continuing the war with France with increased vigour, as it was impossible to think of treating with such an enemy.

In March, Pitt proposed to levy a Volunteer Force of Foot and Horse in every county, as the chances of war might expose the coast of Great Britain to invasion.

The idea of an armed Yeomanry had been advocated by Arthur Young, in one of his agricultural essays, on the text, 'Property must be armed, or it could not be safe.'

Subscription lists were opened to subsidise the local troops. A Yeoman received no pay unless he was called out. He attended on a 'serviceable' horse of not less than 14½ hands. The uniform was provided by the county subscription, and the Government supplied the accoutrements. Particular directions were given that the hair 'was to be dressed and queued.' The real and pressing fear of invasion stimulated recruiting.

Volunteers and Light Horse sprang into existence to defend our shores. Lord Winchilsea raised a troop of Gentlemen and Yeomanry in the County of Rutland, and this unit claims priority, but the Royal Wiltshire stand first on the roll to-day. The rapidity of recruiting was remarkable, and there were attractions in the exemption from the much more onerous obligation of service in the Militia.

Digitized by Google

In 1796 a French attack on Ireland was considered imminent, but all parties drew together, united by the idea of the common peril. Permission was given by the Government to form the Yeomanry, both Cavalry and Infantry. In six weeks a hundred troops and companies were drilling and making preparations for defence.

In England, Volunteer Cavalry, consisting of local gentry and farmers, were raised. Owners of horses, whether saddle or carriage horses, were to provide one trooper and one horse for every ten steeds in their stable. Smaller owners were lumped together in groups of ten. In 1798 there were 163 troops in England, and in 1801 there were nominally 24,000 men, and probably 16,000 actually. In the Articles of Enrolment, the regiments were styled 'Volunteer Cavalry,' but in Officers' Commissions (signed personally by the King) 'The . . . Regiment of Gentlemen and Yeomanry.'

As the Continental War continued on a larger scale, so the fear of an invasion increased. In 1801 the Peace of Amiens was signed, but in 1803 war was once more declared, and Napoleon now made his plans in earnest. He seized all British residents or travellers in France, without notice, and detained them as prisoners. Sea power he could not command. He could not face our Fleet in the open, but he could exclude our merchantmen from Mediterranean harbours and close the markets against us.

He proceeded to establish his headquarters at Boulogne. From the Dutch he squeezed flat-bottomed transports, and from Spain he annexed a few ships. From Hanover he ordered flat boats. In France he constructed two thousand small craft. The Grand Army was assembled and concentrated near the coast. No wonder our countrymen were afraid.

Pitt expected invasion; Fox sneered at the idea. But Fox had queer sympathies with Napoleon, and was hardly to be trusted. He declared that if he had to choose between

Digitized by Google

invasion and the continuance of the war for two years, he would prefer the invasion as the lesser calamity. The nation, however, disagreed with Fox, and kept Pitt in power.

It is difficult to realise the alarm which English folk felt, and felt with justification.

In the late war, the Government have always had an expectation of a possible landing and have prepared accordingly, but the inhabitants of the Eastern Coast have never taken to heart the danger or allowed themselves to be scared.

In 1803 the name of 'Boney' was a veritable bogey, and the Devil, or Old Nick, had almost given place in common parlance to the French demon. Our wooden walls were—somewhere, but not always in the Channel. Nelson's weather-worn vessels were here, there and everywhere in the Atlantic, the Pacific, not off Dover, or cruising opposite Boulogne and Dunkirk.

So the constant apprehension of a landing was quite a natural sentiment. England was not in 'a funk' at all, but simply a nation with open eyes preparing for an almost inevitable, and certainly a formidable, attack.

There was a buzz and hum of military ardour and a rush to be enrolled. The Billeting Act was passed, and the War Office was snowed under with applications to be allowed to serve. Every ablebodied man offered himself, and the blaze of patriotic ardour swept the land. The maritime counties were the keenest; and, as on them would fall the first brunt, so they were most anxious to defend their homes and hearths.

But, after a year of preparation, Napoleon changed his mind. It was easy to collect flotillas, but harbours were bad, the harbour bars undredged, tides and currents fought against the new armada. There were frigates in the Channel. Some boats would not carry horses, others could not anchor in the shallow basins, and on the far side, where the chalk cliffs and the shallow inlets of the Essex coasts repelled or

Digitized by Google

invited a landing, the English Yeomanry were waiting—patiently waiting.

Suddenly Napoleon changed his mind, and marched away across France eastward. His army was halfway to the Rhine, *en route* for Austria, before we realised what had happened. There was no telegraph wire in those days. But from that date we were safe from invasion till 1914. On the gate of Amiens that leads to Calais was inscribed 'The Road to England,' and on a floating tricolor was blazoned 'A fair wind and thirty-six hours.'

It has been said that Napoleon was mad to imagine an attack was feasible. It may have been a desperate scheme, but it was possible, and our people thought it possible, and so did the Government, till Nelson at Trafalgar had settled for a century the question of sea power. At all events, we were ready to welcome, resist or capture the invader, and every Englishman firmly believed that if the French set foot on our shores, not a man would find his way back to France.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Painted by S. Woodforde. Engraved by James Ward.

RIGHT HON. JOHN LORD SOMERVILLE.

One of the Sixteen Peers of Scotland, President of the Board of Agriculture, and Colonel of the West Somerset Yeomanry.

Digitized by Google

THE CHANGES IN THE YEOMANRY CAVALRY

By Lieut.-Col. F. H. D. C. Whitmore, C.M.G., D.S.O., T.D.

Both the origin and history of the County Regiments of Yeomanry are at this moment of particular interest, especially as it is only those regiments which claim seniority that have been selected as the fortunate few who are to carry on as Cavalry.

A number of historians have periodically contributed very interesting information regarding the formation of their county units. There can be little doubt that a careful search through county records would reveal volumes of valuable history which would serve not only as a monument to perpetuate the brilliant actions and careers of the regiments concerned, but also as a lesson of patriotism at the present time. As to their origin :—

The word Yeoman is derived from the Anglo-Saxon 'Gamon' or 'Geamon,' which means 'a villager' or an 'attendant.' The term still survives in the sense of attendant in Royal Households, as 'Yeoman Usher of the Black Rod' or 'Yeoman of the Guard.'

In early history the word Yeoman seems to have been applied to a menial servant, but after the fifteenth century it designated the forty-shilling householder and a small farmer or countryman above the grade of labourer and below the rank of franklin. The Saxon 'fyrd' was very similar to our 'Fencibile force,' it being a rude form of Militia for home defence, and later the more fully-organised feudal 'Posse Comitatus,' which was liable to be called out by the

Digitized by Google

Sheriff to maintain the King's Peace within the Realms, but, by a stretch of the Royal prerogative, often used as reinforcements to more regularly constituted armies in time of war.

The Yeomanry as a mounted force dates somewhat indistinctly from about 1745, when the Whig gentlemen of Yorkshire, loyal to the Hanoverian dynasty, raised a regiment of tenantry from the countryside to fight against the Young Pretender. This regiment of Cavalry was called the Royal Regiment of Hunters. It appears, however, that there is doubt as to whether this regiment was the first of its sort to be formed; because we find, in 'The History of the Volunteer Force,' by Montefiore, that he states that the first Yeomanry raised were those of the Northamptonshire Association in 1744.

When all fear of Jacobite risings came to an end, this force, and others which were raised about the same time, were disbanded, only to be resurrected and more fully armed and organised many years later, when Great Britain was threatened with an invasion under Napoleon; and it was then that many Yeomanry regiments commenced to make history, and the Royal Wiltshire Yeomanry claim seniority amongst them to-day.

It was in February, 1794, that Lord Grenville, then Secretary of State, wrote as follows :—

'*The idea of augmentation which I think most practical is that of Militia Cavalry, to be raised by Volunteers in the same manner as the additional companies in the last war. . . . I think the natural defence of this country against an enemy, once landed, is by the immense irregular cavalry that might be collected and formed round small bodies of disciplined horse.*'

This expression of his opinion evidently caught hold, and his suggestion was promptly followed up. In Buckinghamshire alone, five troops of Yeomanry had been formed by

Digitized by Google

August of the same year, with a muster roll of 216 officers and men. Other counties were, of course, acting in a similar manner.

Sir Thomas Barrett Lennard, in an article which he wrote for the 'Essex Review' some years ago, narrates the formation of the Essex Volunteer Cavalry. It appears that in April, 1798, a meeting of the Deputy Lieutenants of that county was held at Chelmsford, presided over by Lord Braybrooke, the Lord Lieutenant, to take counsel as to how best the men of Essex could offer effective resistance to the French in the event of Napoleon's threatened invasion becoming an accomplished fact.

In the following year there were no fewer than seventeen troops in Essex, and it is interesting to note the rules for the conduct of these troops which were then agreed to. The following relate to the various fines which were imposed for offences: For talking in the ranks after being called to 'attention,' 6*d.*; for being absent from parade, 5 shillings for the Captain, 2 shillings and 6 pence for other Officers, 2 shillings for Sergeants, 1 shilling and sixpence for Corporals, and 1 shilling for the rank and file. Any person quitting the troop without giving sufficient reason to the Captain, to forfeit three guineas for the benefit of the troop.

For geographical reasons, Essex has, from early days, been a centre of activity, and the scene of the conflicts of invaders for possession of its fertile lands; this would account for the great amount of anxiety which was apparent in that county during the period of the threatened invasion.

In a very interesting article contributed by Eva E. Barrett in the 'Essex Review,' January, 1918, she relates that 'all the barns, granaries and large public buildings along the coast were engaged for the long line of troops sent to protect the Essex shores.

'Military preparations flourished. The commons were converted into camps; village cricket-fields made excellent

Digitized by Google

drill-grounds; and so urgent were the preparations considered that the Bishop of London postponed his usual visitation because it would interfere with the military preparations.'

So it was that the spirit of war brooded over the whole land; and as the price of wheat went up, carrying with it increased privation, the more enthusiasm was shown, the more money was subscribed, and the more determined were the men of the Eastern Counties to defend their homes.

The scare of invasion on the East Coast seems to have reached a climax in the early part of 1801, as the following copy of a circular letter to commanders will show. This particular circular letter was issued by Lord Braybrooke, a copy of which is in the possession of Sir Thos. Lennard, Bart., of Belhus :—

Chelmsford,

Sir, 14*th July* 1801.

Having met the Generals of the Eastern District on the 10*th instant, in consequence of a letter from Lord Hobart requesting us to take into consideration 'A Plan proposed for removing the Live Stock etc. from the Coast of Great Britain and for rendering the Body of the People instrumental in the defence of Country at this Crisis' It has given me much satisfaction to think that the Plans adopted by this County in* 1798 *(and which still remain in force) render it unnecessary at this juncture to have recourse to new expedients for the same purpose: at the same time it appears very essential to the public good that the Counties particularly exposed to invasion, shall be thrown into Divisions, and if the number of Troops of Yeomanry in the part of the Country to be cleared, admit of it, that no Division should exceed Eight or Ten parishes.*

Upon this ground, knowing as I well do, the zeal and activity of the several Troops of Yeomanry now embodied, and coinciding in opinion with the Secretary of State and with the General commanding the District, that these Corps of all others are most eligible to be employed in protecting that property

Digitized by Google

which is so desirable to be withheld from Invaders. I beg leave to send you a List of the Divisions or Districts, settled by General Balfour, to which it may be necessary, in an invasion or immediate danger thereof, to allot Corps of Yeomanry Cavalry for the purpose of superintending the removal of the Live Stock from the Coast within the boundary of this particular District or Division.

If it should be necessary to call in your Corps in the above service you shall have the earliest information of this particular District to which your services may be most beneficially directed.

I am also desired by the Generals to recommend to the Captains or Officers Commanding Yeomanry Corps, to fix with all possible expedition an Alarm Post or General place of Rendez-vous, at which their Troops would assemble, upon being directed in case of Alarm. But should their Commanding Officer require their assembling on any particular point he will specify the Spot in writing.

It is also recommended to the Commanding Officers of Troops to arrange and fix upon the most expeditious mode of collecting the men of their Troops, and at the shortest Notice.

I am sir

Your most obedient humble servant

GRIFFIN BRAYBROOKE.

Less than nine months after the circulation of the above letter came the Peace of Amiens, and with much relief the country relaxed its warlike energies. Camps were broken up, Militia disbanded, and Yeomen returned to till their lands.

But the peace was soon at an end. The complications as to the possession of Malta compelled England to again prepare, and the Yeomen naturally responded to the call.

During the greater part of the year 1803, invasion was threatened; in fact, it was considered imminent. Precautions were again set in force; the Secretary of State issued directions for the killing or disabling of all horses likely to fall into the enemy's hands, the cutting of the axle-trees of all

Digitized by Google

waggons and carts, and the destruction of all cattle and corn that could not be removed. Flag-signals from church towers were organised, and beacons were prepared on all conspicuous heights.

The following abstract of a sketch written by the Rev. Llewellyn Bullock is too interesting to omit, as it shows the administrative methods employed at the time, which must have reflected adversely on the efficiency of the Force as a whole :—

'It would seem, indeed, that the Volunteers needed some privileges to compensate them for substantial drawbacks, for they often met with somewhat scant consideration from both Government and people. On the one hand, in early days, the Buckinghamshire Yeomanry, while having "most of them got swords," were obliged to "return their pistols, which were most scandalously bad." And even in the later and more pressing times of the Volunteer movement (1803), Lord Grenville, who was now out of office, complains that "the issue of 209 muskets to 2,579 men is so extravagant that I think it cannot be persisted in"; and he goes on to say that, "if our neighbouring counties are no better prepared than we are, it will not be the volunteer force, at least, that will save us." On the other side, we read of the advice of the Marquis of Buckingham to his Yeomanry, "not to let themselves be pelted, just because they were used to it." Obviously, their duties were sometimes the reverse of pleasant. Moreover, they had other difficulties to contend with. For instance, Mr. W. H. Fremantle, M.P., wrote in April, 1800: "I fear our Yeomanry will not make so good an appearance (at review) as they would have done two years ago, as the very high price of hay and corn must have unhorsed many of them." In spite of difficulties, however, they stuck, as Englishmen will, to the work they had undertaken; and, if the threat of invasion had been fulfilled, would, without doubt, have given an excellent account of themselves.'

Digitized by Google

The anxiety as to the probabilities of invasion continued and still further preparations were made. Inhabitants were enrolled as guides and pioneers. Bands of Volunteers were formed who had special knowledge of the country, for the purpose of harassing the enemy without engaging in conflict, and the remaining population formed themselves into bands of from twenty-five to fifty, and were provided with picks and shovels.

And so this state of affairs continued. The inhabitants of the East Coast being always prepared to move. It became a habit to glance at the nearest beacon before going to rest; children were taught to pack up quickly in order that, when the information of the invasion was received, no time should be wasted in evacuating their homes.

At last the great victory of Waterloo brought about peace, and in its wake many thousands of Volunteers resumed their occupations.

But the Yeomanry Cavalry had been well established and had come to stay, and it was not until the year 1827 that great reductions were made.

From that date until the war in South Africa, a number of the regiments were disbanded, and some were amalgamated with the regiments of their adjoining counties. Some counties were only able to maintain a squadron. But during and after the South African War the old spirit was soon revived, and the old *esprit de corps* soon asserted itself with every bit of its former patriotism. Every Commanding Officer considered his own unit the best, and every officer and other rank was ready to concur in that opinion. The following is the list of the Yeomanry regiments which were formed during or since the South African War, 1899–1902.*

Surrey.	3rd County of London.
Fife and Forfar.	Bedfordshire.

*The North Irish, South Irish and King Edward's Horse were classed as Special Reserve with obligation to serve overseas, and are therefore not included as Yeomanry.

Digitized by Google

Norfolk.	Essex.
Sussex.	Northamptonshire.
Glamorgan.	East Riding of Yorkshire.
Lincolnshire.	1st Lovat's Scouts.
City of London.	2nd Lovat's Scouts.
2nd County of London.	Scottish Horse.

The Welsh Horse was raised during the Great War and has not been continued.

The deprivation of horses from some of the regiments during the Great War was a disappointment, of course, but it is certain that the necessity made no difference in the determination of those regiments to make a name and be a credit to their country.

The magnificent performance of the mounted units was a credit to the British Cavalry, whereas the endurance and achievement of those which fought dismounted was an example to follow.

The necessity for the changes which are taking effect at the present time is very naturally regretted by all. Counties had become proud of their Cavalry, and these regiments were recognised by the County T.F. Associations as being the only formations which would attract a certain class of recruit, and for this reason, even if for no other reasons, the County Yeomanry Regiment could not fail to be a very formidable national asset.

It was always said, and it has proved true, that whatever the Yeomanry regiments were to be asked to become, they would do their best to carry it out.

The trainings in 1921 have been sad for many; but no word of resentment escapes. Always the old spirit, always the solid determination to be the best in the end; whether Cavalry, Artillery, Scouts or Infantry, the Yeomanry will always make their mark.

The accompanying list shows the designation of the various Yeomanry regiments at the present time :—

Digitized by Google

(A) *5th Cavalry Brigade.*

Yorkshire Hussars.
Yorkshire Dragoons.
Notts Yeomanry (Sherwood Rangers).

6th Cavalry Brigade.

Warwickshire Yeomanry.
Staffordshire Yeomanry.
Leicestershire Yeomanry.

Eight Army Troops.

Royal Wiltshire Yeomanry.
Shropshire Yeomanry.
Ayrshire Yeomanry.
Cheshire Yeomanry.
North Somerset Yeomanry.
Duke of Lancaster's Own Yeomanry.
Lanarkshire Yeomanry.
Northumberland Yeomanry.

Eight at present temporarily reconstituted as Cavalry, earmarked for conversion into R.F.A. (Army Troops) on or before March 31, 1922.

Dorset Yeomanry.
Surrey Yeomanry.
Berks Yeomanry.
South Notts Hussars.
Worcestershire Yeomanry.
Oxfordshire Yeomanry.
Queen's Own Royal Glasgow Yeomanry.
Suffolk Yeomanry.

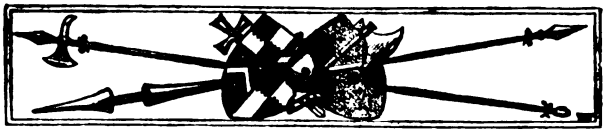
(B) and (C). Prior to the war there were 55 Yeomanry regiments in all. These regiments have now been disposed of as follows:—

6 Cavalry regiments of 5th and 6th Cavalry Brigades, 2nd Cavalry Division.
8 Army Troops Cavalry regiments.
1 converted into 2nd Cavalry Divisional Signals.

Digitized by Google

18	converted	into	R.F.A. (Army Troops).
2	,,	,,	Divisional R.F.A.
1	,,	,,	Medium Artillery R.G.A.
4	,,	,,	Scouts units.
1	,,	,,	Infantry.
1	,,	,,	R.H.A. (2nd Cavalry Division).
8	,,	,,	Armoured Car Companies.
1	disbanded (Lincoln Yeomanry).		
1	future undecided (Norfolk Yeomanry).		
8	Temporary Cavalry. (*See* under (A) above.)		
55			

The above list includes the units referred to in (A) above.



Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

THE 5th LANCERS, 19th HUSSARS, 20th HUSSARS AND 21st LANCERS RECENTLY DISBANDED.

Digitized by Google

THE NINETEENTH ROYAL HUSSARS

(Queen Alexandra's Own).

Farewell Order by Her Majesty Queen Alexandra to 19th Hussars.

With a sorrow which no words can express I take farewell of my Regiment of Hussars. I had always hoped that long after I was gone, the Regiment might have still been in existence to maintain its great reputation and to carry on the glorious traditions handed down from Seringapatam, Assaye, Egypt, the Soudan, South Africa to the Great War, when it took part in the battles of Mons, Le Cateau, the Aisne, both battles of Ypres, both battles of the Somme, Cambrai, Amiens, the Hindenburg Line, to the final advance in Flanders which victoriously ended the war, and I had been proud to think that my name was borne by the Regiment which had thus fought its way over the world, and I hoped that perhaps my memory might be associated with its traditions in the name the Regiment bore.

It has been ruled otherwise. The change which is gradually altering our old standards of efficiency from human to mechanical means has demanded the disbandment of four Cavalry Regiments, to be replaced by tanks and aircraft, and my Regiment has been one of the four

Digitized by Google

disbanded. I have made every effort that was possible to save the Regiment and to retain it in the Army, but without avail, and to the requirements of military necessities I have to see my Regiment swept away. To me the blow is bad enough, but to you it is terrible. For the sake of your old Commanding Officers, whose names are still household words among you, for the reputation of the Regiment up to the last moment of its existence, and, above all, for the memory of your comrades who gave up their brave lives to maintain its honour, I ask you to do what is hardest of all, to face this decision of disbandment both as a body and individually with the same courage and discipline that has won the Regiment its good name throughout its history, and I ask you to remember, in whatever units you may be called on to serve, that with the recollection of your old Regiment you carry with you the discipline learnt in the 19th Royal Hussars. May that recollection always serve you in good stead.

I wish you, one and all, success and happiness wherever you may be. To my dear Regiment, with unspeakable sadness, I now bid farewell, and for the last time I sign myself

ALEXANDRA,
Colonel-in-Chief.

Digitized by Google

GENERAL OUTLINE OF CAVALRY OPERATIONS ON THE WESTERN FRONT

By Colonel Commandant T. T. Pitman, C.B., C.M.G.

Part I.—British Cavalry Operations in 1914.

I.

The Cavalry with the British Expeditionary Force in 1914 was constituted as follows :—

Cavalry Division (Maj.-Gen. Allenby).

1st Cavalry Brigade (Brig.-Gen. Briggs).—The Queen's Bays (Lt.-Col. Wilberforce); 5th Dragoon Guards (Lt.-Col. Ansell*); 11th Hussars (Lt.-Col. Pitman).

2nd Cavalry Brigade (Brig.-Gen. De Lisle).—4th Dragoon Guards (Lt.-Col. Mullens); 9th Lancers (Lt.-Col. Campbell); 18th Hussars (Lt.-Col. Burnett).

3rd Cavalry Brigade.—4th Hussars (Lt.-Col. Hogg*); 5th Lancers (Lt.-Col. Parker); 16th Lancers (Lt.-Col. MacEwen).

4th Cavalry Brigade.—Composite Regiment, Household Cavalry (Lt.-Col. Cook*); The Carabiniers (Lt.-Col. Annesley); 3rd Hussars (Lt.-Col. Kennedy).

Independent Brigade.

5th Cavalry Brigade (Brig.-Gen. Sir P. Chetwode).—The Scots Greys (Lt.-Col. Bulkeley Johnson*); 12th Lancers (Lt.-Col. Wormald*); 20th Hussars (Lt.-Col. Edwards).

* Killed in action on Western Front.

Digitized by Google

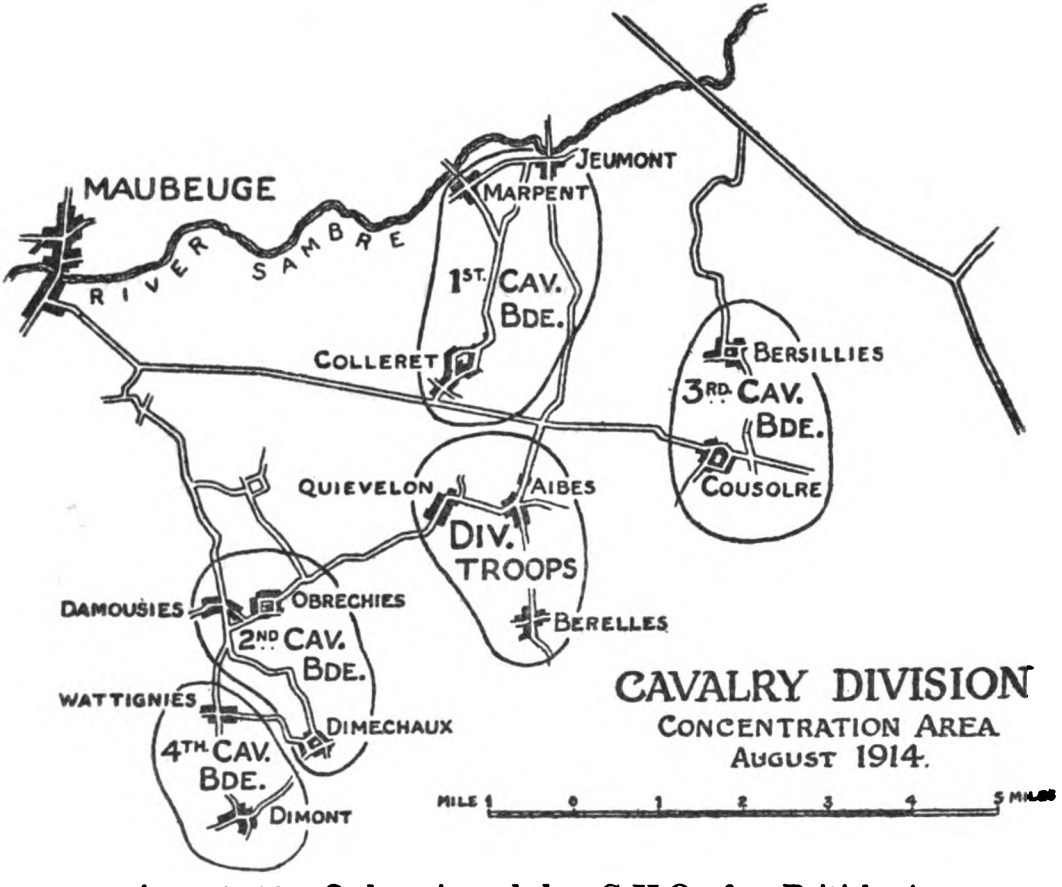
Divisional Cavalry.

15th Hussars, 19th Hussars.—One squadron with each of the six Infantry Divisions.

August **1914.**

II.

Between August 18 and 20, Cavalry brigades arrived in the concentration area near Maubeuge and billeted.



August 20.—Orders issued by G.H.Q. for British Army to move north of River Sambre. The Cavalry Division, with 5th Cavalry Brigade attached, were ordered to cover the movement.

It appears from the march tables issued with above orders

Digitized by Google

for the 21st to 23rd that it was intended that the Cavalry outpost line on the third day should be Binche—Roeulx—Lens.

The Cavalry were therefore used as a protective screen, and Sir John French impressed on them that he did not wish them to become seriously engaged until such time as he was ready to support them with Infantry.

August 21.—In the morning the enemy's Cavalry were reported advancing in force on Mons from the direction of Nivelles. Touch was obtained with the French Cavalry Corps at Fontaine l'Eveque.

Many useful reconnaissances were carried out from the screen, and valuable information as to the enemy's movements obtained. The following is quoted as an example :—

> 'On arrival of the 2nd Cavalry Brigade at Mons on the morning of the 21st, "C" Squadron, 4th Dragoon Guards, were detailed to carry out a reconnaissance to the north, with a view of locating the points of advance of the German columns and estimating the number of columns advancing in the sector which they were given, which included the Forest south of Soignies. Major Bridges ordered his squadron to move out at 4 p.m. and entered the forest before dark. Patrols were sent to watch the roads leading through the forest and a rendezvous given on the S. edge of the forest for 5.30 a.m. (22nd). He himself made use of existing telephones and questioned refugees. When the squadron collected it was found that most useful information had been obtained, many of the patrols having been engaged with the enemy.
>
> 'As soon as daylight came, Major Bridges started for the brigade. He was followed by some troops of Uhlans at a respectful distance. When he was clear of larger forces, he laid a trap for these troops, two troops dismounted in a village and two troops ready to charge. A mounted man crossing the street gave the trap away when the Uhlans were still 300 yards

Digitized by Google

away, but as they turned, Captain Hornby charged them with the two mounted troops, and after a gallop of a mile, caught them up, killed a few and captured several horses and men. Major Bridges was able to state that the German columns were marching down on every available road, and were stretching out considerably west of us. Major Bridges' estimate of numbers were fully double that given by our intelligence branch, but afterwards proved to have been accurate.'

August 22.—The 3rd Cavalry Brigade came in contact with the enemy in force at Peronnes at 11.30 a.m. and were engaged with them throughout the day.

Several instances of bold action by small units are recorded, of which the following is an example :—

Lieutenant Tempest Hicks, 16th Lancers, sent with a troop to clear up the situation near Peronnes, suddenly came on about a company of Jaegers in a corn-field. He at once charged and rode straight through them. He charged through them again on his return journey, inflicting heavy loss. His own losses were only two or three horses killed and several wounded. His own horse was shot under him.

These and similar instances gave from the outset a superior 'morale' to the British Cavalry over the Germans.

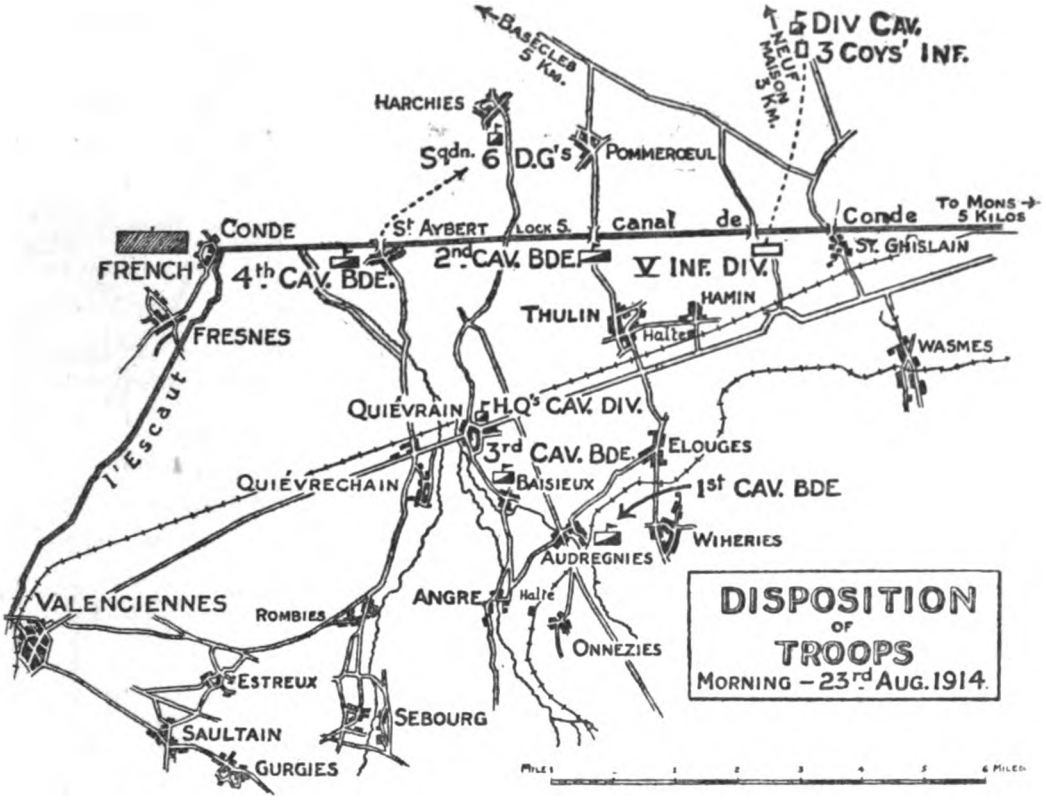
At 3 p.m. on the 22nd the main bodies of the three leading Cavalry Brigades were on the line Binche—Bray—Villers St. Ghislain, and at 4 p.m. the Infantry of the 2nd Corps relieved the Cavalry Division, who then made a long night march, about 15 miles, to the area Thulin—Quievrain—Baisieux—Audregnies—Elouges, in rear of the left flank of the Army.

III.

August 23.—In the early morning the troops of the Cavalry Division, having reached their new area during the night, occupied the following position.

Digitized by Google

From the bridge north of Thulin (where in touch with 5th Infantry Division) to Condé (where in touch with the French Territorial Garrison of Valenciennes). 2nd and 4th Cavalry Brigades on above line, 1st and 3rd Cavalry Brigades in support. Reconnoitring Squadron (Carabiniers) pushed forward with patrols to Harchies and Grande Eglise.



Later in the day, the Cavalry were relieved by Infantry.

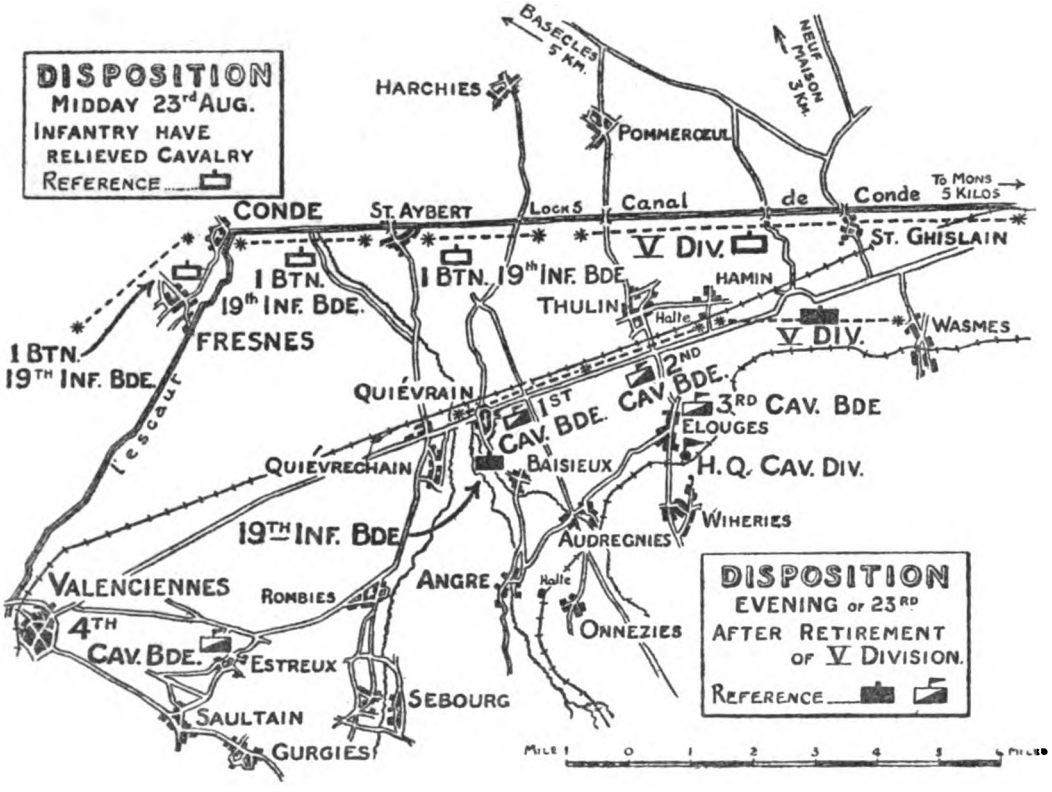
The Germans attacked bridge north of Thulin, but were repulsed.

At 8 p.m., the Fifth Infantry Division retired to line Wasmes—Hamin. The Cavalry Division conformed and continued the line to Quievrain with left thrown back west of that place.

Digitized by Google

IV.

August 24.—In the early morning the Germans commenced their attack. The Cavalry held on until well after the time given for the Infantry to retire* and then concentrated towards Rombies to protect the left flank of the Infantry. At 10.15 a.m. the Infantry asked for assistance closer in, and



the 2nd Cavalry Brigade, supported by the 3rd Cavalry Brigade, were ordered to hold the high ground north of Audregnies.

The 3rd Cavalry Brigade rode through the enemy's Infantry advancing from Baisieux, and about the same time the 2nd Cavalry Brigade charged the German Infantry

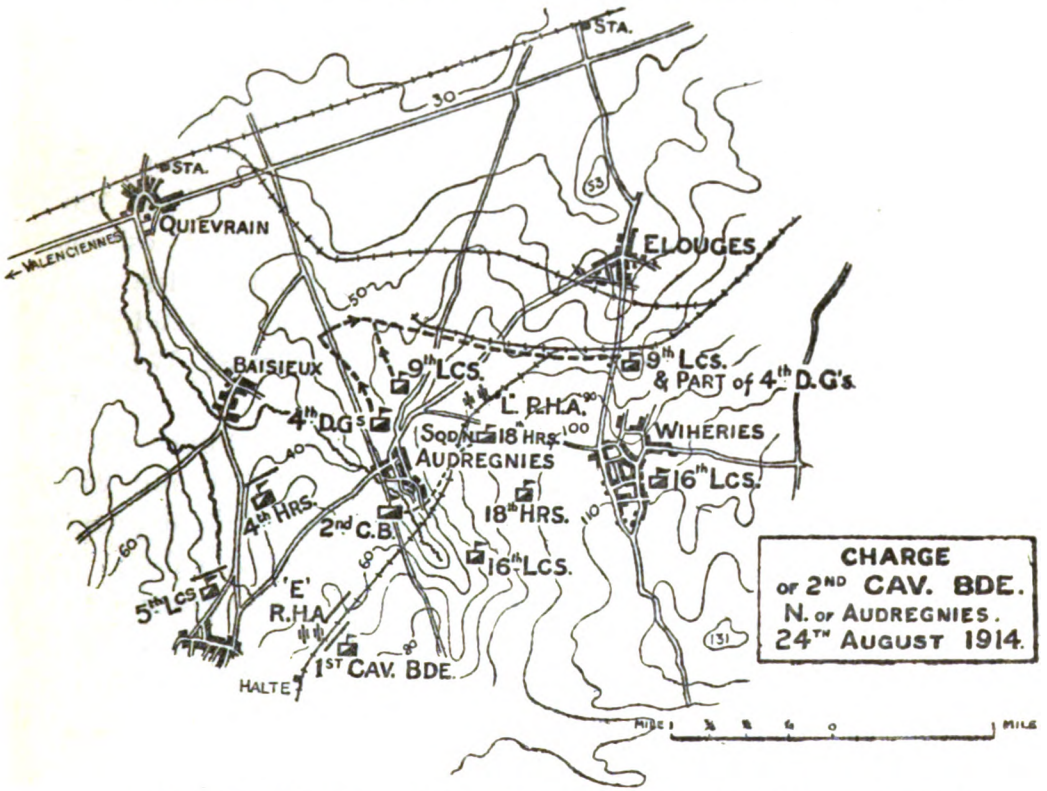
* G.H.Q. orders stated that the 5th Division would retire at 6 a.m.

Digitized by Google

advancing from Quievrain. The following extract from General De Lisle's report gives an account of the action :—

'About 10.30 a.m. message from 5th Division saying they required support of Cavalry Division on left flank to enable them to retire.

'G.O.C. Cavalry Division ordered me to re-occupy the position we had vacated north of Audregnies. On arrival there myself with 18th Hussars and "L"



Battery, R.H.A., I directed the latter to take up a good position. Before this was accomplished, I saw a strong counter-attack advancing south-east from Quievrain, and heavy Infantry fire opened at 800 yards. I rode back to the village, met Colonel Campbell, commanding 9th Lancers, and ordered him at all costs to check the hostile advance, adding: "It may be necessary for

Digitized by Google

you to charge." I ordered Colonel Mullens, 4th Dragoon Guards, to support 9th Lancers. I saw three squadrons of the 9th Lancers charge the German Infantry. The charge was well led and gallantly executed by all squadrons. The actual effect was marred by a wire fence. The moral effect was complete, the enemy did not advance beyond the fence for four hours and gave time for the 5th Division to retire. "L" Battery, magnificently handled, did great execution on German Infantry, and withdrew in perfect order after firing away all their ammunition.'

When the 5th Infantry Division had all retired, the Cavalry Division moved southwards covered by the 1st Cavalry Brigade. The 5th Division, in their retirement, kept too much to the east, and when they reached their allotted position it was found that a large gap existed between their left and the French. The Cavalry Division was ordered to fill this gap for the night, about 6 miles in extent, from St. Waast—Saultain.

August 25.—Early on 25th the Infantry continued their retirement, the Cavalry acting as rear-guard (1st and 2nd Cavalry Brigades under General De Lisle) and left flank guard (3rd and 4th Cavalry Brigades under General Allenby). A succession of positions were taken up and held against considerable opposition throughout the day. In the late afternoon, the Cavalry found themselves on top of the Infantry, who were digging in at Le Cateau line. Hostile shelling commenced and the Cavalry withdrew round the flanks of the Infantry. In this movement, the Division got split up; Head Quarters and 4th Cavalry Brigade billeted at Beaumont, the 1st Cavalry Brigade bivouacked in fields south of Le Cateau, while the 2nd, 3rd Cavalry Brigades, passing through Le Cateau, retired to Catillon.

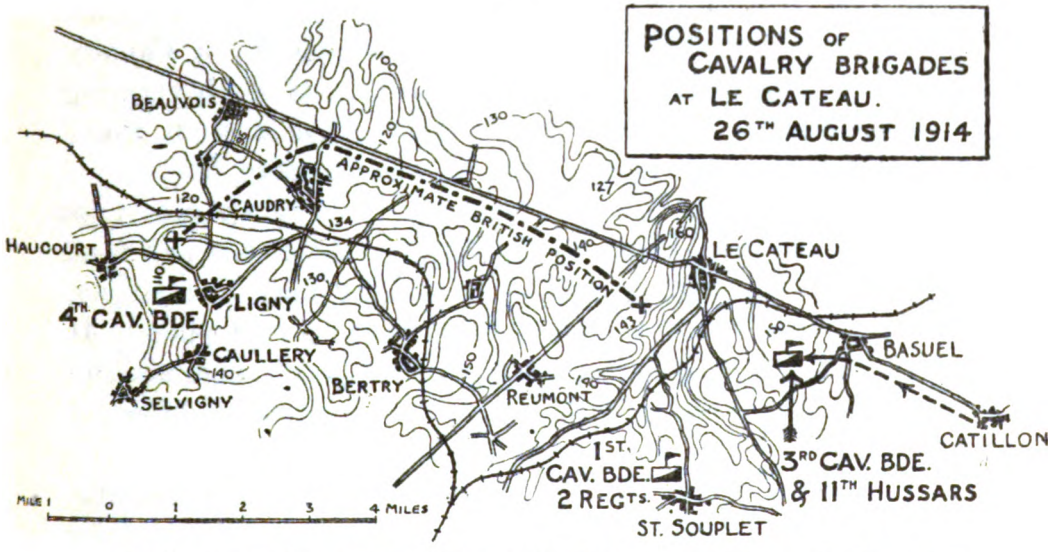
During the night, the G.O.C. Cavalry Division visited IInd Corps Head Quarters (General Smith-Dorrien), when the

Digitized by Google

latter made his decision to stand and fight the following day, as giving the only chance of extricating the baggage, &c. General Smith-Dorrien realised that in doing so he ran the risk of having his western flank turned, and possibly also his eastern flank, there being a gap of some 9 or 10 miles between the Ist and IInd Corps. C.O.C. Cavalry Division promised to use all the Cavalry he could collect to protect the left flank. He only succeeded, however, in collecting one-and-a-half brigades.

V.—*Le Cateau.*

August 26.—When the Division dispersed on the evening of the 25th, touch was lost with Divisional Head Quarters and several of the units received no orders during the night.



Early on the 26th, General Gough, with 3rd Cavalry Brigade and the 11th Hussars, who, having become separated from the 1st Cavalry Brigade, had joined the 3rd Cavalry Brigade, moved out from Catillon. His intention was to move up to Le Cateau and ascertain the situation. It would appear that he had no information of General Smith-Dorrien's intentions to stand on the Le Cateau line, or of the exact

Digitized by Google

position the Infantry had taken up. On arrival at Basuel, the Germans were found to be in Le Cateau, and General Gough took up a position on the high ground west of Basuel. Here the Brigade (with 11th Hussars attached) remained for about four hours, holding up any further advance of the enemy south of Le Cateau.

About midday, General Gough, not being able to make out the situation, moved south-west to get touch with the Infantry battle. At St. Souplet, the 1st Cavalry Brigade were found holding a defensive flank in right rear of the main Infantry position.

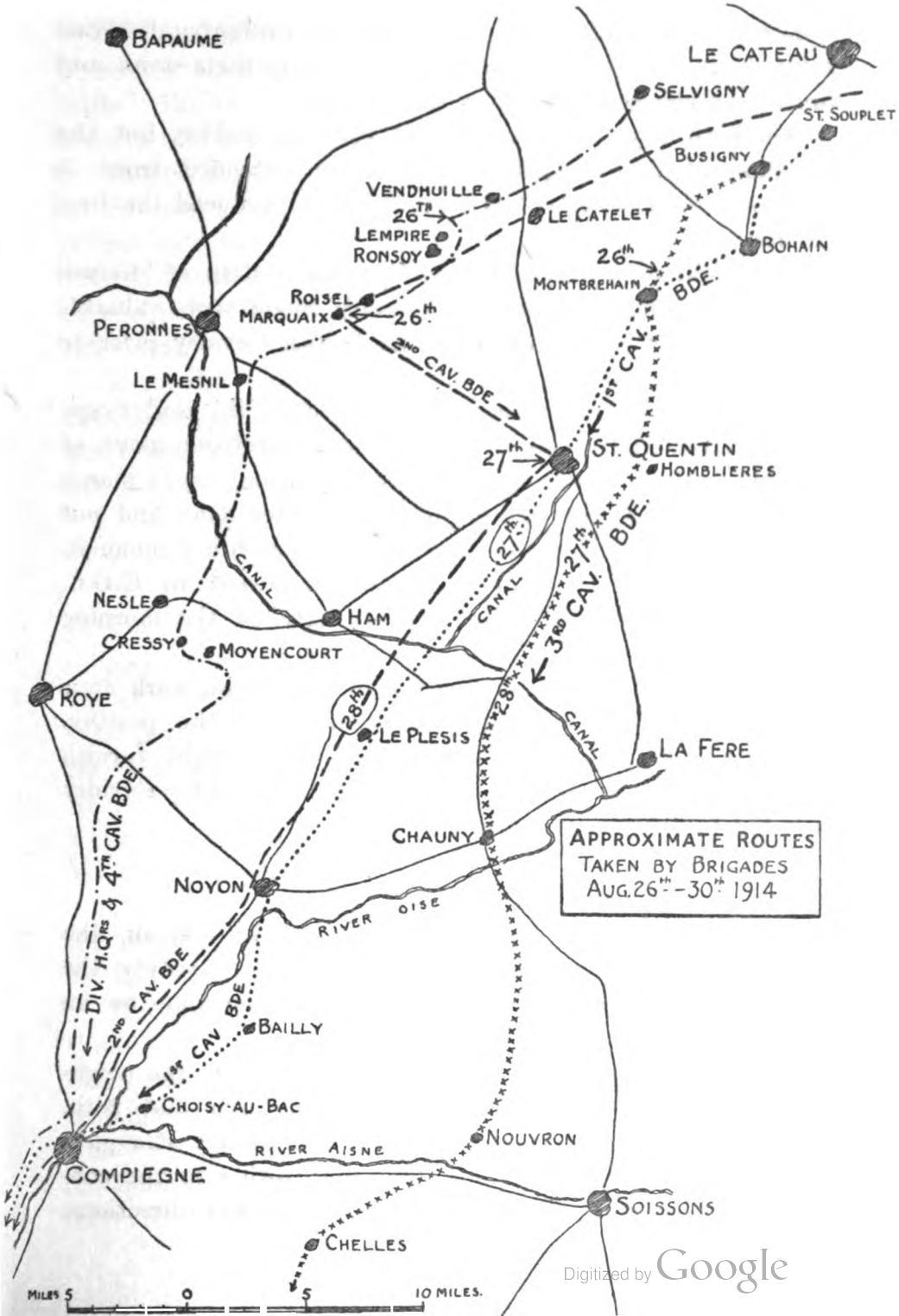
The 2nd Cavalry Brigade do not appear to have taken any part in the day's operations. From a study of the map, and of the position taken up by the Infantry as now known, it will be seen that the high ground held by General Gough in the first instance was the ideal position for a Cavalry brigade to protect the flank of the Infantry, and on his vacating it the Germans brought up their guns to a position which enfiladed the whole of the right of our Infantry line.

Divisional Head Quarters and 4th Cavalry Brigade took up a position from Ligny to Caullery to protect the left flank of the Infantry position, and at 10 a.m. fell back to Selvigny, the left of the Infantry having fallen back to that place. At 3.10 p.m. they received orders to retire towards Lempire and that the 4th Infantry Division would retire under cover of the Cavalry, which was to protect their left flank.

The Cavalry Division state that they were in touch with the Infantry throughout the action. This could only refer to the 4th Cavalry Brigade, as there was certainly no communication between Head Quarters and other units of the Division.

Throughout the whole of the operations of the 25th and 26th there was a lack of communication between the units of the Cavalry Division, and it is an interesting problem for students of military history as to whether it would not have

Digitized by Google



Digitized by Google

been advisable to attach Cavalry brigades to Infantry divisions throughout, so as to ensure orders reaching their units and full advantage being taken of their services.

On both days the Cavalry did valuable service, but the handling of four brigades on such an extended front is extremely difficult, and it is doubtful if it produced the best results.

It should be noted, however, that the system of 'liaison officers,' of which the French Cavalry made such valuable use, had never been studied by the British Cavalry prior to 1914.

There is no doubt that the situation of the 2nd Corps on the 26th was saved by the brilliant strategic move of General Sordet's French Cavalry, who by a long night march in rear of the British Army gained the outer flank and put in an attack on the German right flank at the critical moment.

Their arrival at Valenciennes was reported to G.O.C. Cavalry Division by a liaison officer early on the morning of the 26th.

This operation of the French Cavalry, the good work done by General Allenby on the left flank, and the position accidentally taken up by General Gough on the right, furnish one of the finest examples on record of the value of the Cavalry in a big Infantry engagement.

VI.

August 27 to 31.—After the battle of Le Cateau, the brigades of the Cavalry Division continued to cover the retirement of the IInd Corps for the next four days on an extended front.

The 1st and 2nd Cavalry Brigades remained in the neighbourhood of St. Quentin throughout the 27th and 28th, covering the retreat of large numbers of Infantry stragglers who lost their respective units, and who, owing to the converging roads, came through the town from various directions.

Digitized by Google

Notices had been posted up in the town showing the line of retreat of divisions so as to enable men to find their own units. During these days the Cavalry were engaged in several minor rear-guard actions with the advancing enemy.

August 31.—On the 31st, eight brigades were concentrating on the western flank near Compiegne to meet reported advance of enemy's Cavalry force, but nothing came of it, and, the French Cavalry closing in, the Cavalry Division retired south of the River Oise, holding a portion of the river line. The 1st Cavalry Brigade in reserve at Nery.

Throughout these days, the position of General Sordet's French Cavalry, exhausted as they were, completely frustrated the German plan of a Cavalry envelopment of the British left flank.

September 1914.

Attack on 1st Cavalry Brigade at Nery.

September 1.—During the night of 31/1st a German Cavalry Division with twelve guns succeeded in slipping through the Infantry line, south of the Forêt de Compiegne; moving south, they attacked the 1st Cavalry Brigade in their billets at Nery shortly after dawn in a thick fog. An account of this action will be found in the CAVALRY JOURNAL for April 1920, Vol. X., No. 36.

Though the 1st Cavalry Brigade suffered heavy casualties, the attack eventually was driven off with considerable loss to the enemy, including eight of their guns.

During the remainder of the retreat the Cavalry continued their rôle as rear-guard. The four remaining guns belonging to the German Cavalry Division who broke through and attacked at Nery were captured, but little was seen of the German troopers, who, being considerably disorganised, took refuge in the big forests until our troops had retired.

Digitized by Google

VII.—*Action of 5th Cavalry Brigade during the Retreat.*

The 5th Cavalry Brigade acted independently of the Cavalry Division under the orders of Sir Douglas Haig, commanding the Ist Corps. They performed their rôle in such a satisfactory manner that the Ist Corps were enabled to carry out their retirement with little molestation.

On August 28, whilst carrying out the duties of right flank guard to keep touch with the IInd Corps, they came in for an interesting Cavalry engagement with the German Cavalry, which had great moral effect. Account of this action will be found in the CAVALRY JOURNAL for April 1921 (Vol. XI., No. 40, page 11).

VIII.—*Cavalry Covering the Advance of the Army Northwards from Paris.*

September 3.—At the end of the retreat the Cavalry had forty-eight hours' much-needed rest in the vicinity of Gournay, and a certain amount of refitting was carried out. As soon as the decision was formed for the Allied Armies to advance, the Cavalry were hurried forward by a long afternoon's march on September 5 to get them into position for the advance on the following day.

The Cavalry led the advance of the army some 8 or 10 miles ahead of the Infantry. The average rate of progress from Paris to the Aisne was 10 miles per day as compared with 18 miles per day on the retreat. When, however, we take into consideration what the Infantry and the Cavalry men and horses had undergone during the previous ten days, an advance of 10 miles per day is a creditable performance. The Cavalry were engaged nearly every day with the enemy's rear-guards, and on many occasions the horse artillery were able to come into action against large masses of the enemy's main body. The Cavalry worked on a wide front, rapidly reinforcing success wherever met, with the result that such

Digitized by Google

portions of the enemy's line as held temporarily, eventually had to fall back or be rounded up. Considerable opposition was met with on the Petit Morin river; brigades, however, soon combined to turn the positions held after a delay of some three or four hours, during which time the Infantry closed up on the Cavalry.

The crossings of the Marne were reached by the 1st Cavalry Division after a forced march following on a full day's operations. Little opposition was met with, and the Cavalry, pushing over on the morning of September 9, made a further advance of some 10 miles. The 1st Cavalry Brigade were severely engaged at Braine, the village being strongly held. After some four hours' fighting the village was captured and the enemy retired northwards under heavy shell fire, leaving many dead. At the same time, the 2nd Cavalry Division were working to the west, and galloping the Chassemy heights cut off about 300 German Infantry who had retired from Braine. The whole of these surrendered.

On reaching the Aisne, strong German rear-guards were found holding the river line. On the right the 1st Cavalry Division drove the Germans out, and, crossing the river, seized the high ground on the north bank, holding it till relieved by Infantry.

Formation of the Second Cavalry Division.

On September 5, the British Commander-in-Chief decided to form two Cavalry Divisions out of the five brigades. The 1st, 2nd, and 4th Brigades remained in the 1st Cavalry Division under General Allenby, while General Gough was appointed to command the 2nd Cavalry Division, consisting of the 3rd and 5th Brigades. General Vaughan, who had been, up to date, chief staff Officer of the Cavalry Division, was appointed to command the 3rd Cavalry Brigade in place of General Gough.

Digitized by Google

During the remainder of the advance to the Aisne, these two divisions continued to act under the orders of G.H.Q.

IX.—*Cavalry Acting as Mobile Reserve during the Battle of the Aisne.*

As soon as the Allied advance came to a standstill in front of the position taken up by the Germans on the north bank of the river Aisne, the Cavalry were withdrawn into billets in rear of the British Army sector.

Throughout the battle of the Aisne, from September 15 to October 1, the Cavalry remained as a mobile reserve. Brigades were constantly rushed up to support the Infantry and hold sections of the line where gaps had occurred, and relieved each other in rotation. On most of these occasions, owing to the formation of the ground, the horses were kept right up close to the dismounted troops holding the line.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Photo No. 1.—Shows country thoroughly representative of the Plains of Philistia and Sharon from the W. Hesi northwards. Undulating and free from obstacles; most perfect cavalry country.

Photo No. 2.—Taken close to Ur el Tahta; the hill is 1,700 feet above sea-level and 500 to 1,000 feet lower than the hills at Beitunia and Ain Arik, both subsequently attacked by Yeodiv. The country shown is, however, typical of the country in which Yeodiv. operated.

Digitized by Google

OPERATIONS OF THE MOUNTED TROOPS OF THE EGYPTIAN EXPEDITIONARY FORCE (*continued*)

CHAPTER XIX. PHASE IV.

By LIEUT.-COLONEL REX OSBORNE, D.S.O., M.C.,
20th Hussars.

The Advance into the Judæan Mountains.

Ref. Map A (*see* page 376, CAVALRY JOURNAL, October 1921) and Plate X.

THE problem which faced the C.-in-C. on November 16 was a difficult one. He had decisively defeated his enemy, and had ultimately caused him to separate his forces.

The C.-in-C. had interposed a force of three Cavalry divisions and two divisions between these separated forces, and was determined, while holding off one force with a detachment, to continue the pressure on the other. A continuation of the advance up the Maritime Plain in pursuit of VIIIth Turkish Army would have given the Cavalry their best chance, for the Plain of Sharon, which lies north of a line Ludd-Jaffa, is as suitable for the action of large Cavalry forces as is the Plain of Philistia, to the south of that line (*see* Photo. No. 1). But the communications would have been in danger from counter-offensive from the mouth of the pass at Latron or from the main road which runs from Jerusalem south-westwards to Beersheba.

The C.-in-C. was of opinion that, before the position in the plain could be considered secure, it was essential to

Digitized by Google

obtain hold, north of Jerusalem, of the one good road which traverses the Judæan range from north to south. He therefore decided to force his way into the Judæan Mountains.

The difficulties were immense. The only troops available for immediate action were Descorps (three Cavalry divisions, 7th Mounted Brigade and Imperial Camel Brigade) and XXIst Corps (52nd and 75th Divisions), which had carried out the pursuit. The XXth Corps (53rd, 74th, 10th and 60th Divisions) was still back between Gaza and Beersheba, mainly for want of transport and lack of efficient communications. The 54th Division of XXIst Corps was gradually moving up from Gaza and had reached Julis. Transport had actually to be sent back from 52nd and 75th Divisions to enable 54th Division to march.

The leading divisions were tired; they only had their summer cotton khaki clothing; the winter rains had already begun to fall, and it was obvious that it would be very cold 3,000 feet up on the top of the mountains.

The difficulties of supply were very great. The advanced troops were about 40 miles in front of railhead; the broad-gauge railway was advancing from Deir el Belah very slowly, and did not reach Deir Sineid and so join up with the Turkish narrow-gauge railway (3 feet 6 inches) until November 28. A certain amount of Turkish rolling stock had been captured at, and south of, Junction Station, and was used.

Once the rains broke, the mechanical transport lorries, working forward from about Gaza, quickly went through the one poorly-metalled main road, and the camel convoys suffered severely in the mud, in which the camels slid and slithered and frequently broke their legs. Every opportunity was taken to land stores on the coast, but this work, on this notorious coast, was dependent upon a continuance of favourable weather, and might at any moment be stopped for several days together.

Digitized by Google

The supply of rations and other necessaries of life, such as clothing, fuel and tentage, was precarious, and the supply of forage to the large number of horses in forward areas was already inadequate.

Lastly, and most difficult of all, the attainment of the objective involved the forcing of the famous Pass of Bab-el-Wad, between Latron and Kuryet el Enab; a pass which throughout past centuries has stopped army after army, and which was known to be fortified with field entrenchments; the agents working for the Intelligence Branch of the General Staff at G.H.Q. considered this pass impregnable to attack from the west.

The west side of the Judæan range consists of a series of spurs running down from east to west, and separated from one another by narrow valleys. These spurs are, for the most part, steep, bare and rocky; they are much terraced for the cultivation of the olive, and are in some places precipitous.

In the intended area of operations, *i.e.*, the area Junction Station—Ludd—Bire—Jerusalem, only one good road, the Jaffa—Latron—Jerusalem road, traversed the mountains from west to east, and that road ran through the Pass of Bab-el-Wad (extends from the *K* to the *l* of *K*uryet *el* Enab. Ref.: Map A). The other routes, shown on Map A, east of a south and north line drawn through Sura, Latron and Annabe, were mere native donkey-pack and camel-pack tracks on the sides of the hills or up the stony beds of wadis, and were impracticable for wheeled transport without improvement.

In spite of the state of his leading troops and of the weather; in spite of the difficulties of supplying food, forage, clothing and ammunition; and in spite of the lessons of past history in this land, which counsel caution, the C.-in-C. decided to force his way at once into the Judæan Mountains and take Jerusalem, before sitting down to reorganise, re-equip and assure his communications.

Digitized by Google

His decision brought much discomfort and hardship upon his troops; but, in the sequel, all ranks thoroughly recognised that the one time to force the Judæan Mountains, and in particular the pass of Bab-el-Wad, is upon the heels of a demoralised enemy. Subsequent events showed clearly what procrastination would have cost; and the *morale* of the troops, in spite of their hardships, rose higher and higher as they realised that they were in the hands of a commander who made his decisions quickly, and apparently always soundly, and who certainly never wavered once they were made.

Plan.

The task primarily allotted to Descorps was, without waiting for the Infantry, to push forward in all directions so as to give the enemy no rest, and to allow him as little time as possible to bring up reinforcements. The two divisions of XXIst Corps, preceded, if possible, by Yeodiv. and Ausdiv., were to move into the mountains and, avoiding any fighting in or near the Holy City, to isolate it from the north.

Narrative.

November 18.

Anzac Division advanced northwards up the plain with the object of containing that portion of the Turkish forces which had retired up the Maritime Plain; the division was ordered to establish a line south of the Auja from the foothills to the sea.

Yeodiv., with Hong Kong and Singapore Mountain Battery attached (camel pack), started on a dash for Bire, situated on the main road north of Jerusalem, moving by the track from Ludd through Berfilya, Shilta and Ur el Tahta, which nineteen centuries before had been a Roman road. The Cavalry brigades had to wind their way along rock-strewn wadis, and over tracks which, in November 1919, existed only on the map. Horses could only march in single file,

Digitized by Google

and for the most part had to be led. Sniping opposition was encountered. With great difficulty 8th Mounted Brigade reached Ur el Tahta by nightfall; 22nd Mounted Brigade reached Shilta. (*See* Photo. No. 2.)

Ausdiv., meanwhile, attempted to capture the mouth of the pass at Latron; 4th A.L.H. Brigade could make no progress against the opposition encountered; 3rd A.L.H. Brigade attempted to move north of Latron through the mountains and reach the main road between Latron and Kuryet el Enab.

The brigade pressed on throughout the day; two water-carts and three ambulance wagons collapsed, and finally the guns and wheels had to be left behind.

Horses had to be led, as the hills became too rocky for riding, and many horses were lamed.

The advanced squadrons, however, penetrated well behind the enemy's right flank, and Notts Battery, R.H.A., found good targets at Latron and shot 189 rounds during the afternoon at a range of 5,000 yards, and silenced a hostile battery. The Turkish gunners attempted to manhandle this battery away, but rapid fire was opened and the enemy was dispersed without removing his guns.

At 1630 hours, Ausdiv. was ordered to withdraw, presumably because the difficulties were too great, and 75th Division was to advance against the mouth of the pass next day.

The efforts of Ausdiv. had not, however, been entirely unsuccessful; the threat against their right flank had been too much for the Turks, who abandoned the position during the night, leaving the four guns in position.

5th Mounted Brigade attempted to reach the rear of the enemy's position by moving from Junction Station up the Jerusalem railway, but found the country impassable for Cavalry, and perhaps even for Infantry, in face of only slight opposition.

Digitized by Google

November 19.

Yeodiv. continued its advance. Imperative orders had been issued to the 8th and 22nd Mounted Brigades to take Bire on 19th at all costs. Difficulties of the route, or fatigue of horses, or shortage of supplies, were not to be considered. Turkish supplies and water would be found at Bire.

At daybreak 8th Mounted Brigade pushed on for Beitunia, while 22nd Mounted Brigade made for Ain Arik, thus protecting the left flank.

The 'going' was even worse than on the 18th. Not only had the horses to be led in single file, but the majority of the men had to lead two horses, as the heights on both flanks had to be picqueted. Vehicles simply could not advance further. G.O.C. 22nd Mounted Brigade sent Hants Battery, R.H.A., back to Ludd, and went on without it, reaching Ain Arik at dusk.

8th Mounted Brigade was not so fortunate, and finally the Brigadier decided it was absolutely impossible to push on further.

The Divisional Commander, however, was determined to obey his orders to the letter and count no costs, and at 2100 hours issued orders to the following effect for next day:

'6th Mounted Brigade to advance at 0600 hours on Beitunia and Bire *viâ* Ur el Foka. 22nd Mounted Brigade to continue its advance on Bire *viâ* Ain Arik. 20th Brigade, R.H.A. (less Hants Battery, R.H.A.), to concentrate at Ur el Tahta under escort of one regiment, 8th Mounted Brigade. Hong Kong and Singapore Mountain Battery to be attached to 6th Mounted Brigade. Div.H.Q. to follow 6th Mounted Brigade. 8th Mounted Brigade (less one regiment escort to guns) to withdraw to Tahta and follow Div.H.Q. as divisional reserve.'

On this day the Infantry continued its advance:

75th Division, advancing through Latron, pushed on

Digitized by Google

through the narrow defile against considerable opposition and reached within three miles of Kuryet el Enab. The experience of the Gurkhas and 58th Rifles (Indian Army) in mountain warfare was of the greatest value.

52nd Division advanced from about El Kubab, parallel to and on the left of the 75th Division, and reached Beit Likia. Only six guns could be brought up, and these were extra-horsed up to ten and twelve horses per gun.

On this day the real winter rains broke in a torrential downpour, and they continued all night.

The three divisions had reached a height of between 2,000 and 2,500 feet in winter, in mountains on which snow falls. When the rain fell it turned very cold. The troops were dressed in summer clothing, *i.e.*, khaki-drill; they had no blankets, greatcoats or tents, and there were no billets. Each man had a waterproof-sheet to lie on, and in addition a canvas 'bivouac' sheet which, when laced to the sheet of a pal and propped on sticks, formed a small bivouac for two men. Both of these things are cold comfort on mountain-tops.

The men, in fact, were suitably dressed and equipped for the northern edge of the Sinai desert in October, and suffered accordingly.

November 20.

Yeodiv. 6th Mounted Brigade struggled slowly forward through Ur el Foka, and in the vicinity of Beitunia met organised resistance, which they were unable to brush aside before dark.

22nd Mounted Brigade sent one regiment forward from Ain Arik, directed upon Ram Allah. It reached half way and found that Beitunia was held by a strong force of Turks, who were now interposed between the leading regiment of 22nd Mounted Brigade and the 6th Mounted Brigade.

The Horse Artillery could not accompany the Cavalry

Digitized by Google

at all, and the 20th Brigade R.H.A. was sent back out of the mountains to Ramleh.

75th Division captured Kuryet el Enab with the bayonet, and *52nd Division* occupied Beit Dukka. Rain fell heavily and continuously throughout the day.

November 21. (*See* Plate X. and Map A.)

Yeodiv. made last desperate efforts to reach Bire. 22nd Mounted Brigade got to within two miles, but the opposition at Ram Allah was too strong; it then tried to assist 6th Mounted Brigade in its attack on Beitunia, but the combined effort failed. The troops were exhausted and severely handicapped with led horses; the camel mountain battery comprised their only Artillery support.

At 1500 hours the Turks commenced to counter-attack, and forced a partial withdrawal of 6th Mounted Brigade. Thereupon the Divisional Commander at last admitted failure to reach Bire and decided to withdraw his division during the night to Ur el Foka and Ur el Tahta, where they would be within reach of reinforcement and help from 52nd Division.

All horses were sent back to Ur el Foka soon after 1500 hours. The withdrawal of personnel commenced at 1930 hours, and was successfully accomplished. All wounded were got safely away, and their convoys had all passed Ur el Foka by 0200 hours on November 22.

The enemy apparently were unaware of the withdrawal during the night and made no effort to follow up.

The casualties of Yeodiv. during November 21, as officially reported, were about 300 killed and wounded.

The total number of rifles deployed in the line by Yeodiv. was never greater than 1,200.

Subsequent intelligence disclosed the fact that Beitunia had been held on this day by over 3,000 Turks with four batteries of ·77's and some camel guns, and that these troops were well trained and fresh from Aleppo.

Digitized by Google

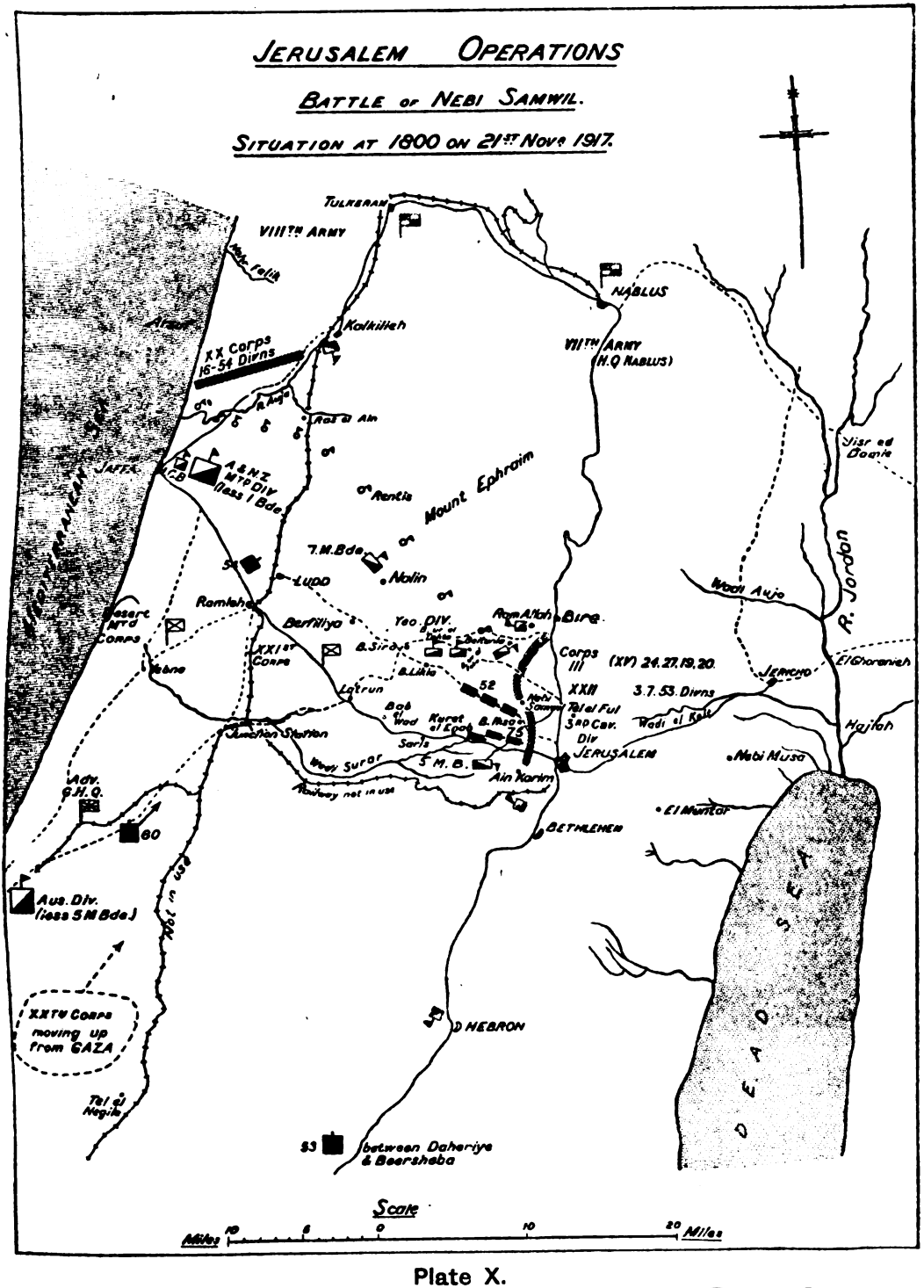


Plate X.

Digitized by Google

Comments.

Military writers—English, French, American and German—have described the success of the British Cavalry in the Palestine Campaign, and in particular the final operations in 1918, as a wonderful Cavalry achievement. It is often obvious, however, that, being without local knowledge, they are wondering how the armament and fighting qualities of the Turk, and the degree of opposition put up by him in this campaign, compare with the opposition met by English, French and German Cavalry in other theatres, in mobile operations.

The writer suggests that the only just basis upon which to form a conclusion lies in a comparison of the percentages of casualties suffered in relation to the number of troops engaged in operations of like nature; in this case, in mobile operations, *i.e.*, in movement or in temporarily arrested movement, and with horses held by horseholders and close at hand.

It may interest the reader to study the casualties of Yeodiv. on November 21 from this point of view. Yeodiv., on that day, lost 300 killed and wounded out of 1,200 engaged.

Is there any other example in the late war of a Cavalry division—English, French or German—suffering such a high percentage of killed and wounded in one day, in mobile operations? It would be interesting to hear of it through the columns of this JOURNAL.

In trying to find such an example, an officer will come clearly to realise the nature of the fight put up by Yeodiv. on that day.

75th Division had secured Kustul by evening on November 21, and Nebi Samwil, a position of the greatest importance because of the observation from it; from here the eye can see the Mediterranean, Jerusalem and the Jordan Valley.

During November 22, 23 and 24, *Yeodiv.* consolidated its

Digitized by Google

position. On the 25th all horses, except those required for machine guns, Hotchkiss rifles and packs, were sent back to Ramleh in the plain.

During these days heavy fighting took place about Nebi Samwil. 75th and 52nd Divisions made two determined and gallant attacks on the hostile positions covering the main road to the north. The Artillery, from lack of roads, could not give adequate support to the Infantry, and both attacks failed.

It was now evident that a period of preparation and organisation would be necessary before Jerusalem could be cut off from the north. The two worn-out divisions of XXIst Corps consolidated their positions and awaited relief by the fresh Divisions of XXth Corps.

Much had been accomplished. Had the passes from the plain into the mountains not been taken with a rush, the enemy would have had time to reorganise his defences in the western foothills, and the conquest of the plateau would have been slow, costly and precarious. As it was, positions had been won from which the final attack could be prepared and delivered with good prospects of success.

Yeodiv., however, was in a very critical position. Only 1,000 rifles were now available to hold more than 7 miles of front (one man to 12 yards). A gap of over 5 miles existed from its left at Ur el Tahta to the right of the outpost line of 54th Division about Shilta. The troops were exhausted with many days' hard hill-fighting and great physical exertions. The rocky precipitous ridges, separated by deep wadis, rendered the reinforcement of a threatened part of the line a matter of several hours, so that sectors, and even posts, had to rely on their own resources to repel attack.

On the afternoon of November 27 the enemy commenced his offensive. He first attacked, with 400 men and a howitzer battery, a forward post of 6th Mounted Brigade at Zeitoun, held by two officers and sixty O.R.s. During the afternoon

Digitized by Google

the garrison suffered fifty-seven casualties (92 per cent.), but still held on. Twenty-five men were sent up from Foka to reinforce Zeitoun, but, such was the difficulty of the country, they took $2\frac{3}{4}$ hours to cover the distance.

Meantime 200 Turks attacked the left of 8th Mounted Brigade just north-east of Beit Dukka. A deserter reported at least 2,000 Turks at Beitunia prepared to follow up these attacks. At nightfall the situation looked so threatening that the Divisional Commander asked that the despatch of Descorps Reserve, 7th Mounted Brigade, which had already been detailed to relieve one brigade of Yeodiv. next day, might be accelerated.

This brigade was rushed up from the plain during the night, and 52nd Division, which had been relieved by 60th Division and was withdrawing out of the mountains for a well-earned rest, was hurried back to come up on the left of Yeodiv., but did not arrive until 0900 hours next day, 28th.

At 0630 hours, November 28, 800 Turks suddenly developed a strong attack against the left of Yeodiv. at Ur el Tahta. Fortunately, the Sherwood Rangers and South Notts Hussars, of 7th Mounted Brigade, had arrived and were massed behind the left, and there is no doubt that their arrival saved Yeodiv. from disaster. The Turkish rush was stopped at very close quarters, but not until the Turks had got temporary command of the communications to the rear and had exterminated a portion of the Brigade Ammunition Column, which was coming up with ammunition, but without escort. Two of the Mounted Brigade Headquarters fought all day at such close quarters that all their pistol ammunition was expended.

Heavy fighting continued throughout the day; the Turks overwhelmed the gallant post on Zeitoun, and the 8th Mounted Brigade was forced out of Ur el Foka.

The horses of 7th Mounted Brigade were a great handicap

Digitized by Google

in the mountain ravine, and the official report states that, in each of two regiments, 100 horses were killed by shellfire.

During November 29 the Turks continued to attack, but reserves were arriving, and the crisis came to an end.

Arrangements were made for 74th Division and 52nd Division to relieve Yeodiv. during the night November 29–30, while Ausdiv. was hurried up from Mejdel, where they had been resting by the sea, and filled the gap on the left of 52nd Division by establishing a line Beit Sira–El Burj.

In the early hours of November 30, Yeodiv. left the line, after ten days' very heavy fighting, intense exertion, and great discomfort. With never more than 1,200 rifles in the line, Yeodiv. had suffered, during these days, 499 casualties.

The exceptionally fine behaviour of this division, and the importance of its achievement, were thoroughly appreciated throughout the force. The division marched back to bivouac in the plain at the site of its former great triumph at El Mughar.

Ref. Plate XI. and Map A.

Ausdiv. worked hard to prepare a defensive position in anticipation of attack. Big stones were collected and made into sangars, as it was too rocky to dig. The three H.A. Batteries covered the position. All the horses were sent down into the plain.

At 0120 hours, December 1, the attack fell on the junction of the 3rd and 4th A.L.H. Brigades; confused fighting resulted, but as dawn broke it was seen that the enemy was in a cup under crossfire and had suffered immense casualties. He was counter-attacked, surrounded and captured. 112 unwounded and 60 wounded prisoners were taken, and over 100 dead were buried. The casualties in Ausdiv. were five officers and forty-seven O.R.s.

It was subsequently established that 190th Assault Battalion of the 19th Turkish Division, picked troops,

Digitized by Google

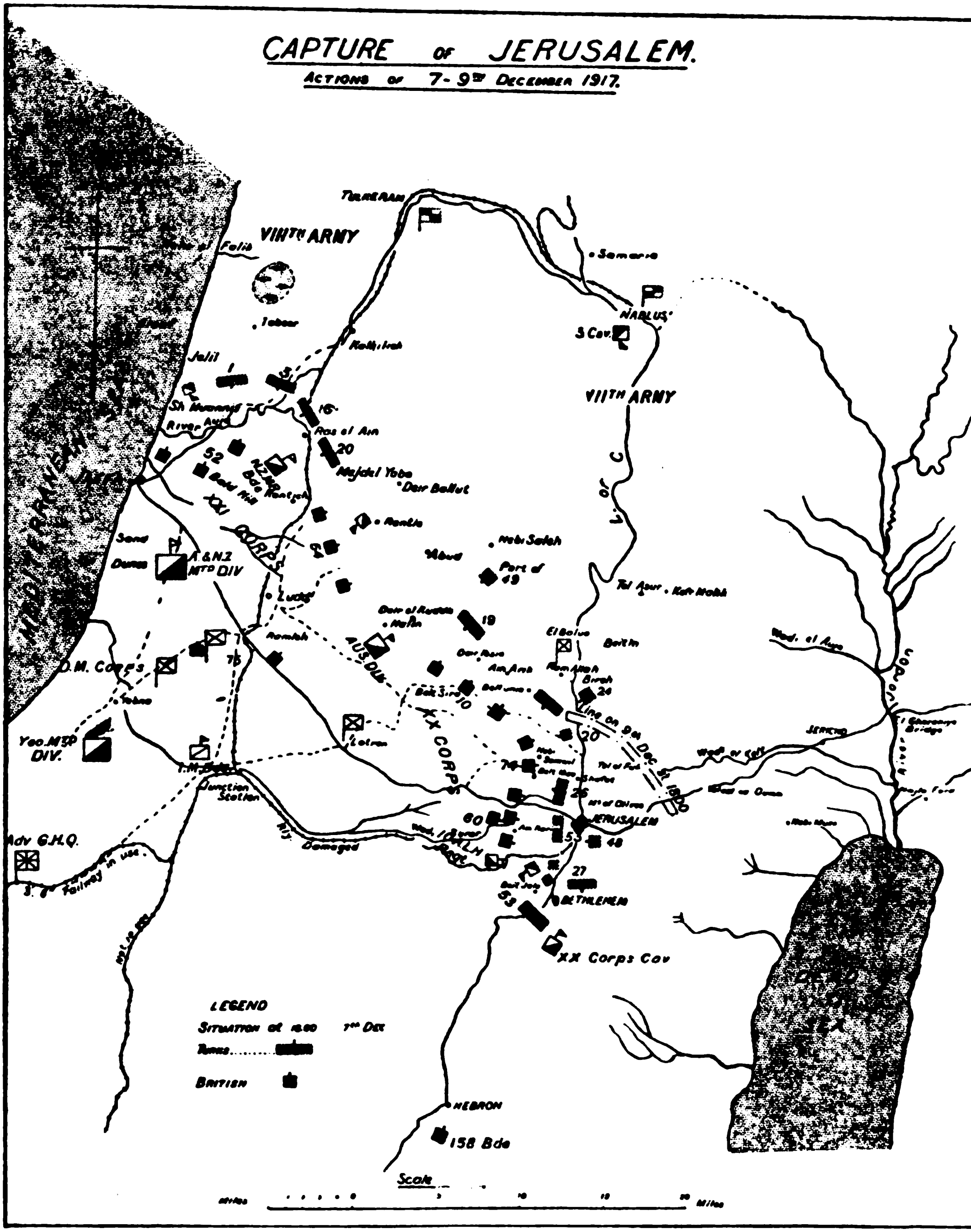

CAPTURE OF JERUSALEM.
ACTIONS OF 7-9TH DECEMBER 1917.
VIIITH ARMY
VIITH ARMY
NABLUS
Samaria
Ras el Ain
Majdel Yaba
Deir Ballut
Nebi Saleh
A.&N.Z. MTD DIV
Ludd
Ramleh
XXI CORPS
XX CORPS
D.M. CORPS
Yeo. MTD DIV.
Junction Station
Latron
Adv G.H.Q.
JERUSALEM
BETHLEHEM
XX Corps Cav
HEBRON
158 Bde
LEGEND
BRITISH
Scale
Miles

Plate XI.

500 strong, had started out on this attack; and Turkish deserters declared later that none ever came back, and that the mysterious and complete disappearance of a whole battalion had a very bad moral effect.

The Maritime Plain. (Plate X.)

Anzac Division, during the fortnight November 17–December 1, were busily employed in containing the remnants of Turkish VIIIth Army, which had withdrawn north along the Plain of Sharon.

The enemy allowed Anzac Division to press them over the Nahr el Auja, but counter-attacked heavily to maintain the northern bank. The line (*see* Map A) Yahudie–Jerisheh–south bank of the Auja to the sea was consolidated in expectation of a general counter-offensive by the Turks in the plain, but the attack did not materialise. The 54th Division came up into the line, which stabilised across the plain.

Capture of Jerusalem. (Plate XI.)

During the first week in December, the final preparations for the taking of Jerusalem were completed.

The 60th, 74th and 10th Divisions of XXth Corps, well rested, had relieved the war-worn XXIst Corps; 53rd Division had advanced from Beersheba along the watershed to co-operate in the attack, and touch between it and 60th Division at Ain Karim was established by the 10th A.L.H. Regiment, detached from Ausdiv.

The assault commenced at dawn on December 8. By the morning of December 9 Jerusalem was isolated, with the roads cut on the south, east and north, and at noon the enemy surrendered the city.

Stabilisation.

During the last weeks of December the C.-in-C. attacked in the plain with XXIst Corps, and astride the Jerusalem–

Digitized by Google

Nablus road with XXth Corps, in order to drive the enemy back out of gun-range of Jerusalem and Jaffa, and of the main road joining those two places.

These operations were successful in both cases, and Von Falkenhayn's great counter-attack in the mountains, intended to retake Jerusalem, was smashed to pieces most brilliantly by XXth Corps, who buried more than 1,000 Turks.

The line now stabilised as follows (Plate XII. and Map A):

XXth Corps.

53rd Division astride the Jerusalem–Jericho road; 60th Division astride the Jerusalem–Nablus road near El Jib; 74th Division on the approximate line Foka–Tahta–Shilta; Ausdiv. still in the mountains at Nalin, but about to be withdrawn to the sea.

XXIst Corps.

75th, 54th and 52nd Divisions on the general line Beit Nebala–Nebi Tari—in front of Mulebbis—El Haram (on the coast).

The Relief of Descorps. (Map A.)

Descorps.

By the end of the first week in January the entire corps —Yeodiv., Ausdiv., Anzac Division, 7th Mounted Brigade and I.C. Brigade—had been withdrawn from the line and had moved southwards to the sea to rest, re-equip and train; Yeodiv., Ausdiv. and 7th Mounted Brigade at Deir el Belah, south of Gaza; Anzac Division at Esdud, near the mouth of the Nahr Sukerier.

It was obvious that the front had stabilised; the fact that the Turkish right rested on the sea and his left in difficult mountainous country, with still more mountainous country away to the east across the Jordan Valley (*see* Plate XII., appearing in next issue), gave little promise of facility for outflanking movements by large Cavalry forces; the idea arose

Digitized by Google

that Cavalry exploitation in the future would be through a gap made in the enemy's front rather than round his flank. The training at Belah, consequently, dealt mainly with the exploitation of the action of the other arms on a battle front, and with the passage of a defile.

Immediately on reaching Belah, the G.O.C. Ausdiv. applied to the G.O.C. Descorps to arm the 3rd and 4th A.L.H. Brigades of his division with the sword, in addition to the rifle and bayonet. He expressed the firm conviction that his A.L.H. had been severely handicapped, during the Cavalry pursuit from Beersheba to Junction Station, for want of an *arme blanche* weapon.

The corps commander decided to put the question to the vote.

The three brigade commanders of the 1st and 2nd A.L.H. Brigades and of the N.Z.M.R. Brigade of Anzac Division voted against the sword; the writer presumes, but cannot be certain, that the regimental commanders of these three brigades held the same opinion as their brigade commanders.

The two brigade commanders of the 3rd and 4th A.L.H. Brigades of Ausdiv. (the other brigade being 5th Mounted Brigade, armed with a sword and not concerned in this voting) voted for the sword; the six Australian regimental commanders of these two brigades were in solid agreement with their brigade commanders.

The G.O.C. Descorps decided, as two Australian and one New Zealand Brigade had voted against, and only two Australian brigades for, the sword, that swords should not be issued.

The G.O.C. Ausdiv., of course, accepted this decision loyally. He realised, however, that pursuit might again come in the Maritime Plain, and that the most suitable form of attack might be the mounted attack. He therefore trained his division in the use of the bayonet as an *arme blanche* weapon.

Digitized by Google

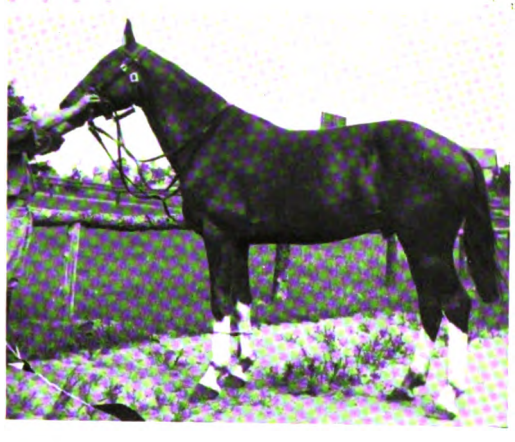
Dummy-thrusting courses and dummy-charging scaffolds were built, and all the junior Australian officers were taught to use the bayonet as a sword. In the Divisional Sports, skill-at-arms competitions were held, and the Australians with the bayonet competed against the Yeomen with the sword, and right well they held their own. The corps commander attended these competitions and was most interested in the results.

(To be continued.)

IMPORTANT

The Staff of the Journal is very limited, and it is therefore necessary for all officers who obtain the Journal direct from the Managing Editor to report any alteration of rank or address immediately, as it is quite impossible to follow up the stations of individual officers: every effort will, however, be made to trace the moves of regiments.

Digitized by Google



THE ROYAL CANADIAN DRAGOONS.

1. Review Order.
2. Transport Horses.
3. Officer's Cob.
4. Remount, Ontario bred.
5. Officer's Charger.
6. Remount, Ontario bred.

Digitized by Google

1

2

3

4

5

6

METHODS OF CARRYING THE PISTOL.

Digitized by Google

CARRYING THE PISTOL

HAVING read Captain J. Noel's article on 'Revolver Training' in the CAVALRY JOURNAL of January 1921 with much interest, I was encouraged by it to write on a point not generally considered, *i.e.*, the method of carrying the revolver.

The revolver course of to-day is far ahead of anything thought of before the war, and a man can now be taught to shoot practically.

It has always appeared to me that Englishmen seem to naturally dislike the revolver as much as the knife, considering both the weapons of the assassin. The soldier uses the rifle and the bayonet, and I never could see why a revolver or knife were any less gentlemanly. However, the late war has disposed of any squeamishness as to weapons.

The result is that it is very often difficult to make officers carry revolvers *and* ammunition, and they generally carry them so uncomfortably that they may be excused for refusing to do so, except under pressure.

In America there was not this dislike of the revolver, and during the last century it was carried and used with great effect in peace and war.

In all personal reminiscences of the Mexican War, Civil War and Indian Campaigns, one cannot help being struck by the amount of execution done by and the extensive use of the Colt revolver.

In peace, during the settling of the West, the Colt was carried by all the frontier population, cattlemen, buffalo hunters, miners, &c., and these men fought the Indians, and sometimes each other, with the rifle and revolver.

Amongst these men the method of carrying and quick drawing of the Colt was considered as important as accurate shooting.

Digitized by Google

It is not enough to shoot the revolver course. One should practise drawing and snapping the weapon at odd times and get used to its hang and feel, like a shot gun.

Before going on with the suggestions for carrying the revolver, I should like to mention some incidents of which I have personal knowledge, illustrating the uselessness of carrying a revolver if no interest is taken in it.

All three incidents occurred on the North-West Frontier of India, where there is a standing order that everyone must be armed outside cantonments.

1. An officer, travelling in a tonga, got out to inspect some road work. He left his revolver in a holster on the seat of the tonga a few yards away. A gentleman of the country ran at him with a knife, stuck him in the stomach, and got away untouched. The officer died.

2. An officer with a troop of Cavalry, made a mounted attack on some raiders. He drew his revolver (a Webley-Fosberry), pressed the wrong button, and, instead of putting it into gear, extracted all the cartridges. His horse was immediately shot dead, but the officer escaped with a shaking.

3. An Infantry officer, in an attack on a position, perceived an enemy making a 'Ghazi' attack on him. He attempted to draw his revolver, which he carried upside down in the small of his back. He managed to open the flap and the revolver fell on the ground. The officer's orderly shot the Ghazi with his rifle.

During the South African War of 1899–1902, officers got so careless that eventually very few carried revolvers.

In France, in the late war, I never failed to hear deep cursing caused by the discomfort of revolvers uncomfortably worn, and on the slightest pretext they were not worn.

The lessons are:

(1) The old, old one. You don't often want a gun, but when you do you want it very badly.

Digitized by Google

(2) If you carry a gun, carry it so that it is comfortable and handy, or you will always shirk carrying it, and it is just at that time the trouble comes.

I suggest the following methods of carrying the revolver.

All the methods are as old as the hills, and many officers have carried them in all the ways suggested.

Always the holster must be carefully adjusted to the individual and carefully fitted to the revolver. These are the two most important points of all.

I like carrying cartridges in slips in the belt or strap. They are handy, are spread over a long space, and don't rattle or bump as a pouch does.

No. 1.—Regulation way. But see the holster is well sloped so that you can mount easily and draw across the stomach. See the support strap is in the right place.

Nos. 2, 3 and 4.—Cowboy belt and open holster. Worn under the coat. Most comfortable for a horseman, as all the weight is on the spread of the hips and not on the stomach. Very easy to get at *if not covered with map cases, water bottles, &c.* Must be tied down at the point, round the thigh, and the pistol kept from jolting out by a small strap over the hammer.

Nos. 5 and 6.—Should be hung rather low on the right or left side. Ordinarily, it would be worn with the Sam Browne belt, which keeps the holster steady. It has the advantage of being wearable without the Sam Browne belt, in the same way as the cowboy belt, when off duty, &c. in a dangerous country.

The whole question of pattern of revolver, automatic or otherwise, is a question of individual preference. What is necessary is that the individual should find out what method suits him best and then get himself *fitted.* The result in comfort and efficiency in the use of the weapon will be found to be astonishing.

ARKANSAS.

Digitized by Google

MOUNTED INFANTRY ON THE SUDAN BORDER

THE Sudanese Cavalry, the Arab Mounted Infantry and Mounted Machine Gun Corps constitute a mobile and self-contained force of the highest value for the maintenance of law and order among the wild tribes upon the borders of the Sudan. Horse and Mountain Artillery has been, to a considerable extent, replaced by the Heavy Machine Gun, which can be more easily supplied with ammunition when it becomes necessary to cover immense distances and to traverse successive expanses of desert, mountain and bush country in order to reinforce a locality threatened by marauders from beyond the frontier.

Successful operations have recently been accomplished by the Arab Mounted Infantry, at a distance of 700 miles, as the crow flies, west of the Nile, and the fight at Nyala, under circumstances about to be described, ranks among the finest examples of disciplined courage facing and overthrowing superior numbers in Sudan warfare.

At Nyala, 120 miles south-west of El Fasher, which is the capital of that district, one British Inspector (Tennant McNeill) and forty police being the garrison in residence, there were rumours of a *fiki* or seditious fanatic in the Masalit country to the south, with a following of armed natives from beyond the border. About September 23 the authorities at Fasher heard an attack was likely. Most of the British officers were either on leave or on the road to Fasher at the time.

Half a company, Western Arab Corps Mounted Infantry, under Yuzbashi Bilal Rizk (a Sudanese and the son of an

Digitized by Google

old private of the 9th Sudanese), left for Nyala and marched the 120 miles in 50½ hours, arriving there on the evening of the 25th. The remaining half-company Mounted Infantry followed a day behind with two Vickers' guns, but unfortunately arrived the day after the fight.

About 8.30 a.m. on the 26th, the rebels, estimated to be 5,000 strong, with seven flags under Abdullahi the *fiki*, attacked in a dense phalanx, five flags attacking the south face, one the east, and one the west. In spite of appalling losses, they forced their way into the defended area—the Mounted Infantry and police slowly retiring. Captain Chown* emptied his revolver and seized a rifle, which jammed. He died fighting most gallantly. McNeill was meanwhile rallying the troops, but he shortly afterwards fell, his body pierced by four spears. At this time the situation was utterly desperate. Bilal Rizk, however, rushed across to a small Mounted Infantry post defending the market place on the east, and attacked the rebels in rear, driving them out of the defensive area, which was at once re-occupied. Shortly afterwards, the second attack was made, led by Abdullahi in person. The attack got within 30 yards when Abdullahi was struck by a bullet, knocked off his horse and carried from the field. Then our Arab friendlies, about 200 posted on the flanks, who up to now had been too cunning or undecided to commit themselves to action, took courage and charged, driving the rebels off and scattering them in great confusion. What might have been a dreadful disaster was averted by the splendid example set by the two English officers, the good shooting and steadiness of the troops and police (many of them old discharged 9th Sudanese men),

* Captain Harry Chown, Royal Army Veterinary Corps, of Blagraves, Mapledurham, formerly served in the Berkshire and 1st County of London Yeomanry. He was granted a regular commission as captain in the R.A.V.C. in 1915; proceeded to France with the Ulster Division, 1915; remained with them till September 1918, when he joined the Egyptian Army and became Inspecting Veterinary Officer for Southern Darfur.

Digitized by Google

and the ability with which Bilal Rizk acted and did the only thing possible to restore the day to us. Our losses were about forty killed and twenty-one wounded out of a total of ninety odd rifles. The rebels' losses were very heavy—600 dead lay around the zareba, and their lines of retreat were strewn with killed and wounded. Abdullahi was captured and kept prisoner, severely wounded, in Nyala, being subsequently tried, sentenced and hanged on October 28.

The rising repercussed elsewhere and another attack on Nyala was threatened under a new leader that had arisen. Consequently a French Boundary Commission was temporarily held up, at Nahud, where they had assembled to delimit part of the Wadai border in conjunction with the Survey Officers of the Sudan Government.

The three camel companies of the Camel Corps went through the 450 miles from El Obeid to El Fasher in fifteen days. The Mounted Infantry and Infantry companies of the Camel Corps, the motor Machine Guns and the Camel Company, Eastern Arab Corps, made a concentric movement to Darfur. Thus the Camel Corps carried out its normal rôle of reinforcing the borderland, and order supervened.

Had the attack on Nyala succeeded, as it so nearly did, the effect on the tribes of Southern Darfur would have been immediate, and, impelled by fanaticism or greed of plunder, many of these born hunters, fighters and marauders would have joined the insurgents.

Digitized by Google

THE MACHINE GUN CORPS (CAVALRY) IN FRANCE, 1916–1918

By CAPTAIN T. PRESTON, M.C., *Yorkshire Hussars.*

VIII.—THE GREAT GERMAN OFFENSIVE (*continued*).

(f) *Actions of the 10th, 11th, 12th, 13th and 14th Machine Gun Squadrons, which were not in the Cavalry Divisions.*

As already related,* these five squadrons (originally in the 4th and 5th Cavalry Divisions) were about to be broken up when the battle started on March 21. They were either at the base or on the way there, and were hastily sent up to reinforce different Infantry divisions.

The 10th and 13th Machine Gun Squadrons were, on March 23, incorporated in a mixed machine-gun force under Colonel Ironside,† commandant of the Machine Gun School at Camiers. This force went up by rail and lorry to Saulty in the IVth Corps area, arriving there at 6 a.m., March 26. Saulty was then under long-range shell-fire, and Colonel Ironside received a report that the enemy had broken through.

After a reconnaissance, it was arranged that the 10th Squadron (Major G. W. Scratton, M.C.) should hold the ridge west of Hébuterne, whilst the 13th Squadron (Major E. C. Watson) was to defend Gommecourt, reinforcing the 62nd Division. Both squadrons were soon in action, obtaining excellent targets, and the enemy's advance was stopped for the time being.

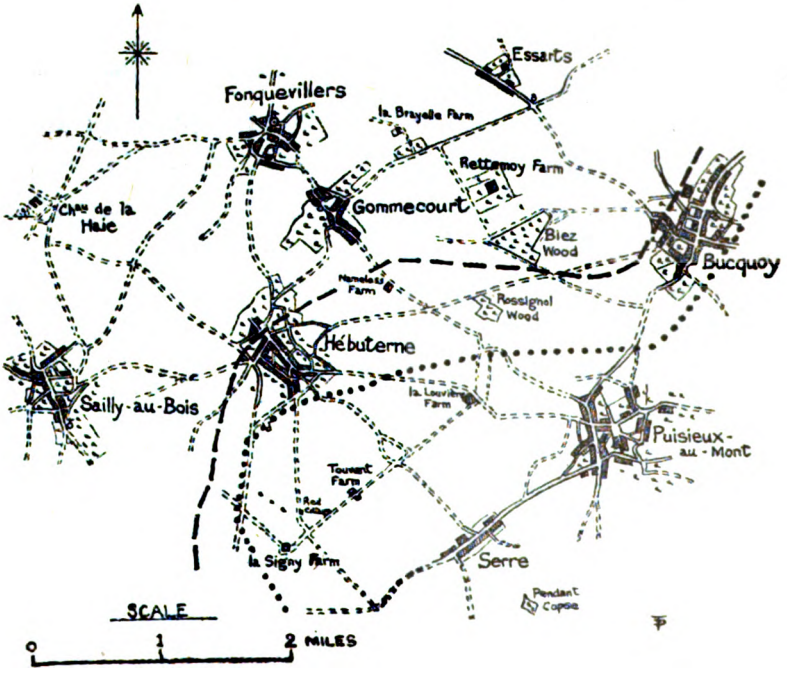
* CAVALRY JOURNAL, April 1921, page 186.

† Afterwards Major-General Sir E. Ironside, commanding British troops at Archangel.

Digitized by Google

He renewed his attacks on March 27 and 28 without success; the 13th Squadron had three men badly wounded on the latter date. On March 29, the two squadrons exchanged positions, the 13th Squadron going west of Hébuterne and the 10th to Gommecourt.

On March 31 the 10th Squadron was holding, with ten guns, the ridge about 1,000 yards south-east of Gommecourt, the two remaining guns being in reserve with the 13th



SCENE OF OPERATIONS OF 10TH & 13TH M.G.SQUADRONS, MARCH 26 - APRIL 7, 1918.

Approximate British line, evening, Mar. 26 .....

" " " " Apl. 6 — — — —

Squadron. An escort of two companies of Infantry was asked for to help in holding the ridge, but only half a company of K.O.Y.L.I. was sent. During the night March 31–April 1, the 4th Australian Division reached Hébuterne.

Early on April 1, the Germans attacked from the direction

Digitized by Google

of Bucquoy—Puisieux—Serre, with a force estimated by Colonel Ironside at two divisions. The principal thrust was against Hébuterne, but the front held by the 10th Squadron was also attacked and heavily bombarded. The reserve subsection, under Second-Lieutenant Hardman, was sent up to help, and all the 10th Squadron guns were in action till 5 p.m. Severe losses were inflicted on the enemy, but he succeeded in gaining our front line on the left, at the point where Second-Lieutenant Hardman's guns were engaged. This officer 'stuck it out' to the bitter end with one of his gun teams, till all the Infantry with him had become casualties or had withdrawn; then, after destroying his gun, he tried to make his way back, but was completely surrounded and taken prisoner.

Major Scratton (O.C. 10th Squadron), seeing the Germans were working round his left rear, had no alternative but to withdraw his guns on that flank, which he did, and linked up with the 13th Squadron and other troops in Gommecourt. Both squadrons were now under the command of Major Watson.

During the day Lieutenant H. W. Dalton and Sergeant Jones, of the 13th Squadron, were wounded, whilst the 10th Squadron lost about twenty-five all ranks. Of these, Lieutenant James and Sergeant Hingley were very badly wounded, the former dying shortly afterwards.

That night, this part of the line was reinforced by the Australians, who next day (April 2) succeeded in restoring our line to its original position of two days before. Three guns of the 10th Squadron, under Sergeants Grant and Clarke, went over with one attack, and covering fire was provided by the remainder of the squadron.

On April 3, the 13th Squadron went into front line, whilst the 10th (less two guns) went into positions at Gommecourt; the other two guns, under Lieutenant Little, manned a strong point at Chateau de la Haie, a mile behind the line.

Digitized by Google

The Germans launched a further attack on April 4, which was repulsed; Lieutenant Hill's subsection (10th Squadron) at Rettemoy Farm suffered several casualties. Things now got calmer in this area, and the two Machine Gun Squadrons were not seriously engaged again, though Lieutenant Dempers of the 13th Squadron was wounded on April 5, whilst the 10th Squadron had some losses on April 7 from trench-mortar and shell-fire. Both squadrons were relieved by Infantry on the 8th, and were finally broken up on April 11.

The 10th Squadron won several honours in connection with these operations: Lieutenant H. H. Little got the M.C., and was soon afterwards promoted to be Second-in-Command of the 6th Squadron; Sergeant E. J. Grant (who already held the M.M.) was awarded the D.C.M., and subsequently received a commission in the Machine Gun Corps (Cavalry); whilst M.M's were given to Sergeant Hingley, Lance-Corporal Hardy, and Private Hartley.

(To be continued.)

Digitized by Google

LANNES, THE VANGUARD LEADER

By G. FITZMAURICE.

I.

JEAN LANNES, Duke of Montebello, was the second son of a dyer, and born at Lectours, a small town in Gascony, north of the Pyrenees.

The year 1769 saw his entry into the world, also the birth of his future friend and Emperor, Napoleon.

At the age of twenty-three, carried away by the enthusiasm of the Revolution, he joyfully abandoned the trade that had always been distasteful to him, enrolling himself in the army as a volunteer; his corps was employed on the Pyrenean frontier, and Lannes soon underwent his baptism of fire, gained promotion to sub-lieutenant, and before the end of 1795 he had so distinguished himself that he had won his way to chief of brigade. In one engagement, where he had covered himself with glory, he had been severely wounded, and for some days his life was despaired of. At the invitation of a Monsieur Meric, a banker at Perpignan, he was taken to his house and there nursed back to health by the banker's daughter, with the result that he fell in love with her, and they were married.

Early in 1796, he went unattached with General Augereau's Division to Italy, and shortly afterwards Buonaparte arrived to take command.

One of Lannes' character was not likely to escape the notice of Buonaparte, and when the Directory ordered all the officers who were unattached to return to their homes,

Digitized by Google

Buonaparte, on his own responsibility, determined to keep Lannes with him in Italy. Had it not been for his chief's perspicacity Lannes would, in spite of his own wishes, have been forced to leave the army, his brilliant talents might probably have been buried amongst his father-in-law's ledgers, and France would have been deprived of one of her greatest soldiers. Augereau and Lannes, who might themselves have aspired to the chief command, felt, from the moment they began to understand their young, indomitable leader, that the true road to glory would be to follow the star of Napoleon.

At the crossing of Millesimo, in April 1796, Lannes was conspicuous; at the crossing of the Po he executed a successful ruse, by which he made General Beaulieu imagine he was going to cross at Valenza, instead of which he made the passage of this great stream fifty miles lower down, due east, at Piacenza. Andressi was commander of the advance guard and Lannes was the first to leap ashore at the head of some grenadiers, driving back a couple of squadrons of Austrian Hussars to the line of the Adda.

Three days later took place 'the terrible passage,' as Napoleon himself called it, 'of the Bridge of Lodi.' As soon as Beaumont's Cavalry, which had crossed by a distant ford, was on the Austrian flank, a column of grenadiers moved on to the bridge, but a hail of shot from a battery of thirty cannon checked their advance. In a moment Napoleon, Lannes and Berthier were to the front, rallying and cheering on the men. Then a heroic rush was made across the bridge under a tempest of fire; Lannes arrived first and Napoleon himself second.

It was here that Napoleon so delighted his soldiers by his dauntless exposure of his person, and won the name of '*Le Petit Caporal.*'

Napoleon entered Milan in May 1796. An unlooked-for occurrence delayed for a time the march upon Mantua. The

Digitized by Google

heavy exactions of the French, and even more perhaps the wanton contempt with which they treated the priesthood and the Church, had produced or fostered popular indignation in Lombardy. Reports of new Austrian levies being poured down the passes of the Tyrol were spread and believed. Popular insurrections against the conquerors took place in various districts; at least 30,000 were in arms. At Pavia the insurgents seized the town and compelled the French garrison to surrender. Lannes instantly marched to Benasco, stormed the place, plundered and burnt it and put the inhabitants to the sword without mercy. He appeared in person before Pavia, blew the gates open, scattered the townspeople, caused the leaders to be executed. Everywhere the same ferocious system was acted on. The insurgent commanders were tried by court-martial and shot without ceremony. At Lugo, where a French squadron of horse had been gallantly and disastrously defeated, the whole of the male inhabitants were massacred. By a ruse as to the crossing place the Mincio was passed at Borghetta.

Milan was entered, Mantua besieged, and the enemy successively defeated at Lonato, Castiglione, Bassano, Arcola and Rivoli.

During this campaign, Lannes had been twice wounded. He played a brilliant part in all the battles in which he was engaged, and by his impetuous valour earned for himself the title of the 'Ajax' of the French camp.

He was promoted to General of Brigade and shortly afterwards of Division.

After taking part, in 1798, in the conquest of Egypt, the heroic Lannes was at the Siege of Acre, where, in 1799, after one of the twelve assaults, he contrived to make his way into Acre at the head of a small band of reckless spirits, but they were driven back and Lannes so severely wounded that his soldiers thought he was dead. A slight movement though, observed by a captain of grenadiers, betrayed that

Digitized by Google

their beloved general was yet alive, and at the risk of his own life the officer dragged Lannes into safety. A ball had pierced his neck and, in consequence, ever afterwards his head inclined to the left side.

Lannes had only recovered from the pain of a physical wound to be the victim of great mental suffering, for news reached him that his wife, of whom he had been most fond, had deserted him.

In July, while Buonaparte was still at Cairo, intelligence was received from Marmont, who had been left in command at Alexandria, that 18,000 Turks had disembarked at Aboukir, under protection of the English fleet.

Orders were at once given to the army to march, and within eight days they had arrived at Aboukir. Napoleon, surveying the Turkish entrenched camp, said to Murat: 'Go how it will, the battle of to-morrow will decide the fate of the world.' 'Of this army at least,' answered Murat, 'but the Turks have no Cavalry, and if ever Infantry were charged to the teeth by horse, they shall be so by mine.' Murat did not penetrate the meaning of Napoleon's words, but he made good his own.

On July 25, 1799, at the crisis of the battle, when Lannes' leadership was powerless to cope with the overwhelming Artillery fire from land and fleet, Murat charged the enemy's flank with his Cavalry; from that moment the battle was a massacre; the sea was covered with the turbans of those who flung themselves into the waves, and the entire Ottoman force was accounted for. Within a month Napoleon left for France, taking with him Berthier, Murat, Lannes and Marmont. He hastened to Paris and, assisted by Lannes, overturned the Directory.

In 1800, Buonaparte had conceived the audacious idea of forcing a passage across the Alps for the whole of his army, with its Cavalry, Artillery and supplies. They were to cross by the Pass of the Great St. Bernard, and to descend

Digitized by Google

upon Piedmont, in the rear of the Austrian lines. During the laborious passage of the wilderness of cliffs and ice, if the way presented some new and apparently insuperable danger, the Consul bade the drums beat and the trumpets sound as if for the charge, and this never failed to set all in motion again. The advance guard of six regiments was headed by Lannes, and after taking possession of Aosta the van pushed on as far as Montebello, where, early in the morning, they were attacked by superior forces of Austrians, under General Ott, who was hurrying to join the main army, just released from his tremendous struggle with Masséna at Genoa. After severe fighting, Lannes' leadership and Victor's Division won the day. In describing the battle later, Lannes said: 'Bones were cracking in my division like hail on a skylight.'

After a few days the army pushed on to Marengo, and on June 14, 1800, was fought that memorable battle between 40,000 Austrians and half as many French.

Marengo had been taken and re-taken several times ere Lannes received orders to reinforce Victor with the second line. The two corps now took up a second position considerably in rear of Marengo, but after obstinate resistance were forced to again retire. Lannes withdrew in echelon, heavily assailed by the Austrian Cavalry under Elsnitz. Melas, the Austrian generalissimo, who was eighty-four years old, doubted not that he had won the victory, and, being worn out with fatigue, withdrew to the rear, leaving Zach to continue the pursuit. At this moment Dessaix arrived on the field with the reserve and led a fresh column of 5,000 grenadiers against Zach. The brave Dessaix fell dead at the first fire. Strangely enough, on that same day, Kléber, left in command in Egypt, was struck down by the dagger of an assassin.

The Austrian infantry attacked with equal resolution. At that moment, while Bonnet's Infantry held them in front,

Digitized by Google

Kellerman's horse, charging on them in flank, completely overwhelmed them. General Zach himself was made prisoner, the whole army retired, the Austrian Cavalry fled, and at length the routed Imperialists were driven into the Bormida, which rolled red amidst the corpses of horse and men. Thus was Italy once more re-conquered in a campaign of less than two months.

To Lannes fell the honour of presenting to the Government the colours taken at Marengo.

II.

Now, for a while, Lannes' talents were to be turned in another direction—towards diplomacy.

The First Consul chose him to be Ambassador at Lisbon. Before taking up his new appointment, Lannes, having divorced his first wife, married a second time—a Mademoiselle Guéhenéc. She brought him a large fortune, so he and his wife were able to live in great state at the Embassy. There a son was born to them, and the Prince Regent of Portugal consented to become his godfather. On the day of the baptism, Lannes tells how the Prince took him into a room containing priceless treasures from Brazil, and opening a drawer took out three handfuls of magnificent uncut diamonds. He emptied them into Lannes' hat, saying: 'The first handful is for my godson, the second for the Ambassadress, his mother, the third for the Ambassador, his father.'

It does not seem very certain that Lannes was quite a success as a diplomatist. He was too frank and outspoken. Smooth words did not come easily to him; but he appears to have obtained from the feeble Portuguese Government all that France then demanded. In 1804 he was recalled to assist at the Coronation, when he received a Marshal's baton and the title Duke of Montebello.

Digitized by Google

Against Austria, in September 1804, Lannes was ordered to conduct his forces, and hostilities began immediately.

Lannes commanded his corps at Ulm and was present when General Mack capitulated without hazarding a blow.

Napoleon now advanced upon Vienna and took up his headquarters at Schoenbrunn. It is said that the rapid occupation of Vienna was greatly assisted by a 'ruse' of Lannes and Murat.

These two Marshals were passing one day near the Bridge of Thabor and noticed works going on, with the evident intent of blowing up the bridge on the approach of the French troops. Now, the destruction of this bridge would have much increased the difficulty of entering the Austrian capital, so Lannes and Murat captured it by surprise while pretending to engage an Austrian officer in conversation about the terms of the expected armistice.

On December 2, 1805, arose '*the sun of Austerlitz*,' notable for its uncommon brilliancy; on many an after day the French soldiery hailed a similar dawn with exultation as the sure omen of victory, and 'the sun of Austerlitz' has passed into a proverb.

Napoleon's preparations were as follows: his left, under Lannes, lay at Santon, a strongly fortified position; Soult commanded the right wing; the centre, under Bernadotte, had with them Murat and all the Cavalry; behind lay the reserve of 20,000; Davoust, with a division of horse and another of foot, lay behind Raygern, to the rear of the French right, to meet a false move into which Napoleon foresaw the enemy might be led.

A host of 80,000 Russians and Austrians descended from the heights of Austerlitz. Their left was first broken, and when the French centre advanced, the charges of its Cavalry, under Murat, were decisive, but the right held out against all the impetuosity of Lannes until Napoleon massed his artillery and, breaking the ice of frozen lakes, across which the allies

Digitized by Google

attempted to retreat, nearly 20,000 men died on the spot, the greater part drowned. Twenty thousand prisoners were taken, with sixty pieces of artillery and all the standards of the Imperial Guard of Russia. This was the battle which the French soldiery delighted to call 'the battle of the emperors.' The Holy Roman Empire came to an end, and the Confederation of the Rhine was formed under French protection.

At this, Prussia awoke after shameful years of indecision and vacillation. Frederick William at length determined to mobilise his army and to join the new coalition then forming against France. Engagements took place at Schlitz and Saalfeld. Here Lannes met the advance guard commanded by Prince Louis of Prussia. Lannes attacked and the Prince's force was overpowered, and he, 'the Alcibiades of Prussia,' fell in the action.

On October 11, 1806, were fought the twin conflicts of Jena and Auerstadt. When the Prussians on the plateau above Jena were almost broken, Murat brought 15,000 Cavalry on to the field and completed their defeat, and when Ruchel arrived with a fresh corps it was assailed in flank by French dragoons and utterly routed. While Napoleon was winning an overwhelming victory at Jena, Lannes and Davoust, by their courage and tenacity, were gaining at Auerstadt a triumph hardly paralleled in the annals of that era. With but 26,000 soldiers they overpowered the Duke of Brunswick's force of 60,000 Prussians, with Cavalry reputed among the best in Europe. The Duke of Brunswick was mortally wounded, and 10,000 soldiers, dead and dying, lay on the battlefield. This settled the fate of Prussia; the unfortunate king retreated to Königsberg, and Napoleon made his triumphal entry into Berlin.

Throughout the following winter Lannes was very ill. The hardships and fatigues of constant campaigning that he had endured were sufficient to wear out the strongest

Digitized by Google

constitution, and during the winter he took complete rest, thus missing the Battle of Preuss-Eylau, claimed by the Russians as a drawn battle. It was here that Napoleon massed seventy guns, and since that time the massing of guns has been an accepted principle. Murat's great charge, with eighty squadrons, extricated the Infantry.

With the return of summer, Lannes set out to rejoin the French Army in Eastern Prussia. On June 14, 1807, 'the anniversary of Marengo,' at ten in the morning, began the Battle of Friedland. Lannes, after hours of fighting, was almost forced to fall back, for he was greatly outnumbered by the Russians under Bennigsen, when the welcome columns of Ney and Victor arrived in sight. With desperate valour he held the enemy at bay till the reinforcements came up. These were followed by Napoleon. 'Cœur de Lion was not more courageous than you, my brave Lannes!' was his greeting, and with Napoleon's advent the day was won.

In 1808, Lannes joined the French Army in the Peninsula. On November 9, Lannes ably seconded Napoleon in the capture of Burgos, and was then despatched by him to Saragossa to supersede the old Marshal Moncey. On the 23rd, Lannes commanded at the celebrated Battle of the Tudela, and forced Castanos and 40,000 Spaniards to retreat towards Saragossa. Lannes arrived before the town and took command of the 30,000 men who were investing it. He found the troops in the lowest spirits, but his vigorous influence soon made itself felt. For fifty days they had been fighting with no success, and they began to feel the pinch of hunger. They urged the impossibility of besieging a town when they were only half the numbers of the defenders. 'We shall die amongst these cursed ruins,' they cried. Lannes felt for his soldiers, but no less for the heroic defenders who were in dire straits. Death, disease and famine were ravaging the garrison, and already nearly a third of the inhabitants

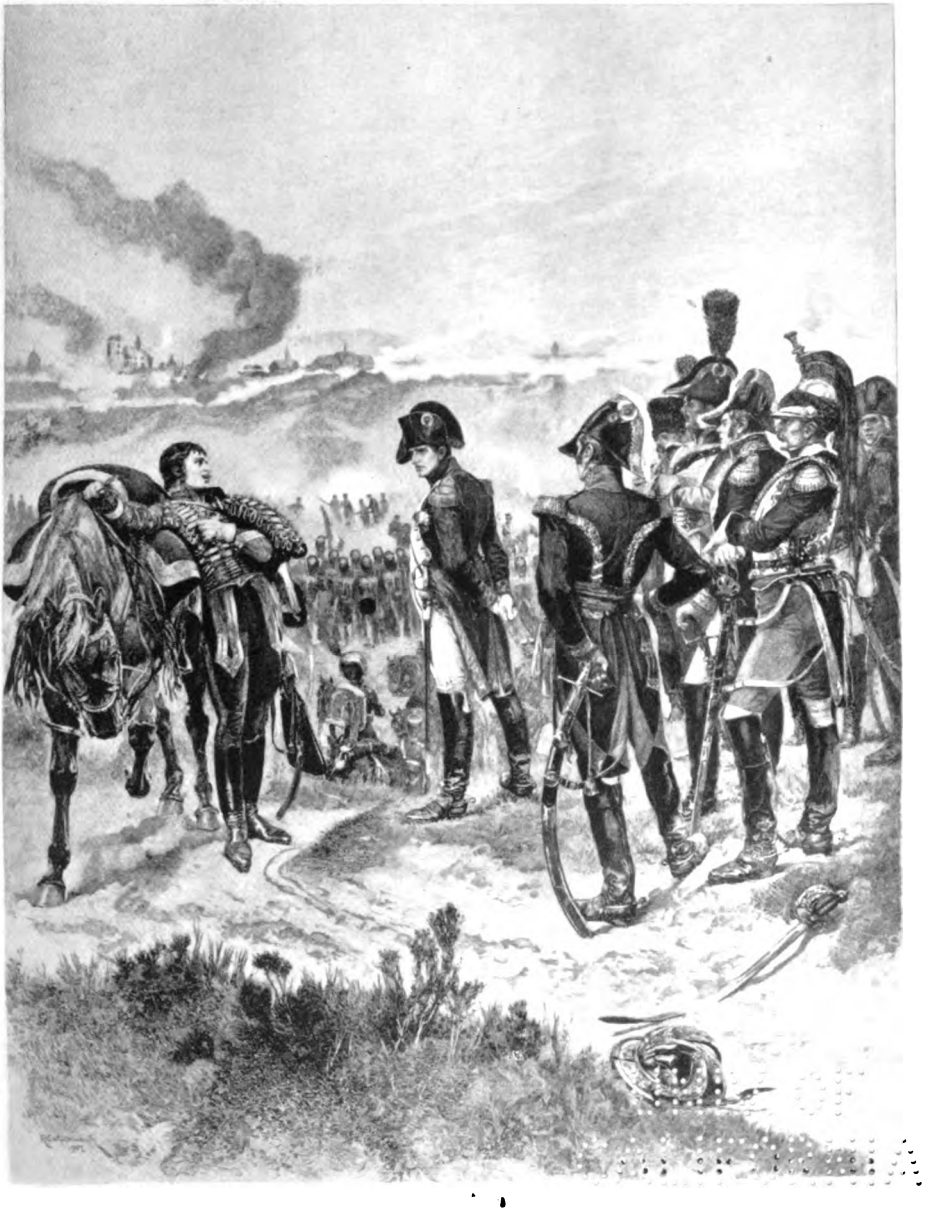
Digitized by Google

had perished. Notwithstanding, they refused all Lannes' proposals for an honourable capitulation, and would listen to no terms of peace. Therefore, there was nothing for it but a general assault, and this time 20,000 haggard, shrunken creatures were forced to surrender. Thus ended the memorable Siege of Saragossa. After the fall, Lannes returned to Paris, spending a few days *en route* in his old home at Lectours. He had but a short time in Paris before again being called to arms against Austria, and in the victorious engagements at Abensberg, April 20, and Landshut, April 21, 1809, he was, as always, where the fighting was hottest.

After the Battle of Eckmühl, 1809, where the Austrians, numbering fully 100,000, were overthrown, they fled in confusion towards Ratisbon. The next day, while Napoleon was giving the last directions to Lannes as to the taking of the town, the Emperor received a ball in his ankle. The wound proved a slight one.

Though the fortifications of Ratisbon were old, it was well defended by 6,000 Austrians. To gain the ramparts it was necessary to place ladders against the walls, and for this perilous task Lannes asked fifty men to volunteer. Twice that number were willing, and heroically they headed the first column to place the ladders. A storm of bullets met them as they reached the ramparts, dealing death in all directions. But at the call of Lannes, another fifty presented themselves, but an even more terrific fire met the second column, and hardly a man was left. Such wholesale slaughter quelled even the spirits of Napoleon's soldiers, and when Lannes called a third time for volunteers, no voice responded. He might have ordered a company to execute his command, but this he did not do. He knew too well the spirit of the soldier, and that to brave this great peril volunteers would do it infinitely better than those who only undertook it at the word of command. But in vain he renewed his appeal

Digitized by Google



By permission of Henry Graves & Co., Ltd., owners of the copyright.

AT RATISBON.

Digitized by Google

UNIV. OF
CALIFORNIA

Digitized by Google

to the bravest of the brave; vainly he told them the Emperor and his army were looking on. Not a soul stirred—all seemed to feel death was not a risk but a certainty.

'No man will go?' cried the intrepid Lannes. 'Then I am going to show you that before being a Marshal I was a grenadier, and am one still!' and, seizing a ladder, began to carry it to the breaches. Then Marbot tells how he and the rest of the staff crowded round, saying they all would be for ever dishonoured should the Marshal receive even the slightest wound before all his staff had been killed. Lannes must allow *them* to place the ladders in the breaches. A cry of enthusiasm broke out amongst the soldiers at the sight of a Marshal of the Empire disputing with his staff as to which should lead such a forlorn hope. Now, too many came forward, but his aides-de-camp refused to yield and, with a magnificent rush, the ladders were planted, the walls were scaled, and Ratisbon was taken.

The poet Browning, in melodious lines, has recorded an incident of that day which has also lent inspiration to the painter's brush :*

> You know we French stormed Ratisbon :
> A mile or so away
> On a little mound Napoléon
> Stood on our storming day;
>
> * * * * *

Just as perhaps he mused :

> 'My plans
> 'That soar, to earth may fall,
> 'Let once my army-leader Lannes
> 'Waver at yonder wall.'—

And then a young horseman brings the message that the

* Caton Woodville painted the well-known picture, a *replica* of which was, we believe, given by H.M. Queen Alexandra to the late King Edward VII. on his last birthday. It therefore awakens in one a deep and special interest.

Digitized by Google

Marshal has taken Ratisbon, but the boy's breast is torn by a wound and the Emperor anxiously exclaims:

'You're wounded!' 'Nay,' his soldier's pride
Touched to the quick, he said:
'I'm killed, Sire!' And, his Chief beside,
Smiling, the boy fell dead.

After this last victory, and Napoleon had entered Vienna, there was peace for a few weeks. Then came the fatal May 21, 1809, when Lannes prepared for what was to prove his last fight. The French took up their position in the villages of Aspern and Essling. From four o'clock in the afternoon the Archduke Charles vigorously assaulted these positions. Aspern was fiercely contested, and at the end of the day part of the town, including the church, was in possession of the Austrians. At 3 a.m. the next morning the fighting recommenced with unabated energy. The French recovered the church of Aspern, and the village of Essling was taken and re-taken five times. On either side the carnage was terrible—the pathways of the villages were literally choked with dead and wounded. When the gun-fire subsided, Aspern, Essling, and the whole left bank of the Danube remained in Austrian hands, and both sides, with equal injustice, claimed the victory. Not till July 6 were the Austrians finally crushed at the Battle of Wagram.

Throughout the campaign Lannes' exertions were extraordinary; always cool, always ready to take advantage of any opportunity that might offer itself. But alas! towards the close of the day of Aspern this prince of vanguard leaders received a mortal wound, which was to terminate his glorious career.

He was struck by a cannon ball, which carried away his right leg and the left foot and ankle. This necessitated immediate amputation, which he bore with calm fortitude. As he was being carried off the field, Napoleon saw the litter, and overcome with grief embraced his trusty old friend.

Digitized by Google

He ordered that he should be conveyed by boat, as the easiest method, to the little village of Ebensdorf, where Napoleon never failed to visit him twice daily, and Marbot says it was most affecting to see the genuine grief and emotion of the Emperor. They had always been ardently attached to one another, and, in spite of Napoleon's position, Lannes had always dared to tell him the truth and spoke to his Emperor as a brother officer. Early on the morning of May 30, Lannes breathed his last—'the Bayard,' 'the Roland' and 'the Ajax' of the French camp, as the soldiers fondly named him.

Sometimes on the battlefield he had been too much carried away by his impetuous temper, and Marbot quotes an incident which well illustrates his strength of character and the way in which he determined to bring his hasty temper under control.

On a certain occasion a captain of Artillery had misunderstood an order and led his battery in a wrong direction. When Lannes saw this he tore after him at a gallop and, quite losing control of himself, severely reprimanded the officer in the Emperor's presence. In hastening away again a few words from Napoleon caught his ear: 'That devil of a Lannes'—he heard no more. He wondered and puzzled over what it could have been that Napoleon said of him, and finally decided to ask Marbot, his aide-de-camp, who had been present at his outburst of passion with the young captain, and must have heard the rest of what fell from Napoleon's lips. Marbot answered him frankly: 'His Majesty said, "That devil of a Lannes possesses every quality which makes a great soldier, but he never will be great because he gives way to such violent outbursts of temper in rebuking his officers. That I consider," added Napoleon, "one of the greatest faults which a general can have."'

Now, Lannes had it so much at heart to become a great general that it is probable there and then he resolved to do

Digitized by Google

his utmost to subdue his fiery temper, for Marbot says from that time he never saw him lose control of himself, in spite of the many occasions on which he was much tried. He had been in over fifty battles and some 300 engagements. His definition of a great soldier was—he who hears more acutely in the thunder and sees more clearly in the smoke of battle than at other times.

The ideal vanguard leader on principle holds no reserve, is deterred by no sacrifice or hardship, and hazards all. Such a leader was Lannes. Such a leader a century later was the British general known to friend and foe as 'Kitchener's Spearpoint,' who accomplished the capture of an army in the South African War, and of whom the Arabs said: '*Hunter zeraa Kitchener el yemin*'—Hunter is Kitchener's right arm.

MARSHAL LANNES' SADDLE.

Digitized by Google

FIGHTS WITH DISTANCES

By Captain L. V. S. Blacker, *1st Battn. Queen Victoria's Own Corps of Guides, Punjab Frontier Force.*

In 1876, a troop of Cavalry and a company of Mounted Infantry of the Corps of Guides marched through Kashmir, Ladakh, and over the 18,000 foot Karakoram Pass, where for ten days' march the traveller is at an elevation of 15,000 feet and the track is marked by a line of bones. This little force, with the addition of a Scottish pipe-major, formed the military part of Sir Douglas Forsyth's mission to the King of Yarkand. Men of the Corps of Guides penetrated into the then unexplored region that afterwards became the Semirechensk Province of Siberia, thus anticipating Colonel John Ward's battalion by some forty years.

The Northern frontier of India is of such immense length that the need for such a corps has been obvious, and as a natural corollary the Corps of Guides has recruited into its ranks men of many nationalities and countries which actually lie far beyond the border line on the map.*

In 1918, the Bolshevik rulers had released large numbers of Magyar and Austrian war prisoners in Turkistan and there was in Kabul a 'Kaiserliche und Koenigliche Ostindisches Abteilung' and an ill-spared German Army Corps, which reached Baku to threaten India by forming an offensive alliance with the Afghans.

* See Cavalry Journal, Vol. IV., No. 14. 'A Short History of the Guides Cavalry.'

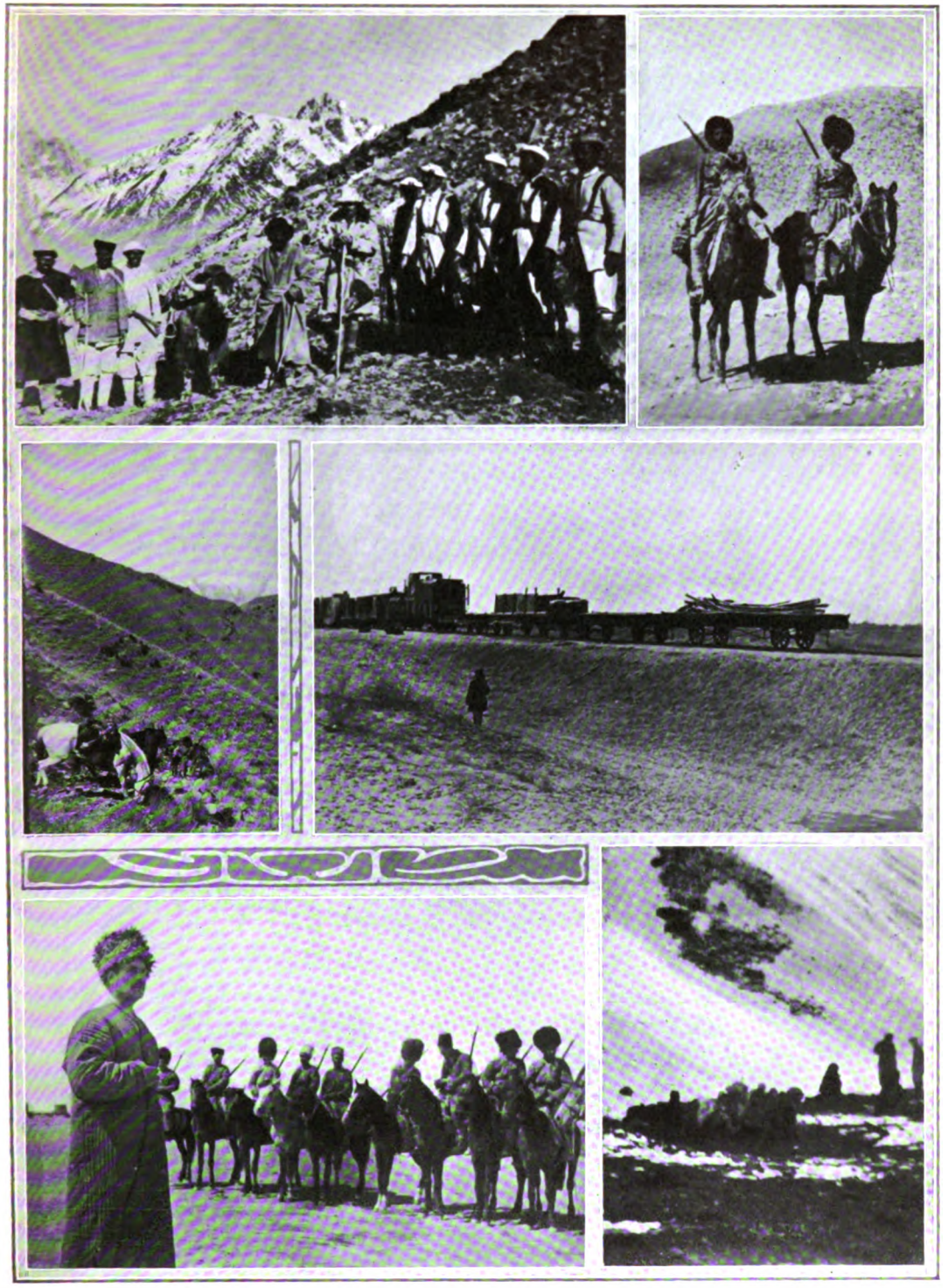
Digitized by Google

To watch developments missions were despatched, such as Major-General L. C. Dunsterville's from Bagdad, Sir Wilfrid Malleson's from Persia, and also a third mission, which penetrated over the northern passes from India to Gilgit and thence along the cliff faces of Hunza to the Chinese Pamirs. The mission comprised a party of the Guides, who were mounted on shaggy ponies of the steppes. Across the frontier a Soviet had ruled in Tashkend for some months, and the Bolsheviks were being actively opposed by Cossacks on the Aral coasts and astride the railway at Aktubinsk, while Uzbegs and Kipchaks waged a guerilla war against the Reds in the south-west in retaliation for the massacre of 30,000 Moslems in February 1918, and for the destruction of their homes. The Mission parleyed with the Soviet in Tashkend.

The Cossack and Kipchak lived on the country, maintaining considerable forces without lines of communication or supply. A shaggy, hardy pony, that scorns a rug even on the freezing Pamirs, a light equipment and a hereditary aptitude are what the Cossack performs these miracles on.

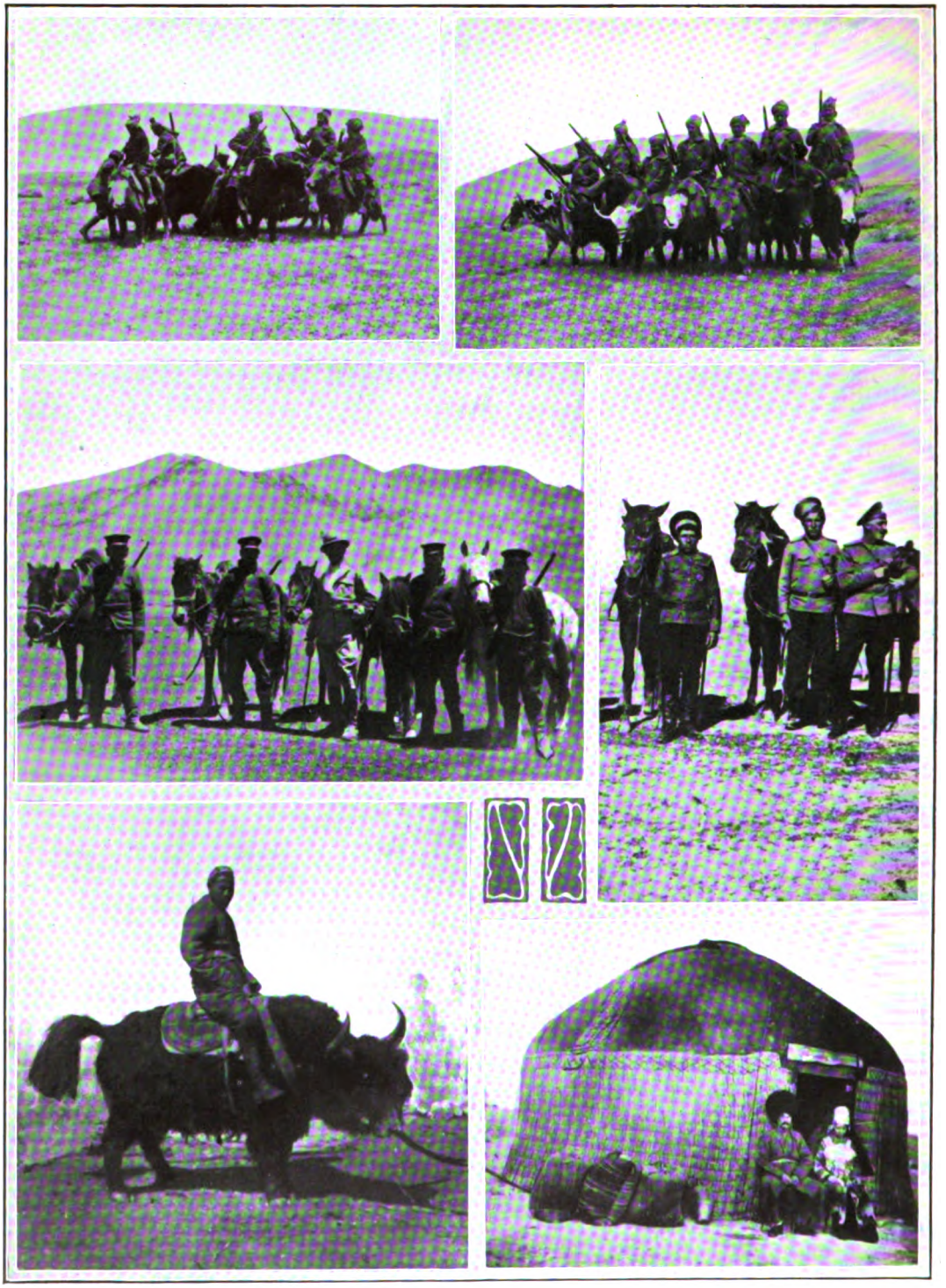
From Tashkend the detachment regained their head-quarters by a winter march over the Pamirs, and then proceeded to join the force on the Merv front. Eight hundred miles of scorched waterless desert and snowy ranges took them from our Baluchistan rail-head to the Central Asian railway at Dushakh, where they found that the little British force, consisting of the 28th Cavalry and 19th Punjab Infantry, had driven back a force of Bolsheviks two hundred miles in three months. Now, but for a fourth encounter, wherein a Red attack was heavily repulsed, static warfare had set in. Our allies were the hearty and friendly Tekke Turkoman, famed for their raids of bygone days into the heart of Persia. Discipline and cohesion were lacking in their regiments, so half of the non-commissioned officers from the Guides' detachment were detailed to be their instructors. Our artillery was carried on armoured trains, and many were the

Digitized by Google



1. The summit of the Mintaka Pass, 15,500 ft., which divides India from China, showing a Detachment of our Hunza Scouts.
2. Kurdish Mounted Levies in our service on the Turkestan-Khurasan Frontier, 1919-1920.
3. Hill country of the Kurdish S.E. Caspian region.
4. Our best Armoured Train on the Merv front, mounting Artillery and Machine Guns protected by bales with "Mine Bumper Truck" in front.

Digitized by Google



1. A Patrol of the Guides on the Pamirs, 1918, "Prepare to Mount."
2. "Mount."
3. Chinese Frontier Gendarmes, Pamirs, May 1918.
4. Our Friends of the 6th Orenburg Cossacks.
5. A Pamir Yak and his Kirghiz Rider.
6. A Tekke Turkoman, his Tent and Wife, Transcaspia, 1918.

Digitized by Google

mines laid to blow them up. The force marched back to Khurasan on being relieved by a brigade of General Denikin's Volunteer Army. The next winter of 1919–20 was spent in watching the northern mountain frontier. Many hundreds of refugees fled from the Red terror into our posts : Austrians, Germans, Russians, Poles, Tatars, Czechs, and a dozen other nationalities claimed our protection.

In the spring of 1920, the Reds concentrated a force with aircraft, armoured cars and heavy artillery against the British, and a post at Jiristan was temporarily isolated, but relieved after an engagement by a handful of men under the assistant adjutant of the Guides Cavalry. The retreat and dispersal of Khuda Verdi Sardar's insurgent Kurds and their Red allies followed.

When the British force evacuated Persia, in 1920, this cadre of the Guides had marched during three years in Turkistan and Khurasan, some nine thousand miles,* and demonstrated the utility of mounted troops for the more abstract but essential forms of reconnaissance, the superiority for this rough-and-ready work of the local horse of the steppes and mountains over larger and faster breeds, and the value of a stake in the land as a precaution against the infiltration of revolutionary propaganda and hostile forces.

* *See* the *Journal of the Royal Geographical Society*, September 1921.

Digitized by Google

JUMPING

By Lieut.-Colonel M. Graham, D.S.O.
16*th The Queen's Lancers.*

Jumping is excellent training for men and horses.

For men—because it enables them to get firm seats and to balance themselves on their horses. Without jumping, a man cannot ride his horse over various sorts of country, nor can he have absolute confidence in himself and his horse.

For horses—because it strengthens and helps to balance them. It also teaches a horse to obey his rider, and gives him confidence both in his rider and himself.

This is a large subject, and one which it is best to consider under two distinct headings, viz.:

The training of the horse.

The training of the man.

The Training of the Horse

What to teach may be summarised in two maxims:

(*a*) to train the horse to like jumping, which he undoubtedly does if well taught.

(*b*) to train the horse to realise it to be a crime either to avoid jumping a fence or to put a foot wrong in either taking off or in landing.

There are several different kinds of jumping which horses are required to do, *e.g.*, military, hunting, show jumping, point-to-points, and steeplechasing or hurdle racing.

We should aim firstly at training our horses in accordance with our two maxims, and then specialise for the purpose required.

Digitized by Google

How often we see horses refusing or jumping badly, either in the Army, hunting, or elsewhere; this is due sometimes to bad training, sometimes to bad riding, and often to a combination of both.

A system is essential in jumping, just as much as in any other branch of equitation.

Before details of our present Cavalry system are explained, let us first consider some of the foreign systems.

The Italian officers have considerable success when they compete in jumping competitions at our International Horse Show, and it is understood that they go well over a country in Italy.

They do not believe in jumping horses 'free': they believe in free forward movement, but they start their work mounted as soon as they can mount their horses.

Their army remount arrives as a five-year-old in a semi-wild condition. He is put next to an old horse in the stables (which have no bails), and they proceed to gentle and handle him, making much use of the voice.

For exercise he is tied by a rope from his headcollar to that of his older companion; he is mounted as soon as he is thoroughly gentled.

The first stage mounted is on somewhat similar lines to our early stages mounted, *i.e.*, quiet, free forward movement.

The second stage is cantering and circling, then jumping, the fences being small but quite stiff.

The third stage is more advanced, including jumping on slopes.

Practically no passage work is taught, and no turns on the haunches or reining back. They say that constant and varied jumping both on slopes and on the flat is the secret of teaching horses to balance themselves under their riders.

All riding is done with snaffle bridles.

It seems, that the Italians are satisfied with a horse's natural balance, whereas we consider artificial balance neces-

Digitized by Google

sary for comfort, quick manœuvre, and the increased length of life given to horses' fore legs.

The rider's seat will be referred to later.

The Italian officers who competed at Olympia in 1921 won many prizes, but it is thought that certain points in connection with their training for this form of jumping are not such as to appeal to British officers.

The French system of training young horses to jump is in many respects like our own system.

The horse is led or taught on the lunge till he obeys certain aids dismounted, and till he becomes fit and strong enough to jump.

He is then lunged in an oval *manège* over bars placed on the ground till he goes quietly to both hands at all three paces. After he has done this successfully, the bars are raised about an inch at a time—so gradually that the horse does not realise it. The bars are fixed so that he cannot knock them down.

When a height of about 3 feet has been reached by a systematic course of lungeing, the horse is introduced to different kinds of obstacles while still being lunged.

After this course of lungeing is finished in the oval *manège*, the horse is ridden in the open over different kinds of fences on a baby course and fences without wings; if he refuses he is either led over small fences or put back on the lunge till he regains confidence.

The early part of the training of remounts in the British Cavalry is done firstly by leading about, and then on the lunge.

Towards the end of the lungeing period, the horse is led over a bar on the ground; such training is continued practically every day in the riding school or in the open till the horse leads freely to either hand over small natural and artificial obstacles.

The next stage in jumping, according to 'Cavalry Training,' is to commence in a 'lane.'

Digitized by Google

This should be done about every other day.

It is usually found best at first for the trainer to lead his horse over the fences, because the surroundings will be new to the horse, but after a few days he will probably go willingly by himself.

Sometimes it is a good thing to let him follow an old horse who will not refuse; another way is to start two young horses together, or the old and young one together.

The fences and obstacles should be small at first, and gradually made bigger and more difficult; they should invariably be stiff for free jumping.

If desired, a dummy or weight can be put on the horse's back to prepare him for the next stage.

(Though jumping in a lane is advocated in 'Cavalry Training,' an alternative method has recently been tried at the Cavalry School; this is referred to later.)

The final stage is mounted jumping.

Even though young horses may have jumped free over big fences in a lane or *manège*, quite small fences should now be used again; they should be fairly stiff, and should be made more varied and difficult according to the progress of the horse. Mounted jumping can be done about twice or three times a week if horses are strong enough, but it may with advantage be varied with occasional free jumping in a lane or *manège* over stiff and awkward fences.

Some important points in our system are:

Methodical Progression.—To start at a suitable time in the horse's training, and work the system according to his strength and progress.

Suggestion.—To let a horse first look at an obstacle which he does not know, then follow the trainer over it, and subsequently let him go by himself or after another horse; this has the effect of showing him what you want him to do.

Correction and Reward.—Everything possible should be done to give him confidence. A horse seems to have a good

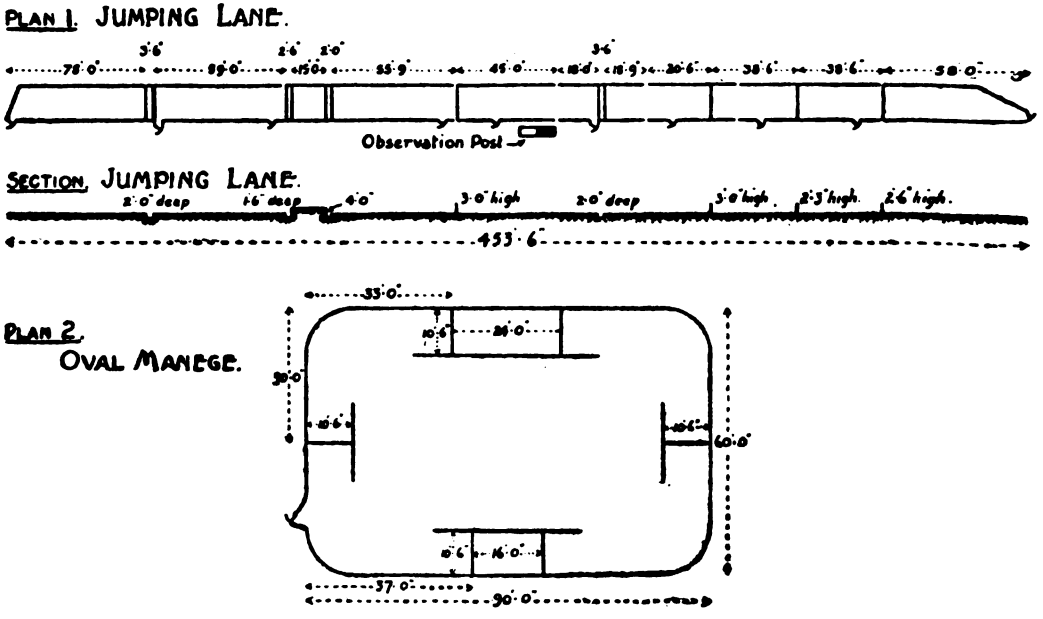
Digitized by Google

memory: he remembers how he has successfully negotiated an obstacle, and what he has been corrected or rewarded for, especially some corn at the end of a lane or in a school or *manège*. It is therefore necessary invariably to correct a fault; *e.g.*, if a horse hits a fence, make him jump it again; if he refuses persistently, it is perhaps best gradually to lower the fence till he jumps. It is important never to omit reward for success by feeding and making much of him.

Noise upsets and frightens a horse, but quiet and gentle treatment have the effect of calming him and giving him confidence.

During the 1921 course at the Netheravon Cavalry School, about fifty untrained young horses commenced their training in the spring; they were backed in the summer after a

— CAVALRY SCHOOL - NETHERAVON. —



certain amount of lungeing. During this time they also completed their first stage in jumping, viz., being led over small fences in a riding-school lane. For the second stage of

Digitized by Google

their jumping training, two alternative methods were tried: (*a*) twenty-five horses in a lane (Plan 1); (*b*) twenty-five horses in an oval *manège* (Plan 2). (*a*) was carried out as referred to above. (*b*) was carried out in the following manner:

First lunged on a cavesson in the centre of the *manège*, then outside the wings, first without fences and later with very small fences. This was continued for about ten lessons, when the lunge rein was dispensed with, in alternate directions on alternate days.

The conclusions arrived at were as follows:—

Advantage of Oval Manège.

Horses well under control and well collected.

Only one man required, as compared with about eight for a straight lane.

Work can be done quietly and with little risk of excitement.

Horses not apt to rush.

They can be schooled over such fences (as are available), and in such order as the trainer desires.

They can be schooled to either hand, thereby learning to jump off either leg.

If a horse jumps a fence badly, he can be put over it again at once.

It is easier to lunge a refuser over a fence than make him go down a lane.

Advantages of Straight Lane.

It takes less time to school a number of horses.

More variety of obstacles.

It is easy to give a sticky horse a lead with another horse.

Horses go with impulsion and learn on their own to stand off well.

It seems therefore that each is equally useful, but a

Digitized by Google

combination of both (preferably commencing with the *manège*) is the ideal.

There should be every variety of fence, ditch, &c. possible; fences in lanes and *manèges* capable of being increased in height and width, and also in amount of interval. It is desirable to have all fences for free jumping quite stiff, so that from the first horses will realise that they cannot treat them with impunity. It is considered important to have some fences broad, *e.g.*, two or three hurdles bunched together; it has the effect of making them stand off and, so to speak, 'come well into the next field.'

The take-off is very important, for when a young horse has learnt to stand off well, half the battle is won. Every lane should include one or two ditches, one of which should be blind. How often we see a bad show when mounted troops have to cross a ditch or trench—the same thing is often seen hunting. It is generally due to lack of confidence and because the horses have not been schooled over such obstacles.

There is not the same need in Britain as in New Zealand for teaching horses to jump wire. It is certainly an advantage out hunting to be able to pop over some iron railings, and so take a short cut to hounds; but the chief reason in favour of it is because it helps a horse to measure his distance.

Some writers prefer mounted to free jumping for a young horse's training.

The arguments against this are that young horses are rarely strong enough to be ridden over fences at the time they should commence jumping, and we seldom find in regiments a sufficient number of men whom we would guarantee not to touch a young horse's mouth when jumping in early stages; moreover, there is much to be said on behalf of horses teaching themselves to jump well and balance themselves over fences, and it promotes confidence in themselves.

Digitized by Google

The following are a few points worth bearing in mind:

Study each horse and be careful not to jump one which shows signs of lameness—for jumping a horse with tender feet or sore shins may cause him to become a refuser.

It is advisable to let a young horse have a look and smell at a fence which is new to him. When he understands the lane or *manège* and knows what is wanted, efforts should be made to prevent him hesitating.

To assist a horse to learn how to judge his distance and stand off well, it is useful at first to put a bar on the ground about seven yards in front of a jump; he clears the bar and should take one stride before taking off to jump the fence; a guardrail at gradually reduced distances is also a help.

The case of a horse persistently declining to jump a fence has already been mentioned; it is best to lower it, even to the extent of putting it flat on the ground if necessary; insist quietly on him going over it, and reward after success. In this connection, it is, perhaps, well to mention the importance of a horse returning to his stable happy and contented.

The going in lanes and *manèges* should frequently receive attention, for three rails out of a sticky ploughed field is a bigger fence than four rails out of a grass field.

In the next number the training of the Rider will be considered.

Digitized by Google

RECENT PUBLICATIONS

'From Private to Field-Marshal.' By F.-M. Sir William Robertson. Constable. 21*s*.

THE general reader's interest in this fascinating book will probably centre in the light it throws upon the higher direction and the political aspects of the war from 1914 to 1918, but the soldier and the student of character will turn to the first page and follow step by step the vivid reminiscences of the Field-Marshal from the year 1877, when he first joined the ranks of the 16th, the Queen's Lancers.

He describes the hard life of the private soldier in those days compared with the reasonable comfort of the man in the ranks to-day. His example in facing difficulties cannot fail to be a great encouragement to all young men. In his early life he was guilty of three military 'crimes,' all cases of hard luck and not of ill-behaviour. In 1879 he was promoted corporal, and he records that he felt more satisfaction at his first step in rank than from any subsequent one.

In 1888 he received his first commission. He served in the 3rd Dragoon Guards at Rawalpindi. Without any special gift for languages, by sheer intellectual concentration, he mastered many tongues; without what is termed artistic genius, he excelled in military topography; whatever he set his mind to, he accomplished by direct force of character. Where hardship and bloodshed were concerned, his masterful equanimity inspired confidence.

He took part in Indian frontier expeditions; in 1897 he passed through the Staff College, an institution still regarded

Digitized by Google

in those days with doubt, almost with distrust, by the old combatant regimental officers whose highest ambition was to lead their regiment in a victorious campaign.

After service in the South African War, he became Commandant of the Staff College, and in the Great War he began as Q.M.G. of the British Expeditionary Force. Then he became Chief of the Imperial General Staff at home, ruled out political interference, and his wise counsels and administration were invaluable to the Allies. The book itself, however, is absolutely devoid of egotism, rancour, jealousy or slander. It is an honest record of work by a great man. *O! si sic omnia.*

A final chapter discusses the British soldier.

'Records of the Dorset Yeomanry (Queen's Own), 1914–1919.' By Major-General C. W. Thompson, C.B., D.S.O. F. Bennett & Co., Sherborne.

Not only the Dorset Yeomanry, but the county, are to be congratulated on having an historian of the standard of the author to chronicle these achievements of the Great War. The General was adjutant of the regiment during 1888–93 and compiled the excellent history published in 1894. Many historians of the late war have been drawn away from the object of their work into tedious and unnecessary details, but the General has kept to the point throughout.

Fate ordained that the regiment's first action in the Great War should be as dismounted men, and their baptism of fire was one of the severest experiences possible, the landing at Suvla Bay and the attack on well-prepared positions. The Divisional Commander writes of their conduct: 'On August 21, they (Dorset Yeomanry), together with the Berks Yeomanry and Royal Bucks Hussars, led the forlorn hope charge into the Turkish trenches. First marching over a mile and a half of shell-swept plain without a blade of cover. I watched them go. I saw them fall in groups, and yet

Digitized by Google

never a waver in the onward march . . . never was a desperate attack more gallantly led, never was the call of a commander more bravely answered than by the men of the Dorset Yeomanry.'

After leaving the Dardanelles the remains of the regiment returned to Egypt, and subsequently in that country and in Palestine maintained as Cavalry the high standard that marked their first encounters. The CAVALRY JOURNAL for October 1921 gives a clear account of their decisive victories at page 370 *et seq.*

At the end of the book are several useful appendices, including a list of camps and bivouacs. H. G. P.

'The 4th Queen's Own Hussars in the Great War.' By Captain H. K. D. Evans, M.C., and Chapters IX. and X. by Major N. O. Laing, D.S.O., with a foreword by the Right Hon. Winston Churchill, P.C. Maps and illustrations. 8vo. Printed for the Regimental Committee by Gale and Polden, Aldershot. 1920.

THE Regiment arrived in France, August 16, 1914, and as part of the 3rd Cavalry Brigade took part in hard fighting in the retreat from Mons, and continued to serve on the Western Front throughout the war. The marginal dates facilitate reference, and the appendices contain much useful information about the operations of the 2nd Cavalry Division during March and April 1918. H. G. P.

IN the 'Journal of the Royal Army Medical Corps' for November last, Major N. V. Lothian, M.C., in a treatise on the Load carried by the soldier, reviews the weights of armour and equipment carried in mediæval armies:

'All the knight had to do was to keep his seat and direct his lance; exertions in such stifling conditions can hardly have been tolerated and many, indeed, are reported as having been suffocated (? heat-stroke).'

Digitized by Google

The weight of the Earl of Leicester's equipment (c. 1560) in the Tower collection is given in detail:

	lb.	oz.
Helmet - - - -	8	14
Gorget - - - -	3	8
Remainder of body armour -	58	5
	70	11

With other items, the weight carried by the horse appears to have been about 360 lbs. (man and clothes 150, armour 70, horse armour 40, arms 30, saddlery 70), and explains the heavy type of animal preferred for the joust (cf., the modern Clydesdale).

As to the Infantry the archers carried only about 30 lbs.; pikemen about 40 lbs. He does not allude to the Hobeliers or Light Cavalry of the period, who rode under 13 stone.

NOTES

Disbandment of Cavalry Regiments

The 5th Lancers, 19th and 20th Hussars, and 21st Lancers arrived at Tidworth from the East in November, and are now reduced to cadres of a small staff of officers and other ranks. It is estimated that the final settlement of all documents and correspondence will be concluded by the 1st April at latest. The officers were allowed to volunteer for other regiments or go on half pay. The great majority selected the former, and, wherever possible, were posted to one of the regiments selected. The rank and file have nearly all been posted to other Cavalry Regiments; a few elected to transfer to Tanks or other arms.

The disposal of regimental plate and trophies is being carried out in a manner which would render possible the

Digitized by Google

collecting together of the same in the event of the Regiments being re-formed. The band instruments have been handed over to Kneller Hall.

There is to be a new policy in garrisoning Mesopotamia. The rôle of the R.A.F. is not to be confined to assisting other military forces. By the autumn of the present year the army in Irac, it is announced, will hand over its responsibilities to the R.A.F., thereby securing a saving, it is claimed, of many millions.

In the words of the Air Marshal: 'The value of the R.A.F. in policing our overseas possessions lies, not only in its capacity to strike at once and at a great distance, but also in its power to keep up the pressure day in and day out for long periods without retaliation or giving the enemy a chance to loot. A great, if not the main, inducement to the frontier tribes in India to give trouble is the chance of obtaining valuable loot in the shape of rifles and ammunition. Added to this is the fact that they are warlike people and take an innate pleasure in fighting for its own sake. Neither inducement exists when their enemy acts entirely from the air.'

If their services should be required, we hope our Airmen will find some suitable targets, and that no high-caste Arabian horses will be hit. Presumably the Sultan of Irac's levies would round up the fugitives.

Major R. S. Timmis, D.S.O., Royal Canadian Dragoons, has been elected a Governor of the Arab Horse Society, whose aim it is to introduce Arab blood into the light horse breeds of the Dominion and eliminate the not uncommon unsuitable traces of the trotting horse strain.

Digitized by Google

Fortescue's History of the British Army

It has come to the knowledge of the Council of the Royal United Service Institution that the Hon. J. W. Fortescue will be unable to complete his History of the British Army unless financial assistance is afforded him from outside sources. From the nature of the book it is not one which could have a large circulation. He has already brought out ten volumes, which brings the history down to 1815. It is unnecessary to call attention to the immense value of the work. It would be a calamity should it not be completed. Mr. Fortescue originally designed his history to finish with the year 1870.

The Council, therefore, has directed its Secretary to endeavour to raise a fund with this object, and it is hoped that officers of the Cavalry will subscribe to the fund. It is also hoped that regimental messes will endeavour to become subscribers; a donation of £5 each would produce a very considerable sum. The volumes to be published will embrace the Indian Campaigns, and the officers' messes of the Indian Cavalry are specially invited to become subscribers.

Subscriptions should be sent to the Secretary of the Institution, Whitehall.

The following subscriptions have been received:

	£	*s.*	*d.*
General Sir E. G. Barrow, G.C.B. -	100	0	0
Lieut.-Colonel Sir A. Leetham, C.M.G. -	2	2	0
Colonel H. C. Wylly, C.B. - - -	1	1	0
Major H. G. Parkyn - - - -	1	1	0

The R.U.S.I. Museum is forming a collection of the stable jackets and mess waistcoats of Cavalry regiments which were discontinued in 1903. It is hoped that Cavalry officers who possess these articles will kindly contribute them.

Digitized by Google

The 'Cavalry Journal' Committee

A meeting was held at the Royal United Service Institution on November 19, 1921. Present: Field-Marshal Earl Haig (in the chair), Major-General Sir N. M. Smyth, Colonel Ewing Paterson, Lieut.-Colonel Sir Arthur Leetham, Lieut.-Colonel T. B. Phillips, and Lieut.-Colonel F. H. D. C. Whitmore. Messages of regret for non-attendance were received from Lieut.-General Sir Robert Baden-Powell, Lieut.-General Sir P. W. Chetwode and Colonel Commandant A. E. W. Harman.

The financial statement (previously circulated to O.C. Cavalry Regiments) was considered satisfactory and approved. The report was submitted on the working of the Journal for the past year, and it was decided to continue the style of printing of the original Journal. A report was made on the steps taken with regard to a new printing contract. A cordial vote of thanks was accorded to Major-General J. Vaughan, to retiring sub-editors, and to the contributors to the Journal for the past year, as also to the honorary editors and sub-editors for their valuable services.

Cavalry War Memorial

The Committee have the pleasure to announce that the following subscriptions have been received:

2nd Life Guards, £25; King's Dragoon Guards, £200 3*s.* 6*d.*; 3rd Dragoon Guards, £228 2*s.*; 4th Dragoon Guards, £100; 5th Dragoon Guards, £244 14*s.* 5*d.*; The Carabiniers, £200; 7th Dragoon Guards, £200; Royal Dragoons, £250; 3rd K.O. Hussars, £150; 5th R.I. Lancers, £328 5*s.*; 7th Hussars, £217 5*s.*; 8th K.R.I. Hussars, £200; 11th Hussars, £200; 12th Lancers, £250; 13th Hussars, £100; 14th Hussars, £300; 15th Hussars, £225; 16th Lancers, £200; 18th Hussars, £325 16*s.* 8*d.*; 19th Hussars, £250; 20th Hussars, £234 19*s.* 10*d.*;

Digitized by Google

UNIV. OF CALIFORNIA

21st Lancers, £200; King Edward's Horse, £50; Ayrshire Yeomanry, £50; Cheshire, £25; Denbighshire, £53 3*s.*; Derbyshire, £28 1*s.*; R.N. Devon Hussars, £106; Dorset, £10; Essex, £150; Fife and Forfar, £25; Gloucester, £25; Duke of Lancaster's Own, £29 19*s.*; Leicestershire, £25; City of London, £68; 3rd County of London, £25; Northants, £25; Northumberland, £50; Oxfordshire, £69 17*s.*; Scottish Horse, £22 10*s.*; Shropshire, £32 1*s.*; W. Somerset, £25; Surrey, £27; Warwickshire, £25 12*s.*; Worcestershire, £25; Yorkshire Dragoons, £25; E. Riding of Yorks, £38 2*s.* 6*d.*; 1st Lancers I.A., £27 10*s.*; 2nd Lancers, £102 2*s.*; 3rd Cavalry, £28 14*s.*; 4th Cavalry, £40; 5th Cavalry, £50; 6th Cavalry, £50; 9th Hodson's Horse, £39 17*s.* 11*d.*; 13th Lancers, £50; 14th Lancers, £40; 16th Cavalry, £40; 18th Lancers, £40; 19th Lancers, £100; 20th Deccan Horse, £87 1*s.* 8*d.*; 21st Cavalry, £100; 22nd Cavalry, £100; 30th Lancers, £40; 31st Lancers, £40; 32nd Lancers, £50; 33rd Cavalry, £40; 34th Cavalry, £100; 36th Jacob's Horse, £51 0*s.* 5*d.*; 37th Lancers, £40; 38th C.I. Horse, £40; 39th C.I. Horse, £50; Guides Cavalry, £40; Cavalry and Transport, Gwalior State, £46 4*s.* 6*d.*; 2/Jodhpur Lcs., £49 0*s.* 10*d.*; Men of Indore I.S. Escort, £8 10*s.* 5*d.*; Aden Troop, £22; Strathcona's Horse, £100; Collected in Australia, £9 19*s.* 6*d.*; N.Z. Mounted Rifles, £36 14*s.* 6*d.*; Rhodesian Mounted Men, £4 4*s.*; From other sources, £806 11*s.* 9*d.*; the Inniskillings, £100. Total, £8,235 4*s.* 5*d.*

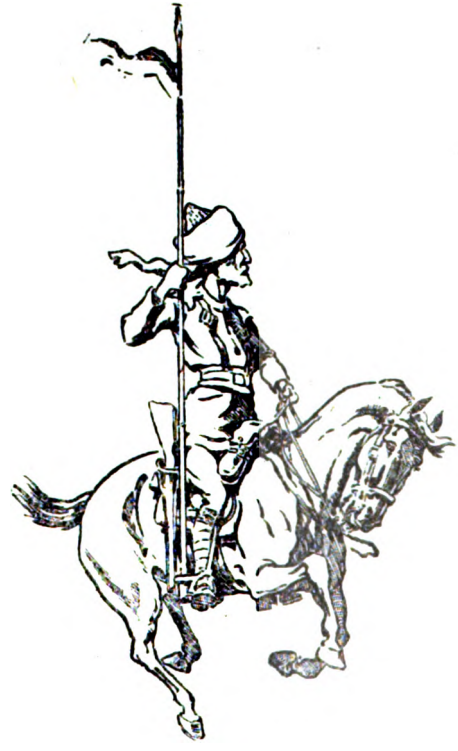
In addition the following subscriptions have been promised: 1st Life Guards, £25; Royal Horse Guards, £25; Royal Scots Greys, £100; 4th Q.O. Hussars, £100; 10th Hussars, £200; South Irish Horse, £25; Staffordshire Yeomanry, £10; 27th Cavalry I.A., £25; 28th Cavalry, £40; 29th Lancers, £100; two Canadian Cavalry Regiments, £200; From other sources, £110. Total, £960.

It must be borne in mind that many of the Regiments have erected their own War Memorials, in addition to Tablets

Digitized by Google

in local Churches, and contributed sums to charitable purposes as memorials.

It will be seen from the above that the required minimum of £10,000 is now approaching completion, and the Committee are continuing negotiations with His Majesty's Office of Works with regard to securing a definite site. As soon as this has been settled, they will approach the Committee of the Royal Academy with a view to selecting sculptors to submit designs. The subscription list is still open.



It is proposed to utilise the above sketch of an Indian *sowar*, by General Sir Robert Baden-Powell, on the covers of the JOURNAL this year.

Digitized by Google

SPORTING NOTES

Racing

During the flat race season, one of its features was the extraordinary bad luck of H.M. the King. His horses have constantly run second, and only on a few occasions actually won. We wish the Royal stable better luck next season.

A race was won at the last Manchester Meeting by a mare that had been at the stud for two seasons. This is very unusual, as animals seldom get back their form after being sent to the stud. We remember, years ago, seeing a father and son run in the same race at the Curragh. The sire was, we think, called "Americus." He was a failure at the stud and then put back into training, but never did any good.

Two horses that are better known under N.H. Rules have won several races on the flat this season: Hairpin II. and Arravale.

We hear their owners have matched these horses to run three races, on the flat, over hurdles and a steeplechase. A most sporting match.

At Doncaster, bloodstock prices came down to a more reasonable level, and no sensational prices were obtained, but sixteen from Sledgemere that came under the hammer realised an average of 2,304 guineas. Top price was given by the Hon. George Lambton (7,700 guineas) for a charming filly by Tracery—Blue Tit, bought for the Aga Khan.

Hunting

This season has started under serious difficulties. At first, the ground was very hard and scent very bad, then many

Digitized by Google

packs were stopped by frost. The number of hounds is still far less than before the War. This is chiefly owing to distemper, which has been prevalent in a very virulent form.

Polo

The 'Polo Magazine' has published some letters from well-known Polo players on the subject of the height of Polo ponies—whether to go back to the old measurement of ponies or not. These authorities seem fairly equally divided on the subject. General de Lisle puts forward a proposition that we think sound in many ways. He advocates the measurement of ponies, but not from the withers but from the back, where the saddle goes. Many ponies in the old days would not pass the standard owing to having very high withers, although the riders of these ponies were the same distance from the ground, and, possibly, the weight of the ponies practically identical.

Shooting at Home

One of the features of the present shooting season has been the great interest taken in Field Trials for gun dogs. Without good dogs the bag suffers considerably, and sportsmen are at last beginning to know that it is possible to have dogs of all sorts—retrievers, spaniels, pointers or setters—trained so that they are steady and obedient and do not make themselves a perfect nuisance to all concerned. An unsteady dog is worse than useless, and instead of helping the bag very often disturbs game that might have come to the guns. There have been more Retriever Trials this autumn than in pre-war days.

Lord Ludlow, an ex-Yeoman, lent his place, Luton Hoo, for the Labrador Club Trials. The tests for steadiness were very good. In one drive, 57 hares were shot and over 150 in the day, and we did not see any dogs run in. Major Palmer, late 10th Hussars, and Lord Lewisham, late Shropshire Yeomanry, lent Godmersham Park for the Golden Retriever

Digitized by Google

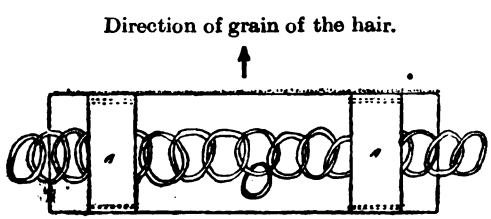
Trials, which were a great success. There are a good many ex-Cavalry officers who now bring their dogs to Field Trials and handle them themselves.

At the Scottish Spaniel Trials the Duke of Hamilton sent a team of six spaniels. They were handled by his head keeper, Gaunt. Every one of them was under perfect control; if a gun was fired they all dropped immediately, one would be sent to retrieve and then at a signal from the handler, they all started hunting again. It was a pleasure to see such perfect breaking.

Major Beresford, 10th Lancers, Hodson's Horse, has forwarded us the following account of a curb guard which we think will be of interest to cavalry officers :—

This curb guard has been found effective in preventing the rubbing of the chin groove in polo ponies. The idea is that by having next to the horse's skin and in opposition to the grain of the hair, a piece of tanned leather with the hair left on, all friction is taken up by the action of the curb chain on the guard instead of on the chin groove. It has been found that by the use of this plan, ponies whose chin grooves have been badly cut can be kept in play and the wounds completely cured in a short time.

In making up a curb guard it is best to choose a soft well-tanned skin with short hair; long hair, fur or wool tends to work into knots and lumps. The best results are obtained if the guard is adjusted with the hair pointing upwards, as shown in the sketch.



Length, 5 to 6 inches; breadth, 2 inches. A.A. Tabs to hold curb chain in position.

BACK VIEW OF CURB GUARD, WITH HAIR LEFT ON SKIN.

Digitized by Google

Arab Horse Test

We mentioned in the last Journal the Arab Horse Test held over the Sussex Downs. Last year the test was fifty miles a day for five days. This year it was raised to sixty miles a day. The weight was thirteen stone and two compulsory halts, one of thirty minutes, the other of ten minutes. There were eight starters. Last year's winner "Shahzada" was second, but was beaten by the pure bred Arab mare "Belka."

India

We regret to hear that Captain G. W. Burch, 8th Cavalry I.A., met with a fatal accident while playing Polo at the Cavalry School, Saugor, India. He was the son of Major F. Burch, late of the Royal Dragoons.

Mesopotamia

We hear from an officer quartered at Baghdad that lions that were thought to be extinct are still to be found in 'Mespot.' A short time ago an officer walking along a nullah in an unfrequented and barren district, suddenly found himself face to face with a lioness and three cubs. The lioness stood and he thought was going to charge, but the cubs bolted and she followed them. This was near to a small brackish water hole which was probably used by the gazelles of the neighbourhood, and she was evidently hoping to provide food for her family.

An effort is to be made to catch one of the cubs alive to be added to the Cox-Cheesman Collection in the Zoological Gardens.

The district where the lions were seen is being kept secret so as not to put temptation in the way of a too keen shikari, and so preserve the few remaining lions in 'Mespot.'

Palestine

The last quarter has been very unsettled owing to changes in the garrison. The 8th Cavalry have gone back to India

Digitized by Google

and the 4th Cavalry to Kantara *en route*. The 'Greys' are now at Jenin and the 5th Dragoon Guards at Surafend, in North and South Palestine respectively. This leaves the 31st Lancers at Semakh, the only remaining Indian Cavalry regiment in the country.

With so many changes, it may be imagined that sport has not developed to any great extent. Two polo tournaments have been held at Surafend, one in September won by the 4th Cavalry, and one in October won by H.Q. Troops, Palestine. Polo will have somewhat of a check now until the spring, as the rain arrived on November 24.

Shooting opened well on September 1, and many good bags have been obtained, principally in North Palestine. The first woodcock of the season were shot at Jenin on November 30 (and later one was seen flying down the main street of Nablus).

In October the Civil Authorities burnt out some reclaimed ground at Beisan, and a few sportsmen journeyed down in the hope of getting a ride at pig in the event of any breaking cover, but although fresh spoor was seen no pig broke.

It may be of interest to old campaigners in Palestine to know that the remnants of the Sarona hounds (4th Cavalry Division) still provide a good few runs at Jenin—their last day out giving a four-mile run. On the departure of the 4th Cavalry, they were handed over to the 'Greys,' who will hunt them in future, and, it is hoped, introduce fresh hounds.

We hear there is fair fishing to be obtained in the River Jordan, including carp, dace and barbel. To a keen fisherman quartered in Palestine this will be good news.

The Army Point to Point, 1922, will be held near Arborfield Cross, Reading, on Monday, March 27. All enquiries should be made of the 4th Cavalry Brigade, Canterbury.

It is a matter of regret that the promoters of the Royal Tournament at Olympia last year did not see their way to

Digitized by Google

give financial aid to the Cavalry Benefit Association. It is hoped that their decision will be reviewed. The Royal Tournament owes its success very much to the jumping and the displays of the Cavalry.

We cannot end these notes without expressing our intense regret that those four sporting regiments, the 5th and 21st Lancers and the 19th and 20th Hussars, have now ceased to exist and their names no longer appear in the Army List. In the days to come we fully expect that the authorities who ordered their disbandment under pressure from the politicians in order to save a few pounds, will bitterly regret the loss of these regiments. The highest authorities on Cavalry, men who were brought up in that arm, but during the Great War commanded armies in the field, are all convinced that Cavalry are as important now as they have ever been in the past.

We wonder how long it would have taken to obtain the same results in Palestine and Mesopotamia if there had been no mounted troops and the officer in command had to depend on tanks and armoured cars.—*Resurgant.*

Printed by EYRE and SPOTTISWOODE, LTD., His Majesty's Printers, East Harding Street, E.C. 4.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Copyright and Published by R. Caton Woodville, 29, Abbey Road, London, N.W.

UNIV. OF CALIFORNIA

LANCE AGAINST LANCE IN THE BATTLE OF THE MARNE.

Digitized by Google

THE

CAVALRY JOURNAL

APRIL 1922

LANCERS

THE long lance of chivalry was first replaced by a serviceable fire-arm in 1597, when regiments of Dutch and English carabiniers defeated the Spaniards in the Netherlands. From that time, for two centuries, the lance ceased to be the essential weapon of the British horse soldier, though there were Scottish lancers in 1650 at the battle of Dunbar, at whose hands Cromwell's troops suffered severely. The lance, however, remained as the typical weapon of light cavalry upon the eastern marches of Germany.

Frederick the Great reorganised his cavalry in 1744, when all his uhlans, converted to hussars, retained, it is recorded, the white sheepskin formerly distinctive of the uhlan. However, in the Seven Years' War, Frederick reintroduced a lancer troop in each hussar regiment, and the men were equipped with lance, sword and long pistol. There was no lance pennon, and one of the uniforms consisted of brick-red tunic, overalls and saddle-cloth, green plume, and white cords and lace.

As we reach the Napoleonic period, the lance is seen on many battlefields, wielded by Poles, Cossacks and Arabs; but it was only after Wagram that the Garde Chevaulegers were armed with the lance. Napoleon was doubtless influenced

Digitized by Google

by the Polish element, and he originally gave one lancer regiment to each division of cuirassiers, to do the scouting. He raised his first regiment of Polish lancers in 1807, and in 1811 converted nine dragoon regiments into lancers.

British Infantry at Albuera had cause to respect the lance. At Waterloo a lancer regiment broke up Ponsonby's exhausted brigade of dragoons, and another dealt with Vandeleur's hussars in a similar manner.

Soon after Waterloo the lance was issued to the 16th Light Dragoons; the 12th, 9th, 17th and 19th Light Dragoons were subsequently also made lancers.

De Montmorency, in 1820, wrote as follows on Exercises for the Lance: 'Lancers are, in my opinion, either the best or the worst description of cavalry in armies; a fine and vigorous lancer would, I am confident, annihilate any three experienced dragoons or hussars, whereas a weak and inefficient one is one of the most wretched of military beings.'

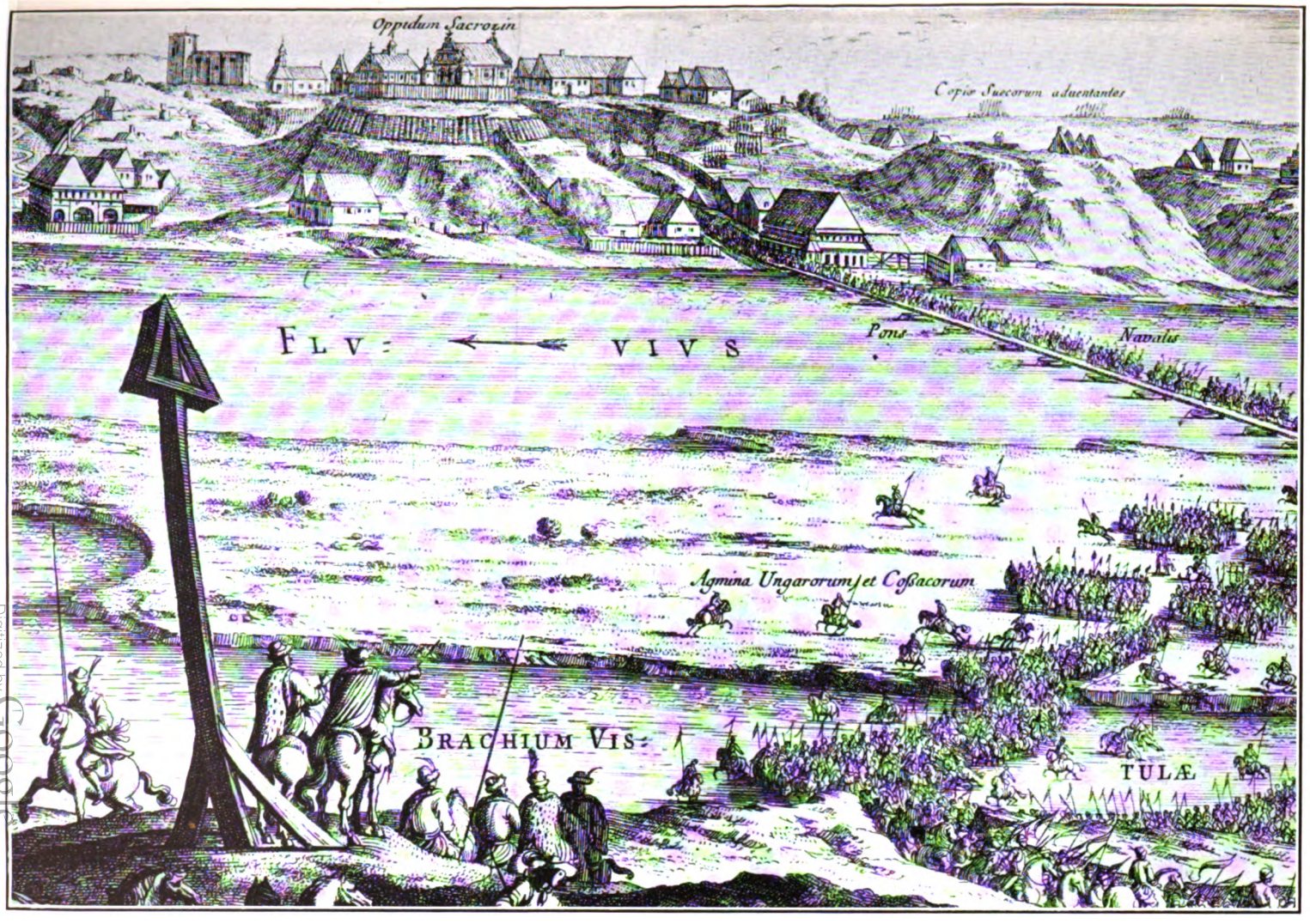
Good horsemanship and discipline are no less essential to the lancer than an active and well-balanced horse. The lance is not well adapted for swift parrying, but as the weapon of attack it endows the lancer with the spirit of the offensive and raises his *morale* while it lowers that of his adversary. The lancer, like the ideal bayonet fighter, is impelled to close with and thus speedily destroy the enemy.

In every war, 'the queen of weapons for the cavalry,' as Montecuculi named it, has proved its excellence.

The 16th Lancers, in 1846, were reputed the best mounted regiment in the Service at home or abroad. They rode Indian country-breds of the Katthiawar and Mewari breeds, all duns or chesnuts, compact and speedy; and at the glorious battle of Aliwal, two squadrons of the regiment, by a succession of charges, drove the enemy into the Sutlej and captured thirteen guns.

The prowess of the 9th Lancers on Indian fields, and of the 12th Lancers in South Africa in 1851, raised the prestige

Digitized by Google



LANCERS CROSSING THE VISTULA, 1657.

Digitized by Google

THE CAVALRY CHARGE AT SINHO ON 12th AUGUST, 1860.

Original sketch by Colonel Crealock.

THE NECK AND NECK RACE BETWEEN A TROOP OF FANE'S HORSE AND

of the lance, and there followed the re-embodiment of the 5th Lancers in 1858.

Two years later, Fane's Horse used their lances effectively in the China War, and so redoubtable were the achievements of our lancers in succeeding campaigns that the 21st were constituted lancers for the Khartoum expedition, and the front ranks of dragoons were equipped with the lance till it was relinquished owing to the guerilla tactics of the South African War. Though the 5th Dragoon Guards used their lances and with the 5th Lancers delivered an effective charge and pursuit at Elandslaagte in 1899, the statistics of the South African War caused the official mind to revert to 'fire-worship,' the dragoon principle of the eighteenth century; and the War Office, temporarily setting its face against the lance, in March 1903 actually published an Army Order discontinuing it altogether. It was, however, shortly afterwards reintroduced.

It must be realised that it is not solely the weapon carried by the man, but his courage and knowledge, that are of first importance in war. Seidlitz wrote: 'In the charge it is a matter of indifference what weapon a soldier carries. The chief thing is that he should be well mounted, and that he should bear in mind the unshakable resolution to ride the enemy down with his horse's breast.'

If cavalry are actuated by that aggressive spirit which creates events instead of submitting to them, they cannot be more suitably armed for the war of movement and of impulsion than with the lance, the weapon of attack.

Digitized by Google

In the Seven Years' War Frederick the Great had a Lancer troop attached to every Hussar Regiment.

Digitized by Google

OPERATIONS OF THE MOUNTED TROOPS OF THE EGYPTIAN EXPEDITIONARY FORCE (continued)

By Lieut.-Colonel Rex Osborne, D.S.O., M.C.,*
13*th Hussars*

Chapter XX. Phase IV.

Operations Across Jordan.

Ref. Map B and Plate XII.

Position in February 1918.

The Turkish XXth Korps, with Headquarters at Jericho, held a strong position astride the Jerusalem–Jericho road, approximately on the line Kaneitera–Jebel Kalimum–Talat ed Dumm and joining up with the IIIrd Turkish Korps, which had its main strength just north of Bire astride the Jerusalem–El Lubban road. 60th Division was astride the Jerusalem–Jericho road, opposed by 5,000 rifles, while to the north another 2,000 rifles were in a position to act against the left flank of the 60th Division if it advanced.

Any advance northward was out of the question for the time being. Roads and communications had to be constructed in forward areas; stores of supplies and ammunition had to be accumulated; the railways were advancing very slowly owing to spells of wet weather. Moreover, before further advance northward could be made it was necessary to drive the enemy across the river Jordan and so render the right flank secure. The possession of the crossings over the Jordan offered three advantages. These were :—

(*a*) The enemy would be prevented from raiding the tract of country to the west of the Dead Sea.

* The writer is greatly indebted to Lt.-Col. the Hon. R. M. P. Preston, D.S.O., for Map B, which is reproduced from his book 'The Desert Mounted Corps.'

Digitized by Google

(*b*) Control of the Dead Sea would be obtained.

(*c*) A point of departure would be gained for operations eastwards with a view to interrupting the enemy's Line of Communications to the Hedjaz, in conjunction with the Arab forces based on Akaba, in the Red Sea.

The Commander-in-Chief therefore decided to carry out the advance down into the Jordan valley, the limits of the advance being the Jordan on the east and Wadi el Auja on the north. This wadi joins the Jordan 8 miles north of the point where the Jordan enters the Dead Sea.

The chief obstacle to the advance lay in the difficulties of the ground (Photo No. 3). The descent from the vicinity of Jerusalem to the valley of the Jordan is very steep and the beds of the main wadis run from west to east. Their banks are often precipitous, rendering any crossing from one bank to the other impossible. Minor tributaries join the main wadis from all directions, breaking up the ridges into a tumbled mass of hills. The descent to the Jordan valley from the line then held by the 60th Division is not, however, continuous. It is interrupted by a series of ridges, which afforded the enemy strong defensive positions, and opposite the right of the 60th Division El Muntar formed a conspicuous landmark overlooking all the country in the vicinity. After a big fall down from Jerusalem, the ground again rose at Talat ed Dumm. This rise continued in a south-easterly direction to Jebel Ekteif and Nebi Musa, descending from there sharply to the Jordan valley; to the west of Jericho, at Jebel Kuruntul, the hill on which Christ was tempted, the ground falls in sheer cliffs to the Jordan valley.

Plan.

The general plan consisted of a direct advance by the 60th Division to the cliffs overlooking Jericho. Anzac Division, without Artillery or any other wheels, was to co-operate on the right flank, with a view to entering the

Digitized by Google

Jordan valley near Nebi Musa and cutting off the enemy's retreat from Jericho.

Narrative.

February 19.

The operations started. By 9 a.m. 60th Division had captured El Muntar, which enabled Anzac Division to concentrate behind it, preparatory to operating against the enemy's left.

February 20.

60th Division captured Talat el Dumm. After a pause to enable guns to be brought forward, a further advance of 2,000 yards was made. On the right, about Jebel Ekteif, great opposition was met. Moreover, the ground over which the attack had to take place proved the most rugged and difficult yet met with in Palestine; however, soon after midday, Jebel Ekteif was stormed. In the meantime Anzac Division, on the right, had encountered considerable opposition, and had been much hampered by the difficulties of the ground. The N.Z.M.R. Brigade struggled forward all day, but they were finally checked by heavy fire from Nebimusa; but, in the meantime, 1st A.L.H. Brigade had been reconnoitring down the Wadi Kumran, and a troop had got through to the edge of the Dead Sea, the whole Brigade following; by 1800 hours they were concentrated at the mouth of the Wadi Kumran. The chief feature of the enemy's resistance during the day had been the volume of machine-gun fire.

February 21.

1st A.L.H. Brigade, advancing north along the plain, entered Jericho at 0820 hours, the enemy having withdrawn during the night. 60th Division advanced to the cliffs overlooking Jericho. Meanwhile patrols from 1st A.L.H. Brigade reconnoitred north to the Wadi El Auja and to El Ghoraniyeh bridge. The enemy was found to be holding the high ground

Digitized by Google

north of the Auja and a bridgehead on the right bank of Jordan covering the Ghoraniyeh bridge, with guns on the left bank. As a direct attack on the bridgehead would have involved heavy losses without compensating advantages, it was not attempted.

60th Division was withdrawn to a line running north and south through Talat ed Dumm, leaving outposts on the cliffs overlooking Jericho. Anzac Divison, leaving one regiment to patrol the Jordan valley, returned to Bethlehem. On no previous occasion had such difficulties of ground been encountered. As an instance of this, a Field Artillery Battery took 36 hours to reach Nebi Musa, a distance, as the crow flies, of only 8 miles. The Royal Air Force rendered very valuable service throughout the operations, but mist and low-lying clouds interrupted their work to a great extent.

Improving the Position.

This operation had rendered the right flank secure, but the base thus obtained was not sufficiently broad to permit of operations being carried out across the Jordan against the Hedjaz Railway. Before such operations were possible, it was necessary for the XXth Corps to capture Abu Tellul, a strong point in the Jordan valley, and to push north along the backbone of the mountains to a point 10 miles north of Bire. This was successfully accomplished by March 11.

The Amman Raid.

The Jordan valley had now been sufficiently cleared of the enemy to enable operations to be carried out against the Turkish Line of Communications to the Hedjaz, in conjunction with the Arab forces under Feisal, which were operating in the country to the south-east of the Dead Sea and under Lord Allenby's control.

Feisal, since January 1918, had met with much success, and had drawn large Turkish forces south along the Hedjaz

Digitized by Google

Railway. The situation to the east of the Jordan thus presented a favourable opportunity for a raid towards Amman against the enemy's communications with the Hedjaz. The C.-in-C. therefore decided to carry out such an operation in February. To really assist Feisal, it would be necessary to damage the railway seriously, and the object of the raid was to destroy the viaduct and tunnel at Amman. Even if the railway was only temporarily interrupted, the threat would compel the enemy to maintain considerable forces to cover Amman; the Turkish troops available to operate against the Arabs would be reduced, and possibly the enemy might transfer a portion of his reserves from west to east of the Jordan, thereby weakening his ability to make, or meet, an attack on the main front. Amman is 30 miles east by north of Jericho as the crow flies. The nature of the intervening country varies to a marked degree. From the bank of the Jordan to the ridges 1 mile east of the river the ground is flat, and after rain becomes marshy. Beyond these ridges the country is covered with scrub and intersected by numerous wadis; but for 5 miles east of Jordan, until the foothills are reached, the valley is comparatively flat and good going for Cavalry. In the next 12 miles the ground rises some 3,500 feet, till the edge of the plateau of Moab is reached about Naaur and Ain es Sir. The hills are rugged and steep, and the main wadis descend from the plateau to the Jordan in deep valleys. The plateau itself is undulating and the lower portion of it marshy after rain. Immediately west of Amman there lies a cultivated plain extending 2 miles west and 4 miles north-west of the town. The Turks had constructed a metalled road from Ghoraniyeh bridge to Es Salt and Amman, which winds up through the hills from Shunet Nimrin, supported by embankments in places 20 feet high. This main road was the only real road east of Jordan, and was in bad repair. At Es Salt, a town of some 15,000 inhabitants, it was joined, according to agents, by tracks leading from

Digitized by Google

the fords over the Jordan at Mandesi, Um es Shert and Jisr ed Damieh, and by a track from the north. To the south of Es Salt various tracks follow the wadis to the plateau, and are now known to be unfit for wheeled traffic. One passes to Amman through Naaur; another from Shunet Nimrin through Ain es Sir.

Narrative.

The force detailed to carry out the raid, under the command of the G.O.C. 60th Division, consisted of 60th Division, Anzac Division, Imperial Camel Brigade, a Mountain Artillery Brigade, a Light Armoured Car Brigade, and a Heavy Battery. 60th Division was to force the crossing over the Jordan and advance astride the metalled road to Es Salt, which it was to hold, its left flank being protected by 1st A.L.H. Brigade. The remainder of Anzac Division and the Imperial Camel Brigade, following 60th Division across the Jordan, were to move direct on Amman through Ain es Sir and Naaur. On reaching Amman the railway was to be destroyed and the viaduct and tunnel demolished; this having been accomplished, the mounted troops were to withdraw on the 60th Division, the whole force then withdrawing to form a bridgehead on the east side of the Jordan.

The Passage of the Jordan.

The crossing of the Jordan took place during the night of March 21/22. The attempt to cross at El Ghoraniyeh failed owing to the strength of the current, which prevented all attempts to cross both by swimming and by means of rafts and pontoons. At Makhadet Hajlah the swimmers succeeded in reaching the opposite bank at 0120 hours on the 22nd, and by 0745 hours the leading battalion was across. Till dawn this crossing was unperceived by the enemy, but subsequently troops had to be ferried across and a bridge constructed under fire. The bridge was completed at 0830

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

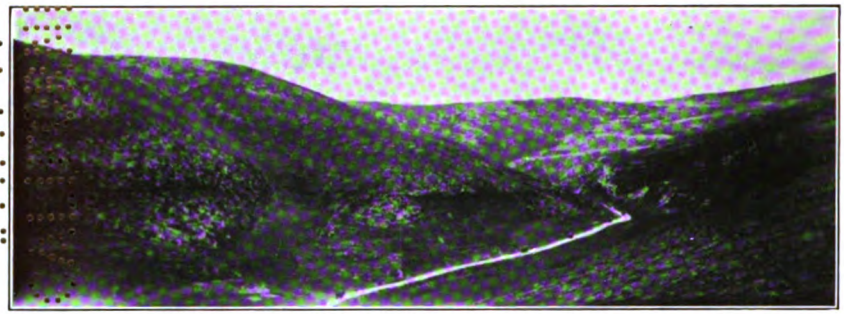


Photo No. 3.—View of Jericho-Jerusalem road, looking up towards Mount of Olives and Jerusalem. Country on left shows type of country crossed by Anzac Division. "The most rugged and difficult yet met with in Palestine." Probably the most difficult country that a Cavalry Division has ever been asked to cross in the face of opposition.

Photo No. 4.—(Looking E. from Shunet Nimrin toward Amman.) Showing the metalled Shunet Nimrin Road, entering the foothills close to Shunet Nimrin. The valley in the centre contains the track to Ain Es Sir, up which the N.Z.M.R. Brigade moved to Amman in March, 1918. The main defensive position of Turkish IV. Army during April—September, 1918, ran along these foothills. The prisoners are Germans.

Digitized by Google

Photo No. 5.—Taken from Ghoraniyeh, looking N.E. by N. Wadi Nimrin runs down from right edge of photo. Shunet Ni
in foothills off right edge. El Haud is a big foothill on right edge 5 miles from Ghoraniyeh. Highest hill in right

hours and further troops crossed, but it was found impossible to enlarge the bridgehead until dark owing to the enemy's fire and the thickness of the scrub.

A further attempt to cross at El Ghoraniyeh during the night of the 22nd/23rd was again frustrated by the current and the enemy's fire.

Early in the morning, however, the Auckland Mounted Rifles, having crossed at Hajlah, charged and captured a Turkish post opposite that place. They then turned north, swept up the east side of the river, and galloped to Ghoraniyeh, capturing various parties of Infantry and Machine Guns which had prevented our Infantry crossing. One troop moving northward nearer the hills, encountered sixty Turkish Cavalry making for Kabr Mujahid. The Turks tried to charge the troop, and in the hand-to-hand combat which ensued the Turks lost twenty killed and seven prisoners, and fled in all directions. Two squadrons of this regiment attempted to rush Shunet Nimrin, but were met by heavy artillery and machine-gun fire and had to withdraw and form a bridgehead east of El Ghoraniyeh.

Three bridges were constructed during the day, and the whole force crossed, but owing to the swollen state of the river much valuable time had been lost.

On March 24, 60th Division forced the entrance (Photo No. 4) to the pass at Shunet Nimrin, and by the evening of March 25 had occupied Es Salt without further opposition.

In the meantime, about 1500 hours on 24th, 2nd A.L.H. Brigade had started up the hills by the track to Naaur accompanied by Ayrshire Battery, R.H.A., and all the Brigade wheels, including L.G.S. wagons with explosives; Anzac Division Headquarters and Divisional Troops, including Somerset Battery, R.H.A., with the Imperial Camel Brigade in rear, followed the 2nd A.L.H. Brigade. It was just dark, and the road was already becoming difficult, when a message came back from the 2nd A.L.H. Brigade to say

Digitized by Google

that wheels could go no further. This was a serious blow. A French priest, who had lived in Madeba, had previously stated that he had driven his carriage by this road, but his information was now proved to be quite false. A long halt therefore took place while explosives were transferred to the emergency camels which had been provided against such an eventuality. The batteries and all wheels had to be left with an escort, with orders to march to Shunet Nimrin as soon as it was light enough to see.

The march of the column continued up the mountain; the track became more and more difficult; for the men on their feet and leading their horses it was bad, for the camels it was far worse. At 1620 hours it began to rain, and became intensely cold with strong wind. This increased as the column climbed higher, and a regular gale began. The path, bad enough in fine weather, became very slippery. At one point it went up the face of a rocky cliff up which the camels were only got with the greatest difficulty.

In the early part of the night large bodies of friendly Arabs had joined the column, but as the conditions grew worse and worse they gradually disappeared.

At 0400 hours the moon went down, just as the head of the column reached the top of the hills. In the pitch darkness no movement was possible, and the whole force stood in a storm of wind and sleet strung out in single file for about 8 miles along the face of the mountains; the gale never ceased for a moment, and although the head of the column had reached the top at 0400 hours, the last camel was not up until 1930 hours.

At 0930 hours the head of the column started on again, still in the pouring rain. The country was a morass in many places, and many of the camel-drivers collapsed with the cold, several being brought in dead on their camels.

At 2130 hours Naaur was passed. A thick fog came on, and at 0500 hours on March 26 the column ran by chance

Digitized by Google

into the N.Z.M.R. Brigade at Ain es Sir. The 2nd A.L.H. Brigade pushed forward across the Es Salt–Amman road about El Swileh, and captured 170 prisoners and a number of motor lorries. It was intended to push on to Amman at once, but the men were completely worn out by three days and nights without rest under appalling conditions. Orders were therefore issued for a night's rest, followed by an advance on Amman next day.

During the night, parties with explosives were sent out north and south of Amman to cut the railway. The southern party was successful in carrying out minor demolitions, but the northern party encountered the enemy and was driven off.

By the evening of March 27 N.Z.M.R. Brigade had reached the railway south of Amman; in the centre and on the north respectively, the Imperial Camel Brigade and 2nd A.L.H. Brigade failed to reach the railway, being heavily counter-attacked, but during the night a demolition party succeeded in blowing up a small bridge north of Amman.

On March 28 a Brigade of the 60th Division arrived from Es Salt, accompanied by Mountain Artillery. The so-called metalled road was too soft to admit of field guns being brought up; in fact, twenty-two Turkish motor lorries and other vehicles found along the road were so embedded in the mud that they could not be removed, and had to be destroyed.

On its arrival this Brigade attacked astride the Es Salt–Amman road, the 2nd A.L.H. Brigade attacking on its left and the Imperial Camel Brigade on its right, while the N.Z.M.R. Brigade attacked Hill 3039, just south of Amman. The attack failed, and the enemy commenced to counter-attack.

On March 29, Turkish reinforcements arrived, and the counter-attacks were renewed, but without success. During the afternoon two more battalions of the 60th Division and a battery of R.H.A. arrived from Es Salt, after a long and arduous march.

Digitized by Google

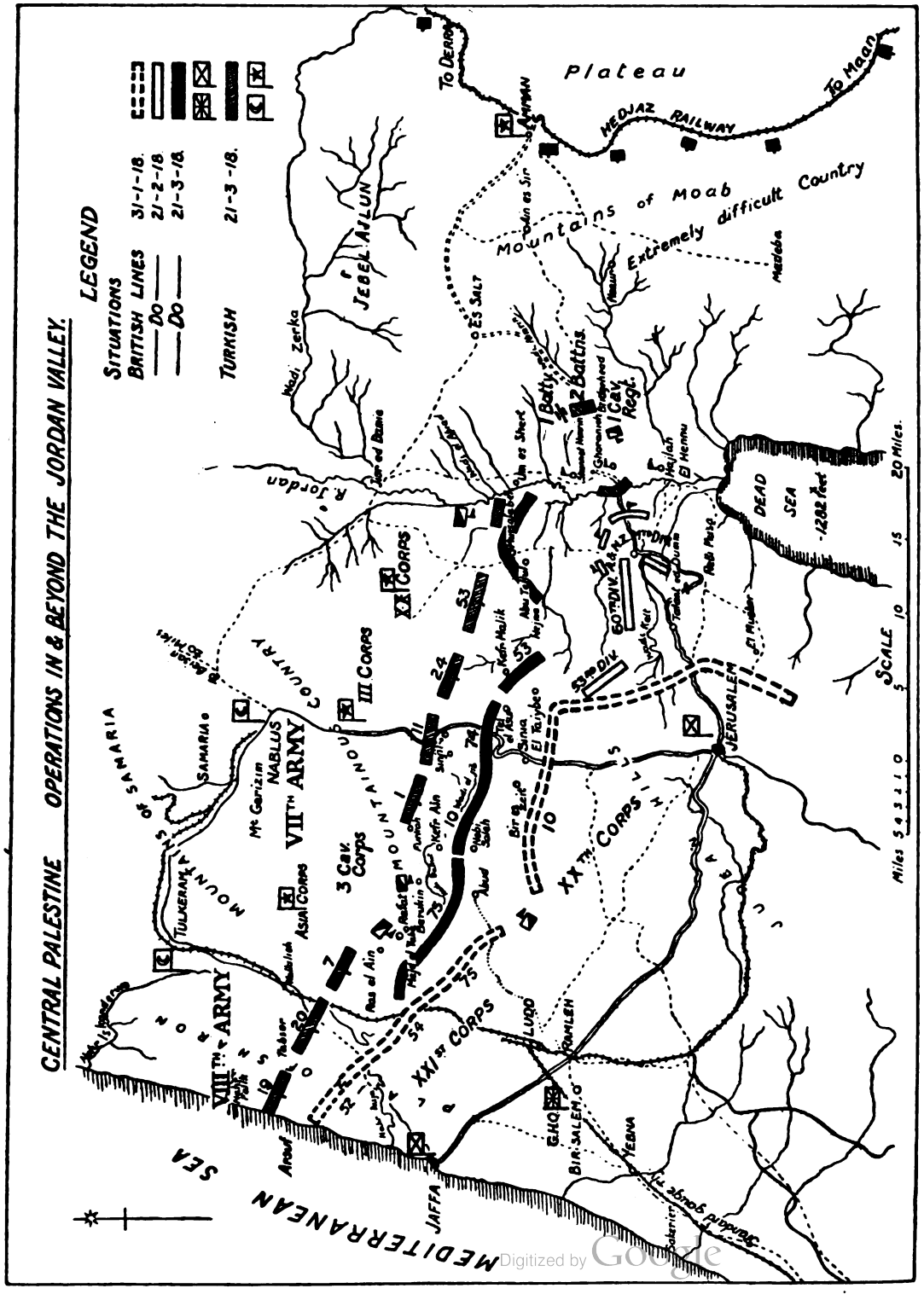


Plate XII.

Digitized by Google

The attack on Amman was renewed on March 30 and the N.Z.M.R. Brigade captured part of Hill 3039; parties of New Zealanders entered the village, but were fired on from the houses; elsewhere the attack met with only slight success. It was apparent that, without greater artillery support, further attacks would only succeed at the cost of heavy losses.

Meanwhile, Turkish forces from Jisr ed Damieh and from the north had begun to make their presence felt against the remainder of the 60th Division at Es Salt. Orders were therefore issued for a withdrawal to take place during the night. This was carried out without interruption after all the wounded had been evacuated.

By the evening of April 2 the whole force had recrossed the Jordan with the exception of troops left to hold the bridgehead on the east bank.

Results of the Raid.

Although no permanent damage had been done to the Hedjaz Railway, the raid had succeeded in drawing northward, and retaining not only Turkish troops which had been operating against the Arabs on the eastern shore of the Dead Sea, but, in addition, a portion of the garrison of Maan, further to the south. Before the raid was carried out, the enemy's strength in the Amman–Es Salt–Shunet Nimrin area was approximately 4,000; by the middle of April it had increased to over 8,000.

Chapter XXI.

The Es Salt Raid. (Map B.)

After the troops employed in the Amman raid had been withdrawn to the east bank of Jordan, the enemy reoccupied the Shunet Nimrin position, which he now held with some 5,000 rifles.

Digitized by Google

These troops were under the command of the G.O.C. Fourth Turkish Army, with Headquarters at Es Salt.

The main position ran along the foothills from Kabr Mujahid through Shunet Nimrin and in front of El Haud, with its right resting on the wadi south of the Um es Shert–Es Salt track (Photo No. 5). Cavalry covered the southern flank, and the 2nd Caucasian Cavalry Brigade maintained an outpost line across the plain east of the Jordan (shown as left background in Photo No. 5), from the right of the defensive position in the foothills (shown as left centre background in Photo No. 5) to Um es Shert, at which, on the western side of the river, was located the Turkish 3rd Cavalry Division.

The Fourth Turkish Army was comparatively isolated, and the Commander-in-Chief determined to seize the first opportunity to cut off and destroy the enemy's force at Shunet Nimrin, and, if successful, to hold Es Salt till the Arabs could advance and relieve the British troops.

Towards the end of April a deputation from the Beni Sakhr tribe arrived from over Jordan, stating that the tribe was concentrated near Madeba ready to co-operate with any advance, provided it took place before May 4, after which date their supplies would be finished and the tribe would have to disperse.

The troops available to carry out this raid were Descorps (less Yeodiv.), 60th Division (less one Brigade), and the Imperial Service Cavalry and Imperial Service Infantry Brigades.

The 60th Division was to assault the enemy's position at Shunet Nimrin (right background of Photo No. 5), whilst the mounted troops, moving northwards from El Ghoraniyeh, were to turn east along the tracks leading from Um es Shert and Jisr ed Damieh and seize Es Salt. (Former track slightly and latter track far beyond left centre background of Photo No. 5.)

Digitized by Google

In the former raid, the only route found fit for wheeled transport between Amman and Shunet Nimrin had been the metalled road passing through Es Salt.

If the mounted troops could reach Es Salt, the main Line of Communications of the force at Shunet Nimrin would be severed, and this force would be dependent for its supplies on the track further south through Ain es Sir (*see* Photo No. 4).

This track was exposed to attack by the Beni Sakhr tribe.

There appeared every chance, therefore, of the Turkish force at Shunet Nimrin being compelled to retreat under very difficult conditions, and a fair chance of its being captured.

Narrative.

60th Division.

On the morning of April 30 the 60th Division captured the advanced works of the Shunet Nimrin position, but were unable to make further progress in face of the stubborn resistance offered by the enemy.

Ausdiv., with 1st A.L.H. Brigade of the Anzac Division attached, had one regiment, on April 29, holding a thin extended outpost line facing the enemy's outpost, which ran from Um es Shert eastward to the foothills (along left background of Photo No. 5).

During the night the whole Division advanced from Jericho, crossed the bridges at Ghoraniyeh, and assembled in the darkness, 5 miles north of Ghoraniyeh, and just south of the wadi running into the Jordan, 2½ miles south of Um es Shert.

The Division lined up just before dawn in massed formation close behind its outpost regiment. This was a dangerous experiment, but successfully accomplished.

At dawn, 0430 hours, as soon as 50 yards could be seen, the 3rd and 4th A.L.H. Brigades started to gallop, and swept straight over the enemy's outposts.

Digitized by Google

The 5th Mounted Brigade, following close behind, turned east almost at once to try and find the way up the track which had been reported running from Um es Shert to Es Salt.

The 4th A.L.H. Brigade was to take up a position about Jisr ed Damieh to prevent the Turks crossing at that place and interfering with the operations.

The 3rd A.L.H. Brigade, on reaching Jisr ed Damieh, was to turn south-east and climb the mountain side to Es Salt, up the only track which was known with certainty to exist.

The Horse Artillery Brigade accompanied the 4th A.L.H. Brigade. This Brigade, because it was not to leave the Jordan Valley, took its wheeled transport and ambulance with it.

The other Brigades took only pack transport and camel and mule pack mountain guns (2·75″ and 3·75″).

The 3rd and 4th A.L.H. Brigades maintained a very rapid pace although shelled all the way. They reached the track near Jisr ed Damieh at 0550 hours, *i.e.*, they went 13 miles in one hour and twenty minutes, which is probably a record for a Cavalry formation of such a size. The 'going' the whole way to Jisr ed Damieh is quite good, being similar to that as shown in Photo No. 5.

After the 3rd and 4th A.L.H. Brigades had passed, a regiment of the 1st A.L.H. Brigade attacked Red Hill, and, after considerable fighting, captured it.

Further Operations of Ausdiv.

At 1530 hours, the 4th A.L.H. Brigade was removed from the command of the G.O.C. Ausdiv., and came directly under the command of G.O.C. Descorps; G.O.C. Ausdiv. retained command of the 3rd and 1st A.L.H. Brigades and 5th Mounted Brigade.

Throughout the day the 5th Mounted Brigade struggled up the track from Um es Shert to Es Salt. It was only

Digitized by Google

suitable for donkeys; the men could not only not ride, but could not even lead their horses, and in the majority of cases the men held on to the tails of their horses, which pulled them up. The camels, carrying cacolets for evacuation of wounded, had to be sent back.

By nightfall the 5th Mounted Brigade had reached the plateau, but was held up about 2 miles west of Es Salt.

Ausdiv. Headquarters, 1st A.L.H. Brigade (less one Squadron, which stayed behind as garrison of Red Hill), and 2nd A.L.H. Brigade of Anzac Division, which had now been put under G.O.C. Ausdiv., followed up the track behind 5th Mounted Brigade and bivouacked on the side of the mountain during the night.

Meanwhile the 3rd A.L.H. Brigade, advancing up the Jisr ed Damieh–Es Salt track, and accompanied by the Hong Kong and Singapore Battery, commenced to climb the mountain.

This track proved to be a rocky mountain track impassable to wheeled traffic of any sort, but passable with difficulty for horses and camels in single file.

For the whole way the track was dominated by hills on either side, and a few determined riflemen and machine guns could have held up the column with the greatest ease.

No enemy was observed until the Advanced Guard arrived almost at the top. Here a scout noticed a saddle-horse near the track; creeping up towards the horse, he came on three men and observed a troop of fifteen Cavalry some three hundred yards further on. The three-men post was evidently the advanced post of the Cavalry troop.

Two Australian scouts got to within 25 yards before they were observed; finally one of the Turks was killed and the other two captured.

The scouts then fired on the Cavalry troop, and six of the Turks abandoned their horses and escaped on foot, the remainder escaping on their horses.

Digitized by Google

Two miles from Es Salt the enemy was found in occupation of a sangared position astride the track.

The Advanced Guard had now climbed over 4,000 feet in ten hours.

The enemy's position consisted of a high ridge about 1,000 yards long, and was held with rifles and machine guns.

The Australians opened with rifles and machine guns against this position without apparent effect.

The Brigadier saw that immediate action was essential, and decided on a frontal assault. Time was getting on, and the camel guns were particularly slow in movement, and any flanking movement would have to be dismounted, as horses could not leave the track.

The Brigadier now intercepted a wireless message from Descorps to Ausdiv. saying that Es Salt must be taken that evening.

Finally, the Brigadier managed to emplace twelve machine guns and three mountain guns. The enemy's lines could be enfiladed, and, under cover of this fire support, the 9th and 10th A.L.H. regiments made their attack.

The 8th A.L.H. regiment was retained mounted on the track, to dash through immediately the two leading regiments had got into the enemy's position.

The guns and machine guns opened rapid fire, and the stormers sprang forward down the steep rocky slopes and up similar slopes towards the enemy.

The conformation of the ground presented an unusually favourable opportunity for covering fire, allowing the men to get within 15 to 20 yards before it had to cease.

Many of the enemy bolted to the rear as the assaulting troops neared them, but a good number, amongst whom were German officers and men, fought to the last, and were bayoneted on the spot.

As the assaulting troops arrived on the crest of the enemy's position, the Brigadier ordered the 8th regiment to pursue.

Digitized by Google

This they were able to do at the gallop, as the track improved very much as the plateau was reached.

The 8th regiment came upon a party of fifty Turks in sangars. A troop was at once dispatched to get behind them, and the enemy fled. The 8th regiment then galloped on to Es Salt, which was entered at 1830 hours.

A German Staff Officer, who spoke English, was endeavouring to organise resistance in the streets.

Lieut. Foulkes Taylor, 10th A.L.H. Regiment, commanding the Advanced Troop, raced up to the German Staff Officer and demanded his surrender and that of his men. Lieut. Taylor put fourteen rounds from his own automatic and two clips from the German officer's pistol into the hesitating enemy and then smashed the pistol over the head of one of them.

The Brigadier reports as follows: 'The men of Lieut. Taylor's Troop were using their bayonets as swords. One Sergeant got two on the point (sword in line). The general opinion was that they were not good for mêlée fighting—too blunt. They used them for striking. Swords would have been invaluable here. The men with revolvers, Hotchkiss gunners, were using them freely.'

The streets and roads were full of mounted and dismounted enemy—300 Cavalry, 200 Infantry, and all the miscellaneous personnel to be found in an Army Headquarters.

Lieut. Taylor's troop raced on after lorries and limbers for 2 miles, causing great consternation, until he was finally held up by organised resistance of machine guns.

It was not possible to support this leading troop quickly, as it was only practicable to pass through the town in single file. This rapid pursuit by one troop, however, resulted in 200 prisoners, and Es Salt was firmly secured, with 360 prisoners and a motor-lorry company.

A senior German staff officer has stated that the Army Commander and Staff escaped in motors, with one minute to spare.

Digitized by Google

May 1.

On May 1, Ausdiv. consolidated its position at Es Salt and sent out strong reconnaissances towards Amman; 5th Mounted Brigade, supported by 2nd A.L.H. Brigade, moved down the main road in an endeavour to attack the enemy's position about El Haud and Shunet Nimrin.

Meanwhile, in the valley, 4th A.L.H. Brigade had taken up a position facing the ford at Jisr ed Damieh, and at 0800 hours on May 1 the Turks attacked in force, bringing their guns forward. Heavy Turkish reinforcements were observed coming up, and B Battery, H.A.C., was withdrawn southwards. During its withdrawal one gun fell over a precipice and had to be abandoned.

At 1000 hours the enemy attacked further to the south about Red Hill, and at 1030 hours the Turks again attacked and drove in the northern flank.

At 1130 hours the Turks were only 200 yards away, and the situation had become most critical.

The batteries still in the line, A Battery, H.A.C., and Notts Battery, R.H.A., continued in action, firing point blank into the enemy.

The 4th Brigade, with its Artillery, was, in fact, pinned with its back against the rocky foothills of the mountains, facing west.

The 4th A.L.H. Brigade fought most stubbornly in withdrawal, but was in great difficulties owing to the steep gullies and gorges, down which many animals fell and perished.

The Brigade finally fought their way out, but the eight guns and a considerable number of L.G.S. wagons could not be got away, and the Brigade Field Ambulance was also captured.

By noon the Brigade had, by stubborn fighting, stopped the enemy just north of the Um es Shert–Es Salt track, but that track was under the enemy's rifle fire.

The situation was obviously most serious, because this

Digitized by Google

track was now the only means of supplying, reinforcing, or withdrawing the four Brigades of Ausdiv. at Es Salt.

The N.Z.M.R. Brigade and 6th Mounted Brigade were rushed up to support 4th A.L.H. Brigade, and prevent the enemy from actually getting astride the track. This they succeeded in doing, but the enemy still remained within rifle range of it.

Meanwhile, the enemy was bringing up large reinforcements from Amman and Jisr ed Damieh against Ausdiv. at Es Salt, and the Beni Sakhr tribe had failed to take the action which had been expected.

This left the Ain es Sir track open to the Turks, and the Shunet Nimrin garrison, instead of being an isolated body of troops, formed the south claw of a formidable pair of pincers, with which the enemy threatened to cut off Ausdiv. at Es Salt.

60th Division made several most gallant attempts to relieve the situation by capturing the Turkish position at Shunet Nimrin, but failed completely, as the position was of great strength.

After having cleared their way of advance from Jisr ed Damieh towards Es Salt, the Turks made an attack at 2000 hours on May 2, against 3rd A.L.H. Brigade near Kefr Huda.

In spite of constant repulses, the 66th Turkish Regiment came on again at 2030 hours, again at 0300 hours, and again at 0400 hours. On failure of the last attack, the Turks were chased down hill by 10th A.L.H. regiment with bombs, and retreated nearly a mile.

The 8th A.L.H. regiment, covering the main road from Es Salt to Amman, was attacked at dawn by fresh troops from Amman. These Turks were vigorously counter-attacked by the 8th A.L.H. regiment, and lost 319 prisoners.

The 5th Mounted Brigade found their line of advance from Es Salt down the main road to Shunet Nimrin so rough as to be impassable in the face of opposition.

During this day it became obvious that Ausdiv. at Es

Digitized by Google

Salt was surrounded by strong enemy forces on all sides, and it appeared that it would be most difficult to withdraw them without serious loss.

Towards evening G.O.C. Ausdiv. was told to try and withdraw.

Immediately after dark the withdrawal commenced, regiment leap-frogging back through regiment, brigade through brigade; one regiment of each brigade remained out in their forward position in touch with the enemy until 0100 hours in the morning.

Soon after dawn on May 4, the entire four brigades were out of danger. The pack convoys and wounded on camels, had been successfully evacuated, only two moribund cases being left in Es Salt.

The enemy followed up early next morning, but the system employed, that of each body in rear leap-frogging through a fresh body behind, completely defeated the enemy's infantry. As the column wound its way down the mountain tracks, it was shelled, and attacked by five aeroplanes, two of which were shot down by the troops.

By the evening of May 4 all the troops had re-crossed the Jordan, bridgeheads being left to cover the bridge at El Ghoraniyeh and the ford at the mouth of the Wadi Mellaha, just north of Mandesi ford.

Although the destruction of the Turkish force at Shunet Nimrin had not been effected, the enemy's losses were heavy, Ausdiv. capturing about 900.

The raid had undoubtedly rendered the enemy apprehensive of further operations east of the Jordan, and compelled him, therefore, to maintain considerable forces in the Amman–Shunet Nimrin area, thus reducing the forces available to meet the Arab menace to the south or British activity in the maritime plain.

There is little doubt that his fear of Lord Allenby's 'Long Arm,' *i.e.*, his Mounted Corps, was not lessened.

Digitized by Google

The enemy thoroughly appreciated the achievement of Ausdiv. in these operations.

The enemy reported to Yilderim Headquarters by wireless: 'Es Salt was captured by the reckless and dashing gallantry of the Australian Cavalry.'

Comments on the Action of large Cavalry Formations in Hill Warfare.

The achievements of Descorps in the hills and mountains are interesting and important.

The value of Cavalry in such country was not previously recognised, and the Turks learned by the three big mounted raids—Yeodiv. into Judæa in November 1917, and Anzac Division and Ausdiv. into Moab in March and April 1918—that the more difficult the country the more dangerous became Lord Allenby's Mounted Corps.

The Turks had little fear that large Infantry forces would come up these tracks. If they did come, they must necessarily come slowly owing to the difficulties of transport and supply, and time would be available in which to meet them.

The Turks themselves could not well maintain protective troops on all these tracks because of the difficulties of supplying them; but they now learnt that British Cavalry, if unopposed, could scramble somehow up the mountains, and scramble up so quickly that the blow had fallen before it was even suspected.

The difficulties of supply did not stop them; the horse is a strong animal, and three days' supply for man and horse could be carried on the saddle.

It became obvious to the Turks that the ability of large Cavalry forces to move quickly over ground which no other arm can cross except Infantry, and they but slowly, opened up the possibility of a serious disaster.

If Yeodiv., in November 1917, had succeeded in getting

Digitized by Google

astride the Turkish L. of C. at Bire on the Jerusalem–Nablus road, and in taking up a defensive position there, the Turks to the south would have been hard put to it to shake them off.

Anzac Division failed by very little to destroy the Amman Viaduct. Success would have had most serious results to the Turkish forces operating far to the south.

The sudden appearance of Ausdiv., and their capture of Army Headquarters at Es Salt, came as a thunderbolt.

The Um es Shert–Es Salt track had been considered impassable by the Turks, and was not even guarded.

Lord Allenby's employment of large Cavalry forces in such a country has clearly shown that not only is Cavalry the most valuable arm for such operations but that it has not, nor will have, any competitor.

Their future in this rôle, and incidentally in all others, lies in close co-operation with the air. The Cavalry is the 'Long Arm,' the Aeroplane the 'Long Eye,' and probably the method of supply. At Es Salt, Ausdiv. was supplied with medical comforts by air. In Palestine, aeroplanes succeeded in picking up written messages from Cavalry without landing, by means of grappling hooks.

Lord Allenby has written: 'We used to hear, especially in peace manœuvres, that such and such a tract of country was suited to Cavalry action. The truth is that Cavalry can, and will, fit its tactics to any country. This has been shown repeatedly during the war just ended; in the rocky hills of Judæa . . . and the mountains of Moab.'

The success of these raids into Moab must not be judged only by their material results.

Liman von Sanders was himself a Cavalry soldier; this fact probably proved to his own disadvantage and led him to overestimate the power of Descorps to obtain material results. He began to fear a raid on Deraa, 50 miles north of Amman, the most vital point of all his communications, and through which his entire force was maintained. He

Digitized by Google

appears to have been convinced that Lord Allenby intended to break through *viâ* Amman to Deraa.

He reinforced his 4th Army in its main position astride the road at Shunet Nimrin, making it practically equal in strength to the 7th and 8th Turkish Armies west of the Jordan.

In doing so he stretched his force on a front of 62 miles, thus weakening it everywhere; to maintain such a front he lowered his G.H.Q. reserves to a more than dangerous minimum, as the sequel proved.

Judged in the light of their influence on subsequent events, these raids into Moab illustrate, in a unique way, the ultimate possibilities of the strategic Cavalry raid.

Despatch of Troops to France.

The despatch of troops to France, and the consequent reorganisation of the E.E.F., prevented further operations on any large scale being undertaken, and rendered necessary the adoption of a policy of active defence.

The 52nd and 74th Divisions sailed for France, and the 3rd (Lahore) and 7th (Meerut) Divisions came from Mesopotamia to replace them.

In addition, Yeodiv. was broken up, and nine Yeomanry Regiments, five and a half Siege Batteries, ten British battalions, and five Machine Gun Companies were withdrawn from the Line preparatory to embarkation for France.

The British battalions were replaced by Indian battalions, without war experience, from India.

The Yeomanry Regiments were replaced by Indian Cavalry, of much war experience, from France.

After the reorganisation Descorps was certainly no weaker than before, and consisted as follows:—

Anzac Division.

1st A.L.H. Brigade, 2nd A.L.H. Brigade, N.Z.M.R. Brigade; no change.

Digitized by Google

Ausdiv.

3rd A.L.H. Brigade, 4th A.L.H. Brigade, 5th Mounted Brigade (now to consist of one Yeomanry Regiment and two Indian Cavalry Regiments).

4th Cavalry Division.

10th Cavalry Brigade, 11th Cavalry Brigade, 12th Cavalry Brigade, each consisting of one Yeomanry Regiment and two Indian Cavalry Regiments.

5th Cavalry Division.

14th Cavalry Brigade, 15th Cavalry Brigade. the former consisting of a Yeomanry Regiment and two Indian Cavalry Regiments; and the last-named Brigade of three Imperial Service Indian Cavalry Regiments.

Imperial Camel Brigade (about to be broken up).

The Corps, as will be seen, now consisted of two Cavalry Divisions and two Mounted Divisions; the Ausdiv. and Anzac Division being Mounted Rifles; the 4th and 5th Cavalry Divisions being Cavalry.

The operations in this country proved most conclusively how much greater value has the Cavalry Division of three Cavalry Brigades and Divisional troops than have three independent Cavalry Brigades, even though each of those brigades be well found with Battery R.H.A., Field Ambulance, Field Troop, Mobile Veterinary Section, etc. It is hoped that those responsible for the organisation of our Cavalry in future will not fail to realise this fact.

The British, during the late war, at one time maintained nine Cavalry or Mounted Divisions; but in Mesopotamia,

Digitized by Google

even up to the end, the value of the Cavalry Divisional Organisation, as compared to the system of unallotted brigades, does not appear to have been understood.

During this stationary warfare, even after the reorganisation was complete, the young troops, especially those from India, had to be trained.

Owing to the necessity for training, and to the fact that the serious situation in France did not admit of active operations elsewhere, the E.E.F. consolidated its position during the summer.

The XXIst Corps in the maritime plain was deeply dug in, with its left about Arsuf.

The XXth Corps linked up with the right of XXIst Corps; and, with many gaps in the line owing to the impassability of the country in many places, held strong localities across the Judæan mountains, the positions consisting mostly of stone sangars. The right of XXth Corps rested on the cliffs looking down into the Jordan valley just south of the Wadi el Auja.

The task of holding the Jordan valley and of containing the 4th Turkish Army east of the Jordan was given to Descorps.

The frontage maintained, from the Dead Sea northwards, up the Wadi Mellaha and thence westwards through El Musallabeh, and from there thrown back by Abu Tellul to the Wadi Auja, amounted to 25 miles; and opposite that front, both east and west of Jordan, the enemy disposed approximately 8,000 rifles, 2,000 sabres and 90 guns.

Throughout the summer, while two Cavalry Divisions were holding the valley in the blazing heat and suffocating dust, the other two were resting either on the cool tops of the Judæan mountains or in the coastal plain near the sea.

Ausdiv. and Anzac Division alternately held the northern sector, from Mandesi, up the Mellaha and through Musallabeh

Digitized by Google

to the foot of the mountains, where the Wadi Auja came out through precipitous cliffs.

The 4th and 5th Cavalry Divisions alternately maintained bridgeheads on the east side of Jordan, covering the crossings at El Henu, Hajlah, and Ghoraniyeh.

The sectors were held by a minimum of dismounted personnel and a maximum of automatic weapons, strongly dug in in defended localities.

Each defended locality was small in extent, but strong.

The greater proportion of each Division was maintained well in rear with its horses, and mobile, ready to move mounted at the shortest notice to counter-attack.

The gaps between the defended localities extended to as much as 2 or 3 miles in many cases. It was recognised that the enemy could penetrate into these gaps with comparative ease if he wished to.

It was intended that the defended localities should hold fast, and that the mobile reserves should pivot on them in carrying out their counter offensive.

It is thought that, in the defence of such a big frontage by two Cavalry Divisions, this system of defence is the most powerful that Cavalry can employ. In addition, it is a system under which a Cavalry Corps can hope to maintain a big sector for a long period in stationary warfare without serious deterioration.

Deterioration of mounted troops increases with the number of men placed in defended localities, and consequently away from their horses, but where the great majority of the men and officers are continually considering and practising mounted movements with a view to counter-attack, the deterioration is comparatively small.

Some officers have said that Cavalry should not be employed in the line in stationary warfare.

The Cavalry arm would be very unwise to support such an idea. The cavalryman should be, and can be, the handy-

Digitized by Google

man of the army, to whom nothing comes amiss. The remainder of an army is bound to lose confidence in an arm which states that it will deteriorate unduly if employed in stationary warfare. It is not true, and Lord Allenby proved it in the Jordan valley during the months of May, June, July, August and September 1918.

The maintenance of so many horses in the Jordan valley, supplied by motor lorry down the steep mountain road from Jerusalem, was most expensive from every point of view. Without doubt, the Jordan front could have been maintained more economically by using Infantry, but it is presumed that the Commander-in-Chief maintained that front with Cavalry for a specific purpose.

There can, anyhow, be no question that the presence of the Descorps on that front, with its nose always pointed through Amman to Deraa, continued to convince Liman von Sanders that he was in danger on that front.

During these months the most formidable Turkish attacks fell upon the Descorps sector, made in the hope of retaking Jerusalem. In spite of the fact that the enemy did succeed, at least once, in penetrating a considerable distance between the defended localities, the latter were held most gallantly and were always relieved ultimately by the success of the counter-attacks of the mobile reserves, which, owing to the fact that the men came forward mounted, always reached the scene of action in a minimum of time.

On the northern front Ausdiv. and Anzac Division alternately were holding some very rough country unsuitable for forward mounted patrol work.

In the southern sector, from Ghoraniyeh southwards, the Indian Cavalry rode daily across the plain and spent the whole summer in carrying out offensive operations against any Turks who ventured forward from their main position in the foothills 5 miles from the river. Time after time they laid up under cover for the enemy and got into him with the lance.

Digitized by Google

During July the Indian Cavalry had one brilliant success after another with the lance in patrol encounters east of Jordan.

An account of their doings and the lessons to be drawn from them were circulated throughout the Corps, including Ausdiv. and Anzac Division. The G.O.C. Ausdiv. replied that if his men were armed with an equally suitable weapon, they would do equally well, but as such a weapon had been denied them he must respectfully request that accounts of the undeniably brilliant exploits of the Indian Cavalry with the lance should not be sent him in future for issue to his Division because they could only result in dissatisfying them with their own comparatively inferior armament. He asked, moreover, that the question of arming his Division with the sword might once more be reconsidered.

The Corps Commander was now able to send back the delightful answer, 'The Australian Mounted Division may have the sword.'

The Division was relieved from the Jordan plain on August 23 and went back to the maritime plain about Ludd; and there for two weeks all ranks, including Brigadiers and Regimental Commanders, spent morning and afternoon learning the sword.

On the Divisional Staff two officers were British regular Cavalry officers. During the first week they put the Commanding Officers, who volunteered, Squadron Leaders, Troop Leaders and Squadron Sergeants-Major through sword training, mounted and dismounted.

During the second week regimental officers taught their men.

At the end of a fortnight the Division was thoroughly competent to take on any troops in the world with the sword.

This is a point of the greatest importance. Before the war the Yeomanry were denied the sword, and a hybrid book called 'Yeomanry and Mounted Rifles Training' was pro-

Digitized by Google

duced, because it was feared that it would take a long time to teach the sword and that the Yeomanry had not time to learn it.

The fact that the entire Ausdiv. was taught to use the sword effectively in a fortnight proves conclusively that the pre-war decision as regards the Yeomanry was based upon a misconception.

In view of the history of Ausdiv. and Yeodiv. in Palestine, and the fact that the writer's conclusions are thoroughly endorsed by every experienced Cavalry Officer in the Empire who has had any experience of the sword, it is greatly to be hoped that this question will never again arise as regards the Yeomanry, and that the manual 'Yeomanry Training' will disappear for ever.

When the writer commenced to write these articles he was informed on good authority that the two Australian Light Horse Divisions, now being formed in Australia, were to be armed with the sword. He has, however, just received a letter from a senior officer in Australia, who is in a position to know, saying that the question as to whether they are to have the sword or not is still *sub judice*.

The writer wishes to repeat what he said before: that, in his opinion, the Australian Light Horse, by reason of their wonderful natural military characteristics, are at least without superiors amongst mounted troops.

If, however, they are denied an *arme blanche* weapon (or pistol), they cannot hope to attain to a first-class standard for *offensive* war. The question is of great imperial importance. Australia and South Africa, in the future, are likely to supply the major portion of the Empire's mounted troops; if the Australian Light Horse do not now realise the value of the sword in offensive war they never will, for in Palestine they had every opportunity of forming an opinion.

In South Africa, there are already many regiments of mounted rifles; but in that country the sword and lance are

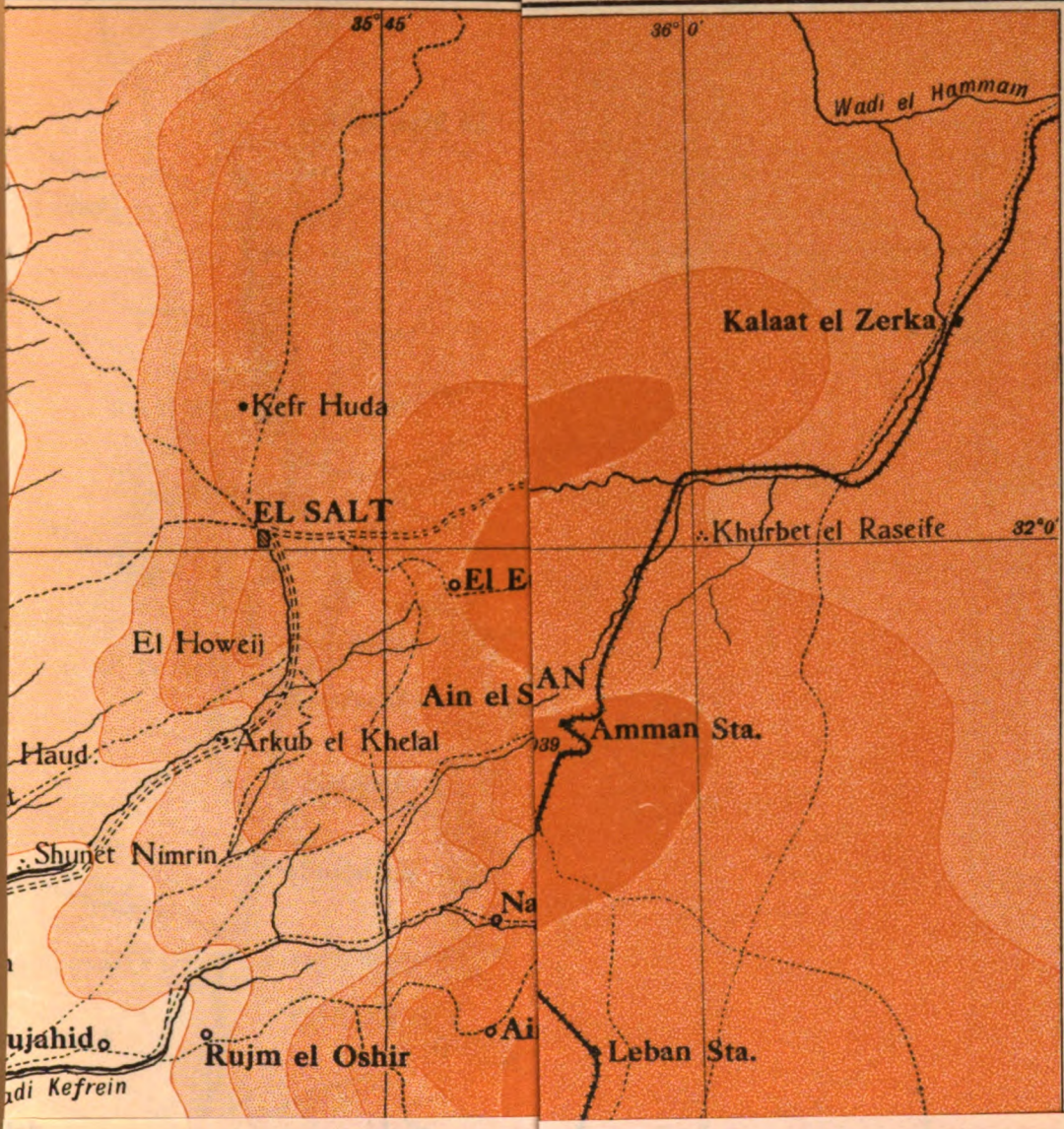
Digitized by Google

only remembered for the ridicule their failure drew upon them in the South African War. If the Australian military authorities arm the A.L.H. with the sword, and the writer feels confident that they will, it is thought probable that the South African military authorities will consider the advisability of following suit.

The mounted arm of all belligerents earned high praise during the late war for their conduct of defensive war. The arm has been, however, severely criticised as regards its comparative lack of offensive power.

As things stand to-day, two aids are essential in offensive war: the first, an *arme blanche* weapon; the second, tank support.

Digitized by Google



Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

A LETTER BOOK OF GENERAL SIR JAMES STEWART DENHAM DURING HIS CAVALRY SERVICE 1760 *TO* 1839

By Major H. G. Parkyn, O.B.E.

The letter book in question covers the period 1806–18 and is the property of Andrew Ross, Esq., Ross Herald, and was bought some years ago from a waste-paper dealer in Edinburgh. The Cavalry Journal is indebted to Major-General G. A. Egerton, C.B., for having brought it to the Editor's notice.

Sir James Stewart Denham was born in Scotland in August, 1744. Owing to his father having participated in the '45' his education was carried out in Germany, but at the age of 16 he commenced his military career by obtaining a commission in the 1st Royal Dragoons, with which regiment he served in the Low Lands during the next two years. He was apparently promoted direct from Cornet to the rank of Captain in the 105th Royal Highlanders in 1763; but, on this Regiment being disbanded the following year, he was placed on half-pay, and for the next two years travelled in France and Germany, studying the Cavalry of those nations. The experience gained during these years evidently laid the foundation of a knowledge which ranked him in later years as one of the highest experts in matters of cavalry training, discipline and horsemanship.

In 1766 he was appointed to command a troop of the 5th Royal Irish Dragoons, and on the 6th November 1772 he was promoted Major in the 13th Dragoons, to be transferred, three years later, to the 1st Irish Horse; after barely a year

Digitized by Google

with this Regiment he returned to the 13th as Lieutenant-Colonel, and was promoted Colonel of the Regiment in November 1782.

In November 1791 he was appointed Colonel of the 12th Light Dragoons. His love for his old Regiment, the 13th, is evinced in many of his letters, and we find him in 1815, when Colonel of the 'Greys,' ordering that the standing orders of the 13th should be taken as a basis for those of the 'Greys.'

In 1793 he was promoted Major-General, and four years later was given local rank of Lieutenant-General.

In 1815 he was transferred to the colonelcy of the 'Greys,' and died in 1839.

Owing to the fact that only General Denham's side of the correspondence is given, much of its interest is lost.

The letters are, for the most part, about the appointment and promotion of officers of the regiments; there is also lengthy correspondence about their clothing and equipment, and the cost of the same. Finance does not seem to have been one of his strong points.

Three squadrons of the 12th L.D. which, after barely a month in Portugal, lost a large part of their equipment, and the application of the Commanding Officer to General Denham, as Colonel of the Regiment, to replace these lost articles, calls forth much wrath and many letters, the unfortunate General remarking in one letter that he has already had to pay £4,400 for the Regiment's campaign in Egypt, of which sum he has not received back, so far, a farthing. In a letter written soon after, he states that he had heard that a Cavalry Regiment was worth £4,000 to the Colonel, but, so far, he had made nothing out of it. Several of the letters are hardly legible owing to the General's attacks of gout, and one or two, written soon after these attacks we take it, discoursed at length on the state of discipline among the officers of the Regiment. He appears to have been horrified

Digitized by Google

at the idea of a Field Officer sitting at the foot of a mess table, and goes at great length into its being impossible to have discipline in a Regiment in which such things occur. He writes: 'A Field Officer commands no respect when placed at the foot of a mess table when a subaltern is at the head of it.'

That he was no lover of music is proved by his letter to the Commanding Officer in reference to an appeal by the officers for the formation of a Regimental Band, dated June 2, 1813. The General says:—

'I am sorry you should think of giving way to the ill-considered wishes of the officers of my Regiment respecting a band. I should prefer their taste for discipline to that for music, if a bad band may be so called. The first thing I did on getting the Regiment was to dismiss the band they then had and to destroy the instruments.'

He then goes on to suggest, instead of a band, having a system of regimental orderlies in each troop, these to be selected by examination of their merits in horsemanship and general military abilities; the men to be distinguished by silver medals (which he offered to give) and to be excused certain duties. A letter, dated January 1814, throws some light on the qualification for a cornetcy in the Regiment. He states:—

'I shall not approve of any purchase for the Cornetcy who is not highly recommended as a man of good family and good education, with an allowance of £150 at least a year besides his pay.'

In January 1815 Sir James was transferred to the colonelcy of the Royal North British Dragoons, after having been Colonel of the 12th for nearly 25 years. He quaintly remarks in his farewell letter, 'and being, at the time of his removal, the senior person in that Regiment, including officers, non-commissioned officers and privates, and whom he now parts with, with sentiments truly paternal.' Almost the first

Digitized by Google

letter he writes as Colonel of the Royal North British Dragoons is to complain of grey horses having been purchased by some other Cavalry Regiments and asking that orders may be issued forbidding this poaching on his Regiment's preserves.

In a letter dated July 4, 1815, addressed to Major-General Sir H. Torrens, he asks for a special mark of distinction for the Royal North British Dragoons, 'such as having the name of the battle of 18th June inscribed on their standards, and that they may be called Cavalry Grenadiers and be permitted to wear moustaches.'

Several very interesting letters, from officers of the Regiment, concerning the action at Waterloo are given in full, and give much useful information on the doings of the regiment at that battle.

In a letter dated June 16, 1815, he stipulates that a gentleman, in order to be eligible for a cornetcy in the Regiment, must have at least £200 per annum besides his pay.

In a long letter, full of good advice to a Cornet, the son of an old friend apparently, he concludes with the following :—

'Let nobody persuade you that *helterskelter* is the best attack, or that fox-hunting and horse-racing are the best schools for military horsemanship; the former may even be of service after an officer is once become a perfect military horseman, but the latter is at all times pernicious, and objectionable on every account.'

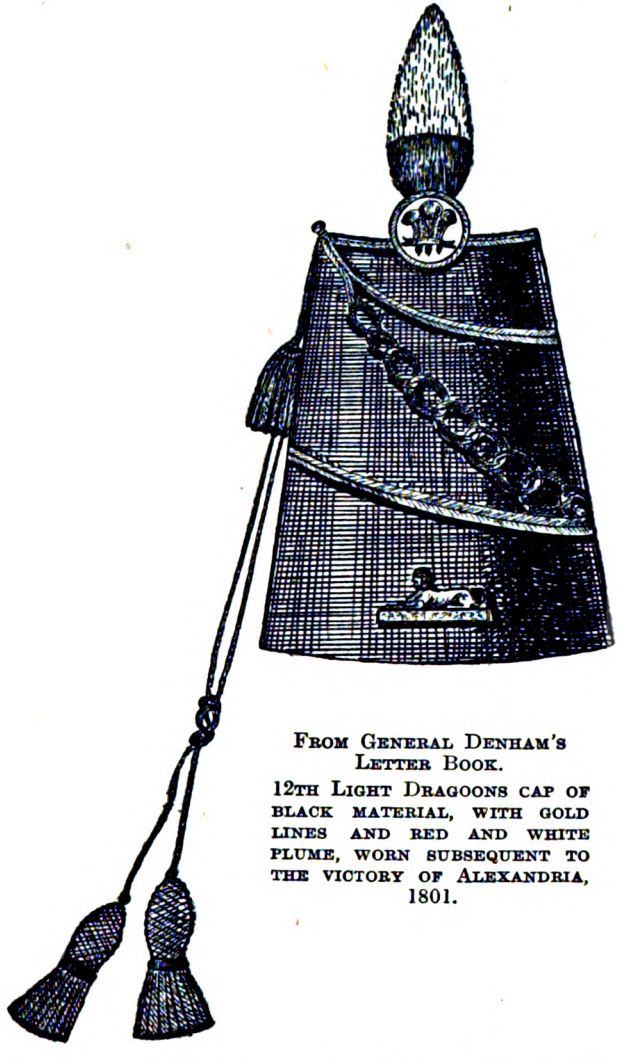
With increasing age his antipathy to bands seems to have modified, and in 1816 he agreed to subscribe to the Greys' band provided that it was in every respect a martial one and of moderate numbers.

On the first page of the Letter Book is a drawing of the Shako used by the 12th Light Dragoons.

The cap was of black leather, circular in shape and smaller at the top than at the bottom. Round the top was a circle of gold cord, from which descended, on the right side, lines, or slings as they were called, these were festooned round the

Digitized by Google

front of the cap and then hung down, terminating in two tassels. When the jacket was worn open they hung loose, otherwise they were hooked up to the braid in front.



FROM GENERAL DENHAM'S LETTER BOOK.
12TH LIGHT DRAGOONS CAP OF BLACK MATERIAL, WITH GOLD LINES AND RED AND WHITE PLUME, WORN SUBSEQUENT TO THE VICTORY OF ALEXANDRIA, 1801.

At the bottom of the cap was displayed in white metal or silver the Sphinx resting on a tablet inscribed with Egyptian characters.

At the top in front was a cockade with its centre decorated with the design of the coronet, feathers and motto of the Prince

Digitized by Google

of Wales in white metal, being surrounded by a circle of gold cord.

From behind the cockade rose a small red and white plume.

The cap was evidently copied from that in use by the French Cavalry, but the actual date it was introduced into the British Service is hard to determine: it may quite well have been the leather watering cap mentioned in a Warrant of 1796.

In one of Sir Stewart Denham's letters he mentions two sets of feathers for his Regiment, one set for the helmets and another for the hats, from which it appears that there were two head-dresses in use at the time.

A book on uniforms in the possession of the officers of the 15th Hussars gives the head-dresses of that Regiment for the years 1784–1806 as 'the usual Light Dragoon helmet, and for Field Days a tall black shako.'

Digitized by Google

A FEMALE LIGHT DRAGOON

[THE *Manchester Herald* of December 15, 1814, under the heading 'The Manchester Heroine,' gives the following account of this remarkable woman.*]

'On Friday last a middle aged woman applied for relief at the Churchwarden's offices, in this town, and on being questioned as to her present situation, and her former life, she proved to be of that description of Heroines, of which Hannah Snell, and Christiana Davies, have cut so conspicuous a figure in English biography, and which Joan of Arc, and several others, particularly in the revolutionary war, have done in that of France. It appears that, when a girl, she was in the habit of wearing boys' clothes, in which dress she served her father, William Roberts (who is a bricklayer), as a labourer; being tall of her age, when about fourteen years old she enlisted as a soldier in the 15*th Light Dragoons*.

'Probably her extreme youth and healthy appearance might occasion a laxity of attention, for she passed muster without her sex being discovered. In the course of two months, she learned her exercise sufficiently for all the purposes of parade; the rough-riding master declaring her the best rider in the squad of recruits with whom she was taught, which she imputes to the circumstances of having been used to mount, undaunted, to the top of high buildings, when attending on her father.

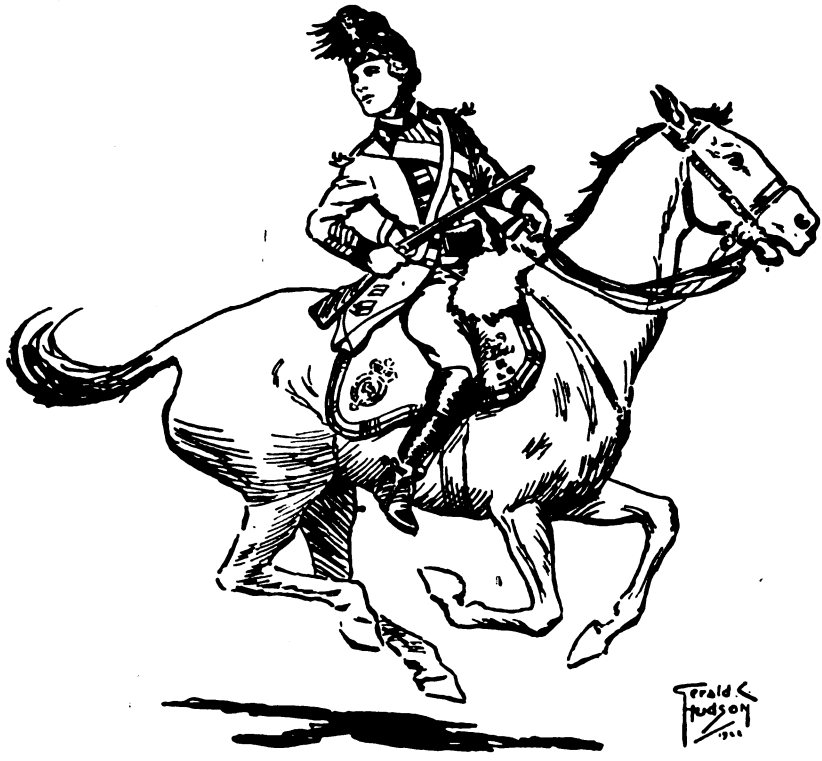
'She remained with the 15th Light Dragoons, in which she progressively attained the ranks of corporal and serjeant, for twenty-one years; her sex all the time remaining a secret

* A briefer reference to Sarah Taylor is made in the history of the 15th Hussars, by Colonel H. C. Wylly, C.B.

Digitized by Google

to everyone; perhaps the care she was under of guarding it had the good effect of producing that regularity and orderly conduct which recommended the pretended "William Roberts" to the favour and protection of the officers, and procured her promotion.

'When she had been a soldier twenty-one years, the Colonel of the regiment tendered her her discharge, which she demurred



the acceptance of; but, being under size, by her own consent she was transferred to the 37th Regiment of Foot, which regiment she joined in 1800, at the island of St. Vincent, in the West Indies, where, soon after, she was taken seriously ill (for the first time in her military career) of the yellow fever, when, wanting some of those attentions which would inevitably lead to a discovery of her sex, she was obliged to intrust the secret she had so well kept to the wife of a serjeant,

Digitized by Google

at a time she expected nothing but death. She, however, recovered, and having no longer even a nominal claim to manhood, she was obliged to resume feminine habiliments; but still enamoured of a military life, as she could no longer be a soldier herself, she became, in May, 1801, the wife of one, a private in the 87th Foot, of the name of Taylor, by whom this Amazon has since had three children; still following the fortune of war through various climates, during which she was, with her husband, two years in a prison in France, from which they were released in July last in consequence of the peace.

'On the day she landed from the cartel her husband died, and this Martial Heroine is now a widow, still anxious, as she says, to follow a camp, as the most pleasant life of which she can conceive. In the course of her military career she has visited many distant parts of the globe, and has been in many actions, and received several wounds, which, however, were not severe, and were in parts of the body which did not betray her sex—a scar from a sabre, which graces her head, and the mark where a musket ball was extracted from her leg, are honourable testimonials of her service; but she says that the two years she spent in a French prison were far more difficult to support, and did her constitution more injury than her voyages to the East and West Indies, her march from the Red Sea through Egypt, or her campaigns in Flanders, in Spain, and in Italy.

'She is, however, in excellent spirits, and "Fights her battles o'er again," with all the ardour of Goldsmith's old veteran, who "Shouldered his crutch, and shew'd how fields were won." Having been informed by a Gentleman in office of the circumstance of such a woman having been relieved at the Overseers' board, the writer of this article could not resist the curiosity, with which he was excited, which prompted him to see and converse with a Woman who had passed through life in so uncommon a manner. His

Digitized by Google

curiosity was gratified; he found her an inmate in the house of her father, in Lee-street, Newton-lane; she and her aged mother were employed in washing linen, in a room up one pair of stairs. He did not see the father (who it appears had attended with the Heroine at the weekly-board), but the mother fully corroborated all the circumstances of the daughter's story; which was repeated in the intervals of the washing operation.

'She is in full hope of obtaining the pension allowed to soldiers for long and faithful services; to which we think she is fully and fairly entitled. The proper testimonials, we understand, have been sent up, to be laid before the Commander-in-Chief, in order to attain it, as well as to procure the arrears of her husband's pay, which had accumulated whilst he was in the French prison.

'We are aware that we have extended this article to an unusual length; but having been much entertained by a character so original, we thought we should gratify our Readers by a short sketch of the life of so extraordinary a Townswoman, for such a Woman seldom appears, to give life and interest to our local columns; and sure we are that we shall be joined in the wish by all ranks of society, that the services of the *soi-disant* "William Roberts" may be remunerated in a pension to "Sarah Taylor."'

A. L.

Digitized by Google

MECHANICAL WARFARE

We have heard a great deal during the past year or so on the subject of mechanicalizing the Army, and, as a result, two more or less hostile groups have gradually been forming in the Service; one of which advocates complete mechanicalization and foreshadows the disappearance of Cavalry and Infantry from the battlefield, while the other, adopting a defensive attitude based on experience of Tanks in the past war, views all mechanical developments with the gravest suspicion.

Than this, nothing could be more unfortunate from the point of view both of present efficiency and future progress; for it is certain that, whatever mechanical or other scientific developments the future may hold in store, efficiency and progress depend to-day, and will for all time do so, on the close co-operation of all arms both in peace and war.

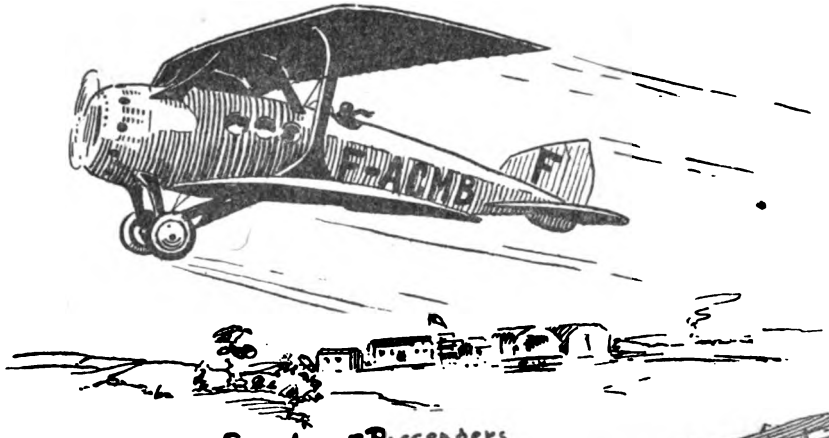
Up to the present the question of mechanicalization has, so far as we are aware, been viewed entirely from a tactical standpoint, and it is for this reason that Major Grove White's article in the present number of this Journal, which deals with the subject from the point of view of cost in relation to efficiency, is of special interest.

It will, we think, be generally agreed that the sole aim of all military organization and training should be the evolution of a force which, acting as a whole, will produce the maximum fighting efficiency in war; fighting efficiency, in turn, being simply a measure of the capacity of a force to reach the enemy, to strike him and to protect itself against his blows at a minimum cost—cost reckoned not only in

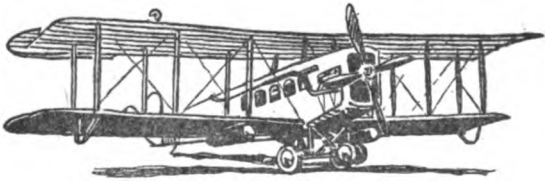
Digitized by Google

Handley Page. W.8.
15 Passengers

De Havilland 18
8 Passengers



Spad. 5. Passengers.



Bristol Tourer 10 Passengers

Bristol Triplane
4 Passengers

Amphibian 2 Passengers

Gerald K. Hudson

Specially drawn by Captain G. C. Hudson, 18th Battn., London Regiment.

AIRCRAFT AT PRESENT IN USE FOR CIVIL AVIATION AND CONVERTIBLE TO MILITARY USES FOR NATIONAL DEFENCE.

Digitized by Google

terms of money expended, but also in terms of wastage of life and energy.

Further, it is clear that at a time such as the present, when the size and composition of our Army have perforce to be regulated, not by strategic requirements, but by the limited sum which the country is able to provide for its maintenance, the relation between efficiency and cost becomes of even greater consequence than in war.

Such being the case, the premises on which Major Grove White bases his paper, namely, that *if two arms are equally efficient we should accept the more economical*, is indisputably correct.

It is, however, when we come to the problem of assessing 'equal efficiency' that differences of opinion will inevitably arise. Major Grove White lays down three conditions on which comparison should be based. With these three conditions there will probably be little disagreement; but many people will desire to add a fourth, namely, that the mechanical unit must be able to develop its fire-power in all conditions in which a Cavalry unit can do so, or, in other words, that it must be capable of carrying out all the tactical duties of Cavalry.

So much has already been said on this point that it is not proposed to discuss it in detail here, beyond pointing out :—

(*a*) that the machine visualized has as little resemblance to the Mark V Tank to which our minds to-day instinctively turn when tanks are mentioned, as that machine has to the Roman chariot;

(*b*) that if certain types of terrain will always prove impassable to tanks, the same argument applies to Cavalry;

(*c*) that history shows that tactics have always developed to suit new weapons, and consequently that even if the tank cannot fulfil certain requirements of tactics as we know them to-day, there is no reason to suppose that they will

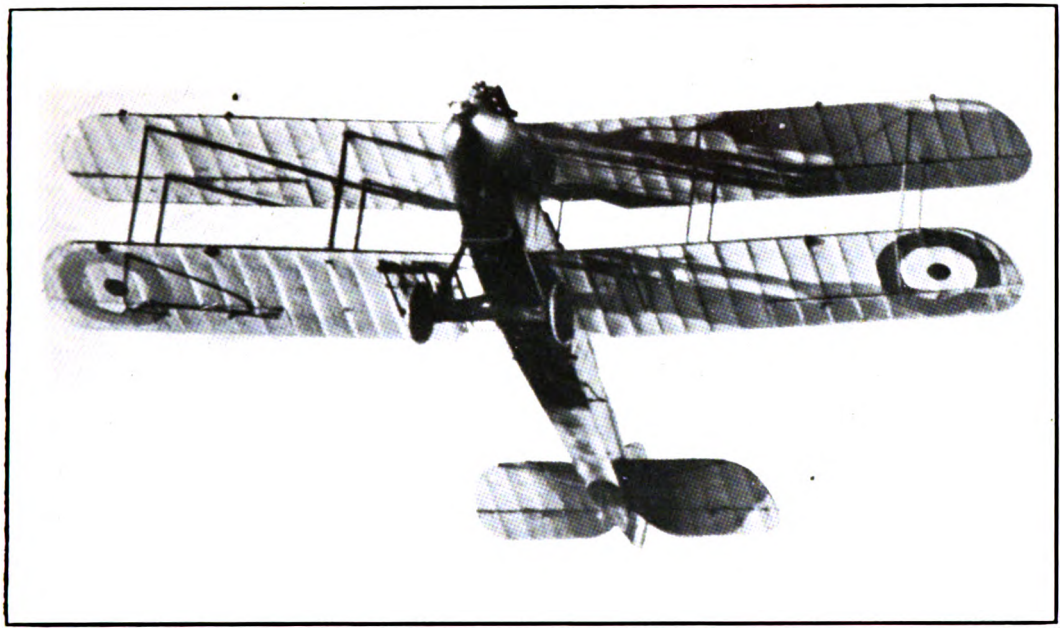
Digitized by Google

not be able to meet the requirements of to-morrow as tactics become modified to suit the new weapons.

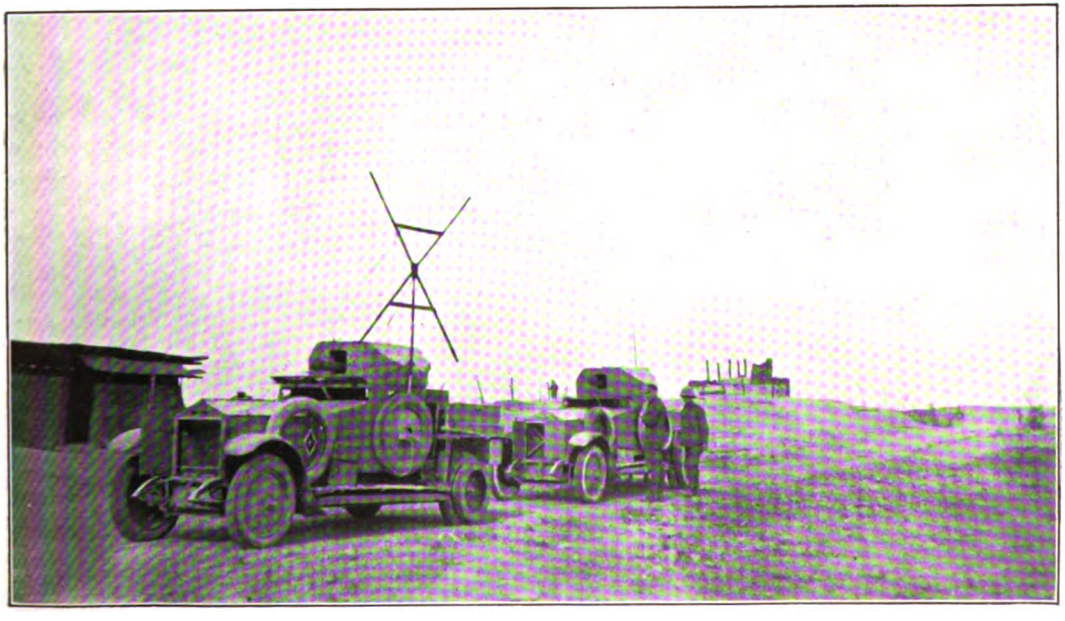
We, therefore, feel that, while there may be some difference of opinion as to the complete accuracy of the basis on which Major Grove White founds his calculations as to equal efficiency, there can be no doubt whatsoever as to the importance of the subject which he has raised—the relation between efficiency and cost.

We feel sure that it is incumbent on all officers in the Army to-day to study the problems to which scientific progress is giving birth, and to do so not in an antagonistic spirit, or with the preconceived idea of supplanting one arm by another in wholesale fashion, but rather with a view to ascertaining in what proportions we should combine new arms with old, and how best we can achieve their close co-operation to the end that we may provide ourselves with a force of all arms which will give us a maximum efficiency at a minimum cost in those types of warfare in which we may reasonably expect to be engaged.

Digitized by Google



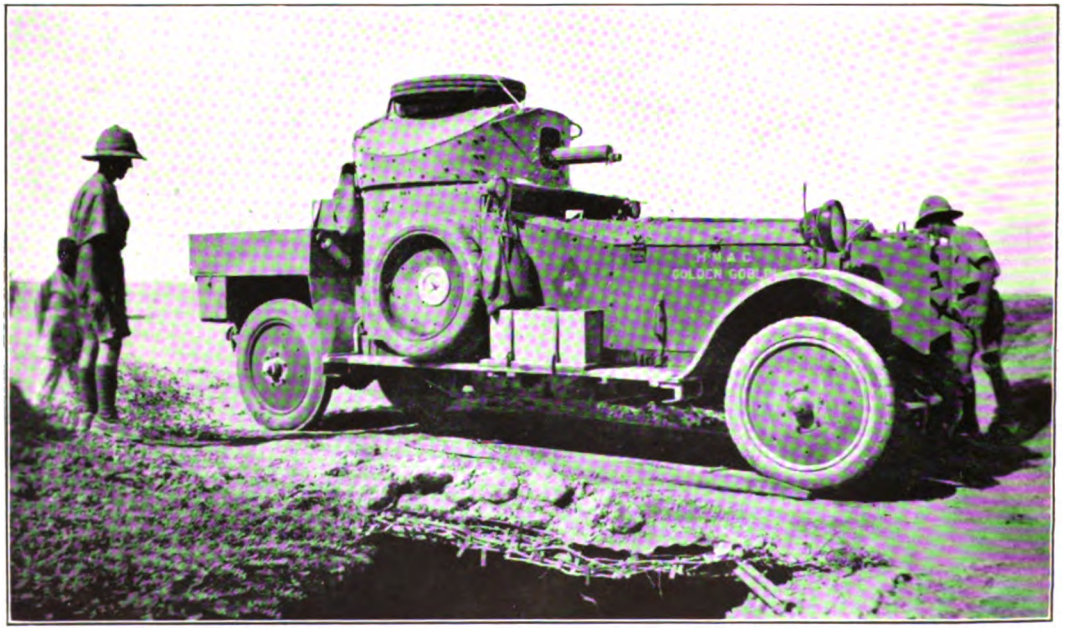
DH 9 A IN FLIGHT FROM BELOW.



ROLLS ARMOURED CAR AT FALLUJA, FITTED WITH EXPERIMENTAL WIRELESS AERIAL FOR COMMUNICATION WITH R.A.F.

Digitized by Google

ROLLS ARMOURED CAR CROSSING BRIDGE OF THE DUJALAH RIVER AT TABLE MOUNTAIN, IRAQ.



USING RUNNING BOARDS WITH A ROLLS ARMOURED CAR OVER AN EXTEMPORISED BRIDGE.

Digitized by Google

MACHINERY OR MUSCLE

By Bt.-Major M. FitzG. Grove-White,
D.S.O., O.B.E., R.E.

Much has been written recently on the possibility and desirability of replacing all, or some, of our Cavalry by Tanks.

The extent to which this can be done with advantage can be discovered by first examining the capabilities and characteristics of the two arms, and then by studying the extent to which the characteristics of the Tanks enable them to fill the rôle laid down for Cavalry in the various Field Service Regulations. It is a matter largely for exact calculation—not for conjecture—though due allowance must be made for the personal equation.

This side of the question, however, is by no means the only side, though it is this which is generally discussed. Unfortunately, in the present state of the national finances, it is not possible to replace one arm by another at will without considering the cost.

If two alternative arms are equally efficient, we should adopt the more economical. Even if one arm is slightly less efficient we may be forced to adopt it if it is much more economical.

The following tables are designed to show the relative cost of Cavalry and Tanks. A Cavalry Brigade has been selected for comparison and, in considering the Tank unit to be used, the following three conditions have been observed :—

(*a*) It must have a fire power at least equal to a Cavalry Brigade.

(*b*) It must not occupy more space on the move or at rest than a Cavalry Brigade.

(*c*) It must take less transport by land or sea to supply than a Cavalry Brigade.

Digitized by Google

A Tank Battalion fulfils all these conditions.

Assuming the Brigade of Cavalry to contain 1,700 men and horses, the following figures, although only approximate, will form a basis of calculation :—

Average initial cost of a troop horse, £75. Average useful army life, ten years. Therefore, in the Brigade, 170 horses must be replaced yearly at a cost of £12,755, less the casting value of £10 each, which brings the cost down to £11,000. The forage will cost £90,000 a year.

Taking the average cost of all ranks at £200 a year each, the personnel will cost £340,000 a year.

Now take the case of Tanks. It is proposed to consider three different types :—*A*, a Battle Tank; *B*, a Medium Tank; *C*, a Scout Tank.

A type might be armed with three machine guns and one 6-pdr. gun. It would be armoured against all small-arm projectiles, and would carry a crew of four or five men. It would require a special engine of powerful design.

B type would correspond to an armoured lorry; it would be armed with two machine guns and would be armoured against ordinary rifle bullets. It would have a standard lorry engine, transmission, etc. It would carry a crew of four men.

C type would be a small armoured vehicle, armed with one machine gun and carrying a crew of two men. It would be fitted with a standard car engine, transmission, etc.

Assuming it to be necessary to replace Tanks every three years on account of obsoleteness, in every battalion of thirty-six Tanks, twelve must be replaced every year.

The cost of a tank varies. It may be taken as :—*A*, £12,000; *B*, £3,000; *C*, £750.

The expenditure of petrol would be :—*A*, 1 mile to the gallon; *B*, 2 miles to the gallon; *C*, 10 miles to the gallon. This allows for crossing rough country. The cost of petrol to the public may be taken as 3*s*. to the gallon.

Digitized by Google

(This figure is really too high and might be reduced to 2*s.* 6*d.*) Assuming an average of 3 miles a day, or 1,000 miles per year, to be run by each tank for training purposes in peace, the cost of petrol to the public will be :—*A*, £5,400; *B*, £2,700; *C*, £540.

The cost of lubricants works out at about 20 per cent. of fuel costs. If this is added, the annual cost of fuel and of lubricants to the public for a battalion comes to :—*A*, £6,480; *B*, £3,240; *C*, £648.

The strength of a Tank Battalion of thirty-six tanks would be about :—*A*, 400 all ranks; *B*, 200 all ranks; *C*, 100 all ranks.

The cost per man will be higher than in the case of Cavalry, and, for the purposes of calculation, an average cost of £300 per man will be taken. This gives a total cost to the public of :—*A*, £120,000; *B*, £60,000; *C*, £30,000.

From these figures the following comparative table may be obtained :—

Average Annual Cost of a Cavalry Brigade and a Tank Battalion.

	Cavalry Brigade.	Tank Battalion.		
		A.	*B.*	*C.*
	£	£	£	£
Replacement of horses or tanks -	11,000	144,000	36,000	9,000
Cost of forage or fuel and lubricants	90,000	6,480	3,240	648
Cost of personnel - - - -	340,000	120,000	60,000	30,000
Total - - - £	441,000	270,480	99,240	39,648

Digitized by Google

LION HUNTING

By 'INNISKILLING'

THERE are various ways of bringing the king of beasts to bag. To sit up for him at night, over a 'kill,' or at a water-hole, and then to shoot him from a tree or from the protection of a zeriba, is a method presenting the minimum of risk, provided a bungled shot—and accurate night-shooting is not easy—does not necessitate having to follow him up wounded in the morning.

He can be hunted to a standstill with the assistance of a pack of trained dogs, and shot at leisure while thus held up. In a strictly open country, he may be coursed on horseback and, having been brought to bay, laid low as, or preferably before, he charges.

If indifferent about perpetrating a certain amount of possibly useless slaughter, the hunter may shoot as many of the local antelopes and zebras as his skill will permit, and leave them lying about all night, on the chance of a wandering lion finding one or other, and perhaps offering a chance at daylight next morning. Since, however, a lion usually leaves his prey at first cockcrow, to seek the nearest water, and may or may not return before dark that evening, it is quite likely that the antelopes and zebras will have given their lives in vain.

Of course, you may chance on a lion at any time, though, even in a country where they are numerous, it is remarkable how seldom this occurs; while, should Fortune so smile, the odds are that an attendant will be carrying the rifle, or one or other of the thousand things that are always circumventing the sportsman in Africa will happen to prevent your getting a shot.

Digitized by Google

On the whole, the most sportsmanlike, the pleasantest, and, if properly carried out, the most successful method that can be employed, is to track your lion down by fair heel and toe; and then, having located him, to match your wits and cunning against his, in a careful stalk. But, in this, the most enjoyable of all modes, it is essential to have good and reliable trackers: men capable of following the very faint impressions left by a soft-footed animal on stony and hard ground, and through grass and thick bush; who, moreover, from their individual courage, as well as from their confidence in their master, may be trusted not to become nervous and purposely lead him astray. Such men are not always easy to come by; in some parts of Africa they simply do not exist as local products; but, when you are thus equipped, no form of sport provides more interest and excitement.

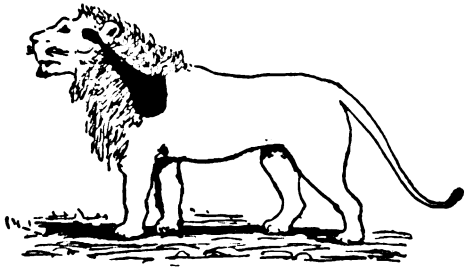
Tracking lions down on foot is most successful in forested or savannah country, and under such conditions, covert being available in unlimited quantity, the pursuit of the unwounded lion, provided reasonable precautions are observed, is not really dangerous; probably less so than that of either the unwounded elephant or the rhinoceros in similar country. Great skill is, however, required on the part of the trackers, and some knowledge of *venerie* by the hunter himself. I believe lions to be much more dangerous in perfectly open country than in forest, for the reason that, while in the latter they can easily slip away out of sight when followed, in the former they find less sense of security. A lion is naturally a peaceable animal, which usually does its best to evade danger, and only faces it when escape seems to be cut off. Still, even in bush country there is always just a chance of something going awry, and thus the necessary spur of excitement is provided.

Most of the accidents which occur in the chase of the lion can be traced to some fault on the part of the sportsman, arising from over-confidence, carelessness, or lack of experience.

Digitized by Google

In accounts of lion hunting there are far too many cases of the animal having charged (one might imagine it to be the rule). When a hunted lion has been permitted to get as far as this, the odds are rather in his favour than otherwise—I speak of close country. But as a man presumably goes out to kill his lion—and not with the idea of getting killed or permanently injured himself, or, worse, exposing his unarmed native followers to these risks—his object should be to prevent the lion from charging. The death or maiming of a follower is not a pleasant thing to contemplate; and, to avoid this, even more than from personal considerations, every effort should be made to kill the beast cleanly and instantly. The lion himself deserves as much consideration as any other wild animal; perhaps more, because, his intelligence being of a higher order, he suffers proportionately, and should be spared the agony of wounds caused by badly-placed bullets.

If, in your contest with the lion, you desire to make it one of wits and hunting lore rather than of pure force and courage—in other words, to make it one of mind rather than of matter—you must be prepared to exercise great patience and restraint, and to have a great deal of very hard work. Nor can you mix up lion shooting with other game shooting; if you allow your attention to be diverted to the latter, disappointment surely awaits you in the former. The size of the rifle you use is of less importance than its accuracy, and that you should be thoroughly accustomed to it. A lion is not a difficult animal to kill compared with an antelope.



PLACE FOR FATAL SHOT MARKED IN BLACK

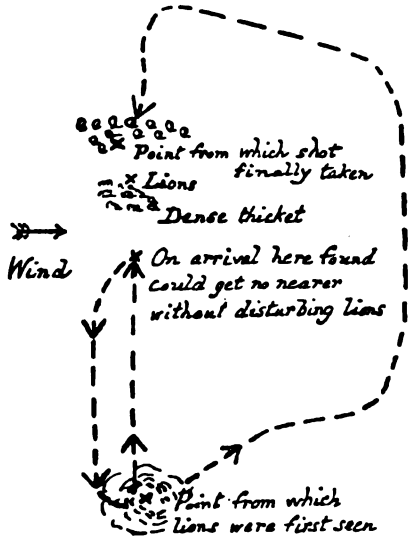
Digitized by Google

The native attendants must be cut down to a minimum. One of the factors most conducive to the charge of a wounded lion is the sight of a number of excited natives jumping about behind the sportsman, as they usually do at critical moments. The fewer attendants you have, the more you ensure success and minimise the possibility of accidents. Three is an ideal number. It gives you two trackers, and one spare man to go back to camp with a message, if necessary, as well as to lead your pony when on a spoor. If you have a pony, it should be led at a distance of not less than 200 yards in rear, as soon as you commence your tracking operations. You must, of course, carry your rifle yourself. Your second tracker may carry a spare rifle, but for myself I seldom take one when after unwounded lions; it is no use in this kind of hunting, as a rule, and it always makes me nervous when I know that there is a native with a loaded firearm somewhere in the background. However, it is a matter of personal inclination, and if the sportsman feels happier with a reserve weapon, by all means let him have one, always bearing in mind that it is liable to go off at the wrong moment and spoil his chance.

In your search for fresh spoor you have to be guided by circumstances. You may hear lions roaring early in the morning in a certain direction; or, later, you may notice vultures gathering; or you may cross fresh tracks, more or less by accident, when investigating likely places. Having picked up what you seek, further consideration is advisable. The object, of course, must be to see the quarry before it sees you. Unless the weather be unusually cold, lions will always lie up for the day about 8 or 9 A.M., and by noon are probably sound asleep. Therefore, there is no advantage—often rather the reverse—in at once following on a fresh track found in the early morning. Should you do so, you are almost certain to be seen or heard long before you get near, and the chances are the lions will travel several miles before they

Digitized by Google

again settle down. If you are unlucky enough to disturb them prematurely, then the impulse to pursue must be firmly resisted. Sit down, and resign yourself to a delay of a couple of hours or so, before you resume operations. Injudicious and excited pursuit is the cause of many disappointments, while hasty shots, taken at distant moving animals, lead to severe toil, and even danger.


Point from which shot finally taken
Lions
Dense thicket
Wind
On arrival here found could get no nearer without disturbing lions
Point from which lions were first seen

A CASE WHERE FIRST STALK HAD TO BE ABANDONED AND A FRESH ONE ARRANGED.

When you think, from various indications—such as the animals having made frequent halts, lain down to roll, or stood under trees—that you are getting close to their resting place, one of your trackers should drop well behind, and you should go on alone with your best man. Look out for likely trees or clumps under which the animal or animals may be lying, remembering they will always be on the shade side. Lions stretched out in deep shadow, or even in quite short grass, are sometimes most difficult to make out. The flicker of an ear, or the wind disturbing the hair of a mane, are often the first indications of their presence. It is also well to recollect that, even when they are settled down for

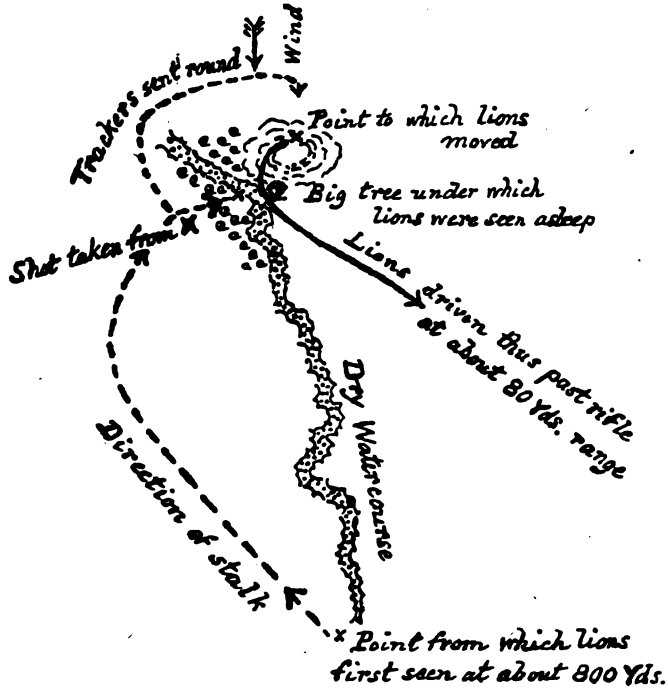
Digitized by Google

the day, they do not sleep continuously. Every five or ten minutes one or other of the party sits up, or raises its head, to have a careful look round. This occurs even on the hottest and drowsiest days. Therefore, the moment you, or your tracker, have spotted the beasts, you must both drop flat on your faces just where you happen to be. Then one, not both, will cautiously raise his head, when, if the lions show no sign of movement, it is permissible to wriggle for the nearest bit of covert. This attained, you make your plans. The main factor in a successful stalk with lions, even more than with any other kind of game, is to get in as close as ever you can before taking your first shot. The second, a scarcely less important thing, is to be quite alone. However good and reliable your attendant may be, two people are more easily seen than one, and invisibility implies both safety and success. So long as you remain perfectly immobile, and he does not wind you, no wild animal, except a monkey or baboon, is likely to recognise you for what you are outside forty paces, however scanty your covert may be. But the slightest movement gives you away at once. More than one man has been mauled through not being able to restrain himself, or his boys, from jumping and shuffling about in presence of a wounded beast which is seeking to locate its enemies. So leave your tracker in this first piece of bush to which you have wriggled, and continue your approach alone. Keep a watchful eye on the lions, and the moment one of them stirs, however slightly, lie still till he has settled again, which may be five or ten minutes. A lion appears to get up or lie down in one movement, a seemingly effortless motion, the acme of speed and grace, and if you are not watching closely, will be up in quicker time than you can lower your head.

When you have arrived within, say, 80—or, still better, 60, yards, according to the covert available for approach, you may look about for a convenient place from which to

Digitized by Google

take your shot. A small ant heap, a low bush, or a tuft of rank grass, will serve to conceal you while you very slowly and cautiously sit up. If the lions are screened by scrub or


Wind
Trackers sent round
Point to which lions moved
Big tree under which lions were seen asleep
Shot taken from
Lions driven thus past rifle at about 80 Yds. range
Dry Watercourse
Direction of stalk
Point from which lions first seen at about 800 Yds.

IN THIS CASE LIONS WERE DISTURBED DURING STALK BY A SMALL BUCK STAMPEDING AND MOVING OVER THE HILL. TRACKERS WENT ROUND AND GAVE THEM THE WIND, WHEN THEY CAME PAST THE RIFLE AT ABOUT 80 YARDS DISTANCE.

grass, it may be necessary to rise warily to your feet behind the shelter of a tree trunk, if such a thing is handy, but not otherwise. Get the glasses to work, and try to make out how they are lying, if there is more than one. If you are dealing with a troop, probably the big male will be lying in his own patch of shade, ten or twelve paces away from the females, who may be close together, or only a few yards apart. Your object, no doubt, being to secure him, your attention must be concentrated in his direction once you have located him. You may have to wait an hour, possibly even longer; but, sooner or later, he will get up, stretch himself, and

Digitized by Google

perhaps walk over to another bit of shade, or stroll across to see how his wives are getting on. This will be your chance. All energies should be concentrated on making the first shot an accurate one, so as to drop him stone dead in his tracks.

Immediately on the shot, all the rest of the troop will spring up, and, not knowing whence the danger comes, will probably stand motionless for a second or two. If you have killed your animal dead, as you ought to have done at that distance, and want a second, you will now most likely have an excellent opportunity of adding it to your bag. Anyhow, remain quite still, trusting that your natives in rear are well enough trained not to move either. At the second shot, the lions are likely to dash off in all directions, and there may be a chance of an easy running shot at close quarters, since one or more may rush past within a few yards of you. But a moving lion, especially at close quarters, should never be fired at till he has gone past (of course, I mean a lion trying to escape). If hit, he will, if he has not seen you, almost certainly dash on in the direction he is heading. It is, however, always more or less a matter of luck if a running shot is a dead one, however well directed it may be. The animal is excited, his muscles are taut, and his nerves tight-strung; so that the resistive power is much greater than when he is unsuspicious.

(*To be continued.*)

Digitized by Google

JUMPING

By Lieut.-Colonel Malise Graham, D.S.O.,
16th The Queen's Lancers

(*Concluded.*)

The Training of the Rider.

We should aim at training our soldiers to have the art and power—

to present their horses at a required part of a fence at a desired pace,

to cause them to jump well, ride them while jumping in a workmanlike manner most helpful for their horses, and to be complete masters of the situation on landing.

Let us again consider the same foreign systems as before.

The Italian seat appears to be the same for military work, hunting, chasing, or show jumping. The knee is at a height midway between our hunting and flat-racing seat. The back is kept hollow, the rider leans well forward, never leaning back except when descending a precipice. They say that, by leaning forward, the rider approximates the position of his body to that of the horse, and he thus lightens the horse's loins, giving the greatest possible freedom of movement. Their hands are kept low on the withers, with knuckles upwards.

They do not sit down in their saddles during any part of the jump; they rest on their thighs, with their bodies at the same angle throughout. The horse is left free to hoist his quarters, and, when landing, has no weight on his loins. They do not have to correct an overstrong tendency of the

Digitized by Google

body to fly off the horse in a forward direction; they say that if the rider's seat is well down in the saddle when the horse pecks, his body is propelled upwards and forwards and he is liable to be shot off. They also claim that he cannot be pulled off by the reins, and that it is not necessary to slip them through the fingers on landing, and so run the risk of upsetting the horse in taking them up again.

Snaffles only are used, and great stress is laid on the delicate use of the hands, with a constant light feeling on the reins, as opposed to a deliberate combination of hand and leg.

The leg is only used to increase the pace, turning being done by pressure on the snaffle and neck; the forward position prevents much use of the swing of the body as an aid, though they claim to use it. An interesting point is that pulling horses and falls are rare.

Recruits commence jumping at about their eighth lesson, and, after a little experience, about half each lesson is devoted to jumping.

There is much to be said in favour of their system, but it does not produce what we try to train, viz., a perfectly trained polo pony which is also a perfect fencer, and we are at variance regarding the necessity for artificial balance.

The French seat is rather similar to ours, being more down in their saddles than the Italians.

They also advocate leaning the upper part of the body forward, so as to be with the horse while jumping, and not behind him; they teach their riders to lean slightly forward when approaching a fence, without rounding their backs.

Their reins are held long, with the wrists low; their legs are steady and close to the horse, and the whole body is decontracted.

A few strides before the fence, the rider allows his horse to increase the pace, and lowers his hands on to the withers, his arms being slightly bent.

Digitized by Google

At the moment during the take-off, when the horse begins to rise, the rider's seat bones naturally come up a little off the saddle; but they say that the rider should have the idea of keeping and the impression of having kept them in the saddle.

They say that the reins may be allowed to slip through the fingers, but that, if the rider has approached the fence with reins sufficiently long, there will be no need for this.

With regard to our system, the style which we aim at is as follows :—

The length of stirrups, if anything, slightly shorter than the normal, so as to help the horse as much as possible while jumping, and to have complete control.

The body normal, but, as the horse takes off, the body forward—with the horse, so to speak. In this, I advocate that the seat bones should be just off the saddle, the knee being kept well pressed into the saddle, and the feet forced well down against the bars of the stirrups.

The hands. The principle is not to lose touch, and to keep a light feeling on the horse's mouth. With this object the rider should normally keep the hands steady as the horse takes off; but when he stretches out his head and neck over the fence, he should let his hands go quietly forward and slightly downwards. In this he must be careful not to interfere in any way with the natural forward and downward stretch which the horse does in order to balance himself.

The different stages which are practised in order to arrive at the above are as follows :—

About the third stage of the recruit's equitation training, a start is made in an enclosed lane, preferably in a riding school; horses are such as will without hesitation canter quietly and freely over jumps; stirrups are connected under the horse by means of a strap, and a stirrup leather or strap is put round the horse's neck, which the recruit holds on to, having passed his arm through the reins.

Digitized by Google

After success with the above he has, instead of a strap to hang on to, a stick to lean on; this is kept on the horse's neck just in front of the withers, being held with both hands about two or three inches apart. The recruit leans slightly on the stick when approaching the fence, and presses well on to it as the horse takes off to jump.

When a certain amount of confidence has been gained, the strap connecting the stirrups is withdrawn.

There are several methods which may be used after the above; *e.g.*, to grip the breeches about midway between thigh and knee, or arms folded, or hands holding imaginary reins.

It is advisable also to do a little jumping without stirrups at this period; in this the grip must be with thighs and knees as opposed to lower part of legs only.

To complete his passive jumping experience, he is finally practised in keeping a light feeling on the horse's mouth with a snaffle or cheek rein.

Subsequently he is taught in progressive stages how to make his horse approach and jump a fence at all paces.

It is a much debated question as to how the rider should present his horse at a fence at a canter.

In my opinion his position should be normal, and the lower part of the leg not stiff. He should ensure that his horse is well collected, with his hocks under him, during the last few strides before the fence, tactfully restraining one that is impetuous and urging on one that is sluggish. A few lengths away from the fence he should assist his horse to judge his distance and, if necessary, lengthen his stride, giving him every encouragement to stand off, and squeeze with legs to cause him to make a good effort; the degree of this, of course, depends on the horse.

As the horse takes off, the rider should act as has been described above in reference to seat and hands.

The chief advantages of this kind of seat are—

The weight during the jump is, roughly, over the horse's

Digitized by Google

centre of gravity, which helps him to balance himself. The lower part of the legs are free to act. It is easy to give him more rein if required, and also to give him the office to jump well at the right moment. The rider is not so liable to jog him in the mouth and thus interfere with his balance.

His hindquarters are comparatively free.

The rider can lean forward or backward as required on landing.

He cannot be unseated or thrown unduly forward by a horse taking off sooner than expected, and he does not feel the concussion as he would if sitting well down in the saddle.

I maintain that this seat, if not exaggerated, gives the best assistance to the horse jumping and the best control to the rider.

The Commandant at the Italian Cavalry School used to instil the motto, 'There are no bad horses, only bad riders.' Certainly 'prevention is better than cure,' and, with good training, refusals and other faults should be very rare.

The two maxims mentioned in the previous article for training the horse jumping should always be borne in mind.

The chief faults can be summarised under three headings, viz., Refusing, Rushing, Taking off badly. The Equitation Chapter of 'Cavalry Training' gives ten probable causes of refusing, viz.:

Fear, caused by ill-treatment or, occasionally, want of heart. (Most important of former is a jog in the mouth.)

Ignorance as to what is required.

Obstinacy.

Weakness.

Sickened by too much jumping or too high jumps, especially on hard ground.

Want of nerve on the part of the rider.

Pain from bad bitting, sore back, tender feet.

Seeing other horses refuse.

Digitized by Google

Original bad training.

Over freshness, or from not having been jumped for some time.

These may be roughly summarised under the headings of fear and obstinacy.

Fear and ignorance must be cured by gentleness and patience. Absolute quietness and no long whip is required. A lead or another horse alongside is a great help.

Obstinacy requires much patience, perseverance, and absolute determination.

A horse which is weak or stale should not be jumped till he has gained strength or regained his spirits. In the remainder of the cases the cause must be removed, and the horse then probably not jumped for some time.

In his interesting little book, General Blacque Bellair groups the ways of refusals under three headings, viz.:

Horse stops short; he turns off some distance from the jump, or he swerves when near the jump.

He also suggests suitable action to deal with each case.

Rushing is generally due to bad training combined with excitable temperament. Quiet riding and series of fences at different heights and at varying distances will probably correct it.

Taking off badly—especially too close to a fence—can usually be cured by good horsemanship, encouragement to take off being given at the right moment. A bar placed seven yards in front or a guard rail helps.

With regard to the necessity of wings, these are my views for what they may be worth.

They are presumably necessary for steeplechasing and hurdle racing. You do not meet with wings when hunting, and they should not be required for military work after a horse has learnt to jump readily with a man on his back.

If you have trained horses to like jumping, why should horses want to run out? and if riders have proper control,

Digitized by Google

why should they let horses run out, even if horses try to do so?

It is a question of the horse being under discipline and of having confidence in his own prowess and in his rider. If trained on such a system as advocated here, the inclination of the horse when ridden up to a fence is to jump it.

It is necessary to teach horses to jump at all paces, but it is preferable to start a young horse mounted at a trot, because this teaches him to jump well off his hocks.

It is best to ask a young horse to jump a ditch at a walk, and if he wants to look at it the first time, by all means let him do so, for it gives him confidence.

Though the above system is chiefly with reference to military work, yet the same is fairly well applicable to jumping when riding to hounds.

It may be best to slip along at some fences, but of many good men to hounds I can think of, those who get down the least are those who go fairly slow at their fences.

The same groundwork is suitable for steeplechase horses: it is a kind and sensible way of letting horses teach themselves how to jump. They must, of course, be taught in due course to get over their fences quickly; the more in reason the horse stands off, the quicker jumper he is and the fewer falls he will have, for probably nine out of ten falls in steeplechasing are due to horses taking off too late. It is wonderful what a distance a good steeplechase jumper will stand off from his fences.

The more in reason a horse is driven into his fences, the better he will jump; with this exception, I think more harm than good is done by interfering with horses as they approach their fences. My impression also is that there would be fewer falls in steeplechases if horses when young were schooled free, somewhat on the lines advocated above.

Show jumping is different from ordinary military riding

Digitized by Google

in this respect, that it necessitates the horse jumping quite clear over every fence.

Horses trained for show jumping may be divided into two classes:

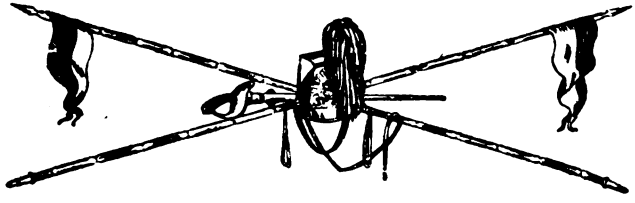
those which perform on their own, and riders are mere passengers,

and those which are carefully trained to obey their riders' hands and legs.

The latter class is the higher art, and probably appeals more to British soldiers.

It is not necessary here to refer to different systems of training, but I should like to state that the more kind and humane the training is, the better and the more likely to lead to permanent success it will prove to be.

Finally, the system seems to be a good one and likely to give satisfactory results. It would be very wrong to claim that it cannot be improved on; on the contrary, I am sure it can be and will be after further experience. There are five points of everlasting importance in training both horses and men to jump, viz., Gentleness, Progression, Patience, Perseverance, and Determination.



Digitized by Google

THE HEIGHT OF POLO PONIES

By Lt.-General Sir Beauvoir de Lisle, K.C.B., D.S.O.

The vexed question of the height of Polo Ponies has been the subject of much correspondence and debate both before 1914 and since the late war. The arguments put forward in favour of and against a fixed standard all deserve consideration, but are so equally balanced that it is not easy to form a decisive judgment.

The fixed standard of measurement was resented by breeders, dealers, and all owners who train young ponies. The time and trouble required to train a four-year-old are considerable, and the disappointment experienced, should he fail to register, must be great. The financial loss is even greater, and to a business man, who depends on providing polo ponies for the market, such a loss becomes intolerable.

On the other hand, it is generally admitted that there are great advantages to polo in limiting the height of ponies, and from experience it has been found that a liberal 14·2 is the best height.

The balance of opinion, though very even, slightly inclines towards 'no measurement' when the arguments are considered from a general point of view. From a Cavalry point of view, the advantage of 'no measurement' are far greater.

It is hoped that authority will soon be given for Cavalry officers to play polo on troop horses, as is the custom in the American Cavalry, but the number of these which would pass the 14·2 standard will be negligible.

Whatever may be decided as to the reintroduction of the 14·2 standard, consideration must be given to the wishes of

Digitized by Google

Cavalry and other polo clubs as well as to the system of measurements.

The present system of measuring ponies has many disadvantages, and is directly opposed to the system of measuring horses.

The advertised height of a horse denotes that, in shoes, with head erect and in condition, he will reach the height specified. The catalogued height of a pony may mean anything. If small, he may have been measured in shoes, etc., like a horse, and 14·2 may be his maximum height. If big, he may have passed the 14·2 standard without shoes, with pared soles, in poor condition, and after a month's preparation for measurement. These two ponies have the same registered height, but in reality there may be a difference of three inches between them. That this is no exaggeration, a visit to a sale yard in the polo season will prove.

The question naturally arises: What is the best solution of the height difficulty?

If our leading polo players insist on a standard in the interests of polo, and if the American polo players agree, let us resume the register for first-class Polo Tournaments—International, Championship and Open Tournaments only. To insist on a rigid standard for polo ponies in closed tournaments such as the County and Inter-Regimental would incur the risk of discouraging polo in county clubs and in our services.

From this arises another question: the most suitable standard of measurement. It has been proved in the past that our system of measuring ponies is unsatisfactory. It was partly due to this, and to the cruelty attendant on preparing ponies for measurement, that the limitation of height was abolished.

All these disadvantages can, however, be overcome by the introduction of a modified system of measuring ponies. At present a small pony with a high wither is registered as a larger pony than a big one with a low wither. The solution of

Digitized by Google

this anomaly is to measure ponies across the back. It may be urged that a hollow-backed pony would then have an undue advantage, but the few ponies with hollow backs would not affect the issue, and such a malformation is too great a disadvantage to attract anyone. Another criticism is that it is unwise to have two standards of measurement—one for horses and one for ponies. This would be a reasonable objection but for the fact that two standards exist in practice already. The measurement of a horse indicates that in shoes he has been able to *reach* this height; the measurement of a pony indicates that without shoes, in poor condition, and sometimes after a month's preparation, often entailing cruelty, he has been able to pass *under* this figure. The difference between these two standards is about three inches.

From this we may infer that the only satisfactory way of measuring ponies—and the same applies to horses—is across the lowest point of the back. The height at this point does not alter from condition, and a six-year-old does not increase in height from what he was as a four-year-old. Preparation for measurement would not affect the result, and if only to abolish the cruelty so often practised in the past, especially in India, this change in our system of measurement is most desirable.

The actual standard across the back to correspond with our present standard of 14·2 over the wither can easily be fixed after experiment. It will be found to be about 14·1.

In conclusion, as rules and regulations by the Hurlingham Committee are intended for the encouragement of polo, it would appear undesirable to insist on the reintroduction of the height limit for any but Open First-class Tournaments, and then only with the concurrence of America and with the system of measurement recommended above.

Digitized by Google

THE ROMANCE OF THE DRUM BANNER

By Edward Fraser

Drum banners and trumpet banners have a common origin, and are inseparably connected. In their origin they carry us back to the days of Chivalry, to centuries ago. Trumpets, of course, were in use in European War long before drums. Away back at the time of Agincourt and before that, each leader of horse carried his family cognizance as badge embroidered both on this standard and on the smaller banner that was attached to the trumpet carried by a mounted squire close beside the knightly leader. One knight at Agincourt, indeed, at the head of a troop of horse, on his troop standard not being forthcoming, cut off his trumpeter's trumpet-banner and went into action with that instead.

Cavalry kettledrums came into fashion for 'crack' mounted corps early in the sixteenth century. They were introduced into England by Henry the Eighth, the King having first observed them in use in the King of France's mounted retinue of Guards at the Field of the Cloth of Gold.

Drum banners were in use with the kettledrums on State occasions in peace time, as King Henry saw at the Field of the Cloth of Gold—but they had, together with trumpet banners, an additional and special use in war earlier than that. The trumpeter and drummer in the fifteenth, sixteenth and seventeenth centuries was a good deal more than a musician. It was his particular part in war to act as a military emissary in the field; to hold parleys under flag of truce with the enemy. Such service needed trained men of

Digitized by Google

special abilities and social standing. So the military writers of the time describe drummers and trumpeters as having to perform on certain occasions part of the duty that the earlier mediæval heralds used to perform. Says, for instance, Captain Ralph Smith, one of the earliest military writers in England, who wrote at the close of the reign of Henry the Eighth, 'They shall be faithful, secret and ingenious, of able personage to use their instruments to summon the forts and towns, and conduct divers messages which of necessity requireth language.' Writing a hundred years later, at the time of the English Civil War, Major Elton, in his exhaustive treatise on the Art of War, speaks of the Cavalry kettle-drummers in particular as of necessity being 'a man of accomplishments, together with a comely figure, a good deportment, and a politic, discreet and cunning person.' To mark him out, and as a badge of his authority, his drums bore banners with the armorial bearings of the General in Command or bearing the national emblems under which his side were fighting, as far as these were regularised, and in the armies of both Fairfax and Rupert this usage was observed.

With the establishment of the modern British Army at the Restoration, the drum banner became recognized as part of Cavalry equipment equally with the squadron and troop standards and guidons; for design and ornamentation one was practically the same as the other. With this difference, however, at the outset. While every troop in every Cavalry regiment, whether of Horse or Dragoons, had its standard as guidon, only certain *corps d'élite* of Horse were at first permitted kettledrums and drum banners. Charles the Second originally only allowed a drum banner to the first or 'King's Troop' of the Life Guards; in that copying the Continental usage of the time, common to both France and the States of Germany. Abroad, the usage was to restrict drum banners to the Body Guard Horse. During

Digitized by Google

Charles the Second's reign the Second 'Queen's Troop' of Life Guards was, as a privilege, specially granted drum banners and trumpet banners of a pattern exactly the same as that on the Troop Standard. The silver embroidered cherubim seen on the trumpet and drum banners of the Life Guards to-day (just over the heads of the lion and unicorn of the Royal Arms) first appeared on the drum and trumpet banners of the Second, or 'Queen's,' troop of Charles the Second's Life Guards, two hundred and forty odd years ago.

The next step was to grant the privilege of kettledrums and drum banners to the senior regiments of heavy Cavalry, the 'Horse,' as they were called, by way of distinguishing them from Dragoon regiments. The 'Blues' and the K.D.G.'s were the first to be allowed kettledrums and drum banners. It was apparently in James the Second's reign, about the year 1686, that this privilege was granted. They were provided for out of the pocket of the Colonels, which also had to bear the cost of providing the men's uniforms, the trumpet banners and troop standards, from the annual grant termed the 'Clothing Allowance' for covering general regimental expenses. The other regiments of Horse, as Heavy Cavalry, were granted kettledrums and drum banners later, during William the Third and Queen Anne's reigns, and by 1715 practically all had them. When exactly, and in what circumstances, the various regiments received theirs first is not stated in any document extant.

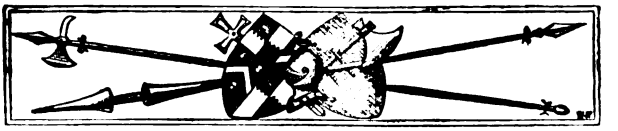
The Continental military practice, with which both King William and Marlborough were, of course, familiar, was to present drum banners and grant the privilege of kettledrums only to regiments that had distinguished themselves by some outstanding feat of arms on the battlefield. Probably it was in this way, during the wars of 1691–7 and 1702–13, that our present Dragoon Guard regiments came by their drum banners. Abroad, also, it was laid down that the privilege might be won for certain specific acts by individuals in regiments,

Digitized by Google

such as by capturing enemy standards and colours, and as specifically stated, also, kettledrums. Special mention in despatches was always made of the capture of kettledrums and their banners. These details are specially referred to in various old regulations of the French Army of Louis XIV. and of the Prussian Army of the Great Elector, which were contemporary with King William and Marlborough.

In the official returns of the Blenheim trophies, mention is made of the kettledrums captured; these being enumerated as spoil on the same footing with the captured standards, colours and cannon. Each kettledrum had its banner, and a number of such drum banners, captured in various wars by the French, Prussian and Austrian armies, are—or were previous to 1914—on view as trophies, together with captured standards and colours, in Paris, Berlin or Vienna, at the Invalides, the Zeughaus and the K. & K. Kriegs Museum. The first two British Dragoon regiments to have the kettledrums and drum banners would seem to have won them in battle and at Blenheim—the Scots Greys and the 5th Lancers. By the middle of the eighteenth century all our Dragoon regiments had kettledrums and, consequently, drum banners; with the possible exception, for some unknown reason, of the 3rd Dragoons, now the 3rd Hussars.

(*To be continued.*)



Digitized by Google

THE MACHINE GUN CORPS (CAVALRY) IN FRANCE, 1916–1918

By Captain T. Preston, M.C., *Yorkshire Hussars*

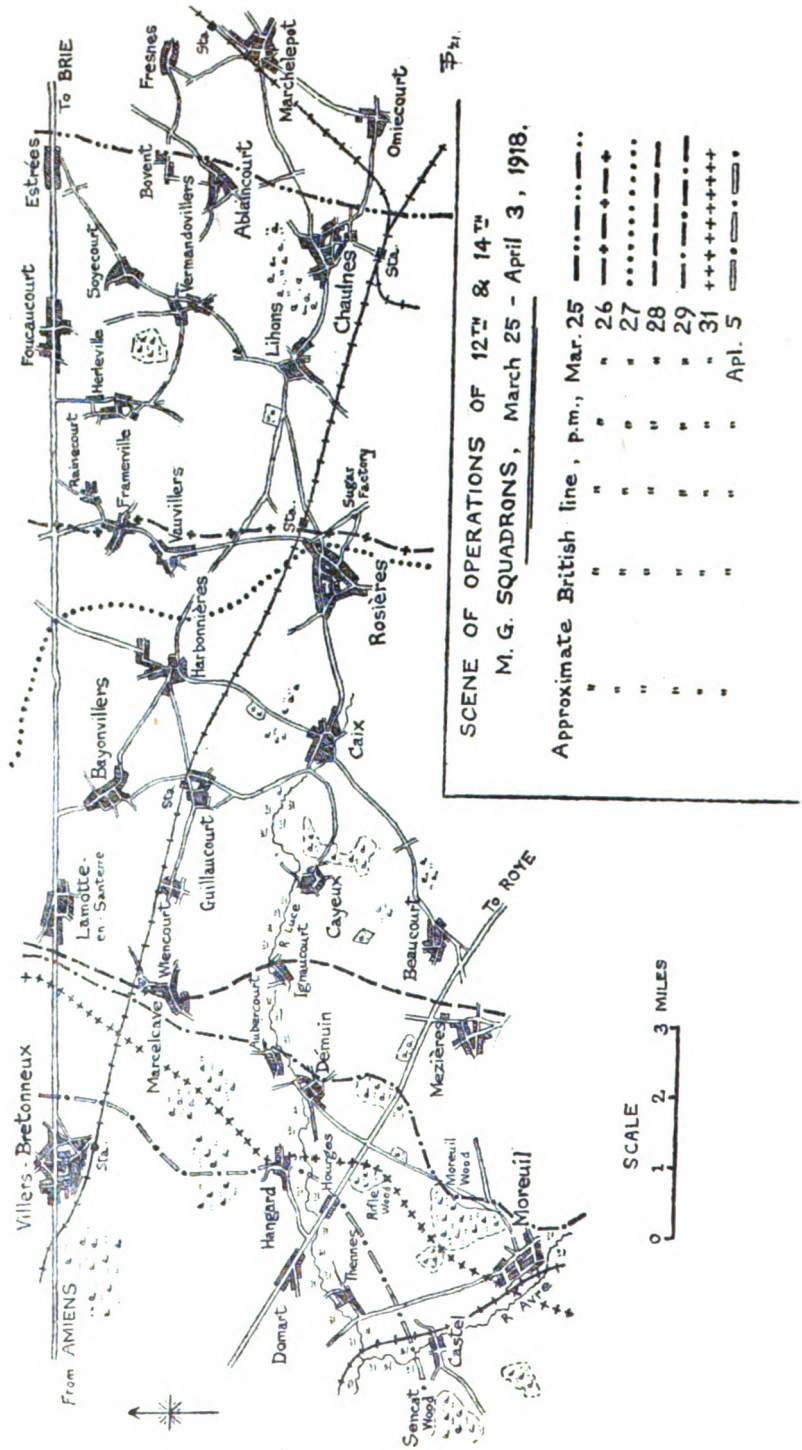
VIII.—The Great German Offensive (*continued*)

The 12th and 14th Machine Gun Squadrons, under Captains J. A. Moncreiffe and B. C. King respectively, were engaged meanwhile in a different part of the battlefield, having been sent up on March 25 to the 8th Division about Foucaucourt. They arrived with their horses, but as the fighting was now in the old Somme battle area, these were very little use except the pack-horses, and the two squadrons fought as Infantry. Six guns of the 12th Squadron went into action at 1 p.m. near Fresnes, but got no actual shooting; and the same applied to the 14th Squadron, which sent ten guns to cover the village of Marchelepot.

The latter guns had to retire at 9.30 p.m., the Germans having got round the flank of the Infantry, and the 14th Squadron, acting with the 8th Machine Gun Battalion, held a line running east and west through Ablaincourt. The 12th Squadron guns were withdrawn to a line south-east of Bovent.

On the morning of March 26, the enemy attacked, and, the 14th Squadron's positions being enfiladed, the guns were, at 8.30 a.m., withdrawn under orders to Vermandovillers, where they had the satisfaction of firing on advanced parties of Germans. In the meantime, the 12th Squadron had

Digitized by Google



Digitized by Google

engaged a strong column of the enemy marching down a road near Bovent, and inflicted serious losses on them.

The 24th Brigade (8th Division) retired on Rosières during the morning, and both squadrons did excellent work covering the withdrawal. All the guns of the 14th Squadron got good shooting, but one gun was unluckily knocked out. The 12th Squadron lost two men killed and three wounded. That night the guns of both squadrons helped to man a defensive line along the eastern edge of Rosières village.

Next morning, March 27, the enemy attacked Rosières after a severe bombardment. Two guns of the 14th Squadron at the Sugar Factory were knocked out by artillery fire before they could come into action. Four other guns were sent to support the right flank of the Rosières line, but a counter-attack having restored the situation, they were not needed. The 24th Brigade was now ordered to send all available machine guns to support a counter-attack on Harbonnières; some of the 14th Squadron teams were shelled on their way there, and lost a few men. The counter-attacks on Harbonnières did not come off, and the guns were dug in for the night in view of a possible enemy attack next morning.

The withdrawal of our line continued next day (28th) to positions between Guillaucourt and Caix; the 14th Squadron guns made excellent shooting at bodies of Germans who were advancing in columns of fours.

The ammunition supply now became a difficulty, as the wagons had been sent a long way back for safety; belts were filled from bandoliers of wounded men, and some ammunition was borrowed from the Infantry, who, however, could not spare much.

By 12.30 p.m., March 28, the situation in this sector had become very critical. The Infantry had, with the exception of a few small parties, fallen back, and the Germans were pressing through gaps in our line south of Guillaucourt. Four guns of the 14th Squadron fired all their remaining

Digitized by Google

ammunition and then withdrew, whilst six other guns further south did the same; one of the latter was knocked out by shell-fire during the retirement.

The gun teams of the 14th Squadron rallied just east of Cayeux village, but no ammunition could be found anywhere. News came that some could be obtained at Beaucourt, but on Captain Moncreiffe (12th Squadron) proceeding there, he got orders to take both squadrons out of action to Ailly-sur-Noye. The men got their horses at Beaucourt and rode back to Ailly, where the next day (March 29) was passed quietly.

At 3 a.m., March 30, Captain Moncreiffe received orders to take the 12th and 14th Machine Gun Squadrons to Sencat, south-west of Castel, to support the Canadian Cavalry Brigade in its attack on Moreuil Wood,* and at 5.45 p.m. three guns were sent forward to that wood to reinforce the Canadian line. Here they were under a continual harassing fire from enemy machine-guns.

The following day, March 31, the enemy attacked at 2 p.m., and penetrated into the wood at certain points, with the result that our line had to fall back. Captain Moncreiffe was wounded during the afternoon.

It should be noted that the 12th and 14th Squadrons were still taking their orders from the 8th Division, and working generally with the 8th Machine Gun Battalion.

The 1st April saw considerable fighting, in which the Squadrons' guns were heavily shelled and suffered some casualties. In the afternoon some of the guns supported a successful counter-attack by the 24th Brigade, and things were calmer that night.

On April 2, the 14th Squadron guns took on various targets, including a German field-gun, which was engaged at 800-yards' range and compelled to withdraw in some haste!

* Already described in October CAVALRY JOURNAL, page 413.

Digitized by Google

Both the 12th and 14th Machine Gun Squadrons were relieved about 2 a.m., April 3, by French troops, having had nine days of continuous marching and fighting. They afforded one more proof of the high spirit which animated the Machine Gun Squadrons all through these critical days, and which set an example to the Infantry on so many occasions.

We may gather some idea of the excellent work these two squadrons did by the honours awarded, which were all recommended by Infantry commanders :—

12th Machine Gun Squadron.

Military Cross.—Lieutenant M. Chennells and Second-Lieutenant F. Twist.

Bar to Military Medal.—Sergeant Petrie.

Military Medal.—Sergeants Alexander and Evans; Lance-Corporals Watling, Cannon, Mowat and Leatham; Privates Duncan, Povey, Fletcher and Buckley.

Mentioned in Despatches.—Lieutenant S. Leitch.

14th Machine Gun Squadron.

Meritorious Service Medal.—Squadron-Sergt.-Major Flight, for carrying messages and fetching ammunition under fire. (This N.C.O. had already been decorated for gallantry at Cambrai.)

Military Medal.—Sergeant MacIntyre, Corporal Worsdell, Corporal Reading (died of wounds), Private Rawlings.

As regards casualties, the 12th Squadron lost three men killed and six wounded, besides their C.O., Captain J. A. Moncreiffe, wounded. The 14th Squadron suffered more severely, losing Lieutenants S. H. Brown, S. R. Howes and W. Tinsley wounded, five other ranks killed and twenty-six wounded, with eighty horse casualties.

The 11th Machine Gun Squadron's doings must now be recorded, though, unlike the others, it was not fated to take

Digitized by Google

a very active part in the fighting. The squadron had gone about March 15 to Frohen-le-Grand to be broken up, and its C.O. and Second-in-Command (Captains J. C. Humfrey and M. Gray) sent on leave, leaving the details under Lieutenant E. W. Younghusband.

On March 23, the squadron was hurriedly dispatched (dismounted) to the VI. Corps area (Third Army), where it came under the orders of the 31st Division. Lieutenant Younghusband was told to place his guns at Quesnoy Farm, east of Bucquoy, which was done on the 24th. Here they were in a support line, and though they got no direct shooting, they fired barrages at different times, and especially during the counter-attack by the 32nd Division at Ayette on March 30. The squadron was not finally relieved till April 14, having sustained about eighteen casualties, some of these being from gas shelling.

* * * * *

The story of the Machine Gun Squadrons' doings in the first 1918 German offensive is now complete; but before leaving the subject of that battle we may note the names of two former Machine Gun Squadron leaders who took part in it. Lieutenant-Colonel J. D. Deane-Drummond, D.S.O., M.C., formerly commanding 8th Machine Gun Squadron, was severely wounded when in command of the 25th Machine Gun Battalion; whilst Lieutenant-Colonel A. Fleetwood-Wilson (originally O.C. 3rd Machine Gun Squadron) was in charge of the 39th Machine Gun Battalion. The latter officer was taken prisoner, but managed to give his guards the slip and got back to our lines.

The heroic death of Major R. H. N. Settle, M.C., late commanding 9th Squadron, has already been described.*

Battle of the Lys.—The Machine Gun Squadrons were not called upon to take any active part against the German

* CAVALRY JOURNAL, October 1921, page 411.

Digitized by Google

'push' on the Lys front which started on April 9. The Cavalry Corps was, indeed, sent north on April 10 and following days, and was in reserve to the First Army; but beyond sending a few dismounted units to hold support trenches, the Cavalry divisions took no part in the Lys battle. The 8th Machine Gun Squadron, for instance, held for one night a line of posts just east of St. Venant and astride the La Bassée Canal. The gun positions were considerably shelled, but, luckily, no damage was done.

IX.—April to July, 1918

From about April 15 onwards, the Machine Gun Squadrons —and, indeed, the whole of the Cavalry—had a quiet period of three and a half months, which enabled them to put in much useful training. As already mentioned, the 10th, 11th, 12th and 13th Squadrons (and part of the 14th) were broken up, the officers and men being sent as reinforcements to the other squadrons.

During the first week in May, the 3rd Cavalry Division was moved southwards to the Fourth Army area, and placed in III. Corps reserve, as it was thought probable that the enemy would attack on the Albert front. Machine-gun positions were carefully reconnoitred in the support trench-lines about Senlis, Baisieux, Henencourt, &c., but May and June passed without incident. By May 17 it was decided to keep only one Cavalry Brigade in the III. Corps area, and the 6th, 7th and Canadian Brigades took this duty in turn, the other two moving back to the St. Ouen district, where training was carried on.

The 8th Machine Gun Squadron, as previously noted, changed its title on May 4 to *7th* Machine Gun Squadron, so as to correspond with the number of its brigade. The original 7th Squadron was now part of the dismounted Household Cavalry Machine Gun Brigade.

Digitized by Google

In June 1918 three changes were made which affected the Machine Gun Squadrons. These were—

(1) The acting rank of Major was approved (dated June 6, 1918) for all Machine Gun Squadron commanders;

(2) The office of Cavalry Corps Machine Gun Officer* was abolished, and Divisional Machine Gun Officers appointed instead;

(3) The strength of each Machine Gun Squadron was increased by a transport officer, twenty-seven other ranks, and twenty-six horses, this allowing of extra signallers, spare draught horses, and a mess-cart.

In the writer's humble opinion, these changes were not all for the better. As regards (1), of course, it was only fair that the commander of a Machine Gun Squadron, seeing that he was responsible for a larger unit than a R.H.A. battery, should draw Major's pay. It was, in fact, rather hard that the senior rank was not granted when the Machine Gun Squadrons were first formed.

As regards (2), it is very doubtful whether the office of Divisional Machine Gun Officer was really necessary. Certainly there were Divisional Machine Gun Officers in the Machine Gun Corps (Infantry), but then the machine-guns in an Infantry division were more numerous, and were concentrated in one unit (Machine Gun battalion), both for administration and fighting; the Infantry Divisional Machine Gun Officers had a definite executive authority over them. But the Cavalry Divisional Machine Gun Officers, when appointed, had no such executive command over the Machine Gun Squadrons; they were virtually machine-gun staff officers attached to Divisional Headquarters, and their powers were restricted to advising on technical details and on the promotion of officers. In action, a Machine Gun Squadron commander took his orders entirely from his Brigadier, and had nothing whatever to do with the Divisional Machine Gun

* Held since October 1916 by Lieut.-Colonel Sir W. R. Codrington.

Digitized by Google

Officer. Finally, even if a single Cavalry Corps Machine Gun Officer could not properly supervise the original fifteen Machine Gun Squadrons, he might well have done so when they were reduced to nine.

Coming to (3), it is to be feared that the extra men and horses were more of a luxury than a necessity. If the additional men had been *gunners*, and the squadron strength increased by a further subsection of guns, the improvement would have been obvious; but the transport officer and extra signallers were not urgently wanted, and the fact remains that they added to the ration strength (and therefore cost) of a Machine Gun Squadron without adding to its fire-power—and this, too, at a time when men and horses were badly needed in the Infantry and other arms.

The Divisional Machine Gun Officers and Machine Gun Squadron Commanders in July 1918 were as follows :—

1st Cavalry Division.

D.M.G.O.—Lieut.-Colonel F. King, D.S.O. (4th Hussars).
1st M.G.S.—Major V. H. Misa, M.C. (Bays).
2nd M.G.S.—Major L. W. D. Wathen (8th Hussars).
9th M.G.S.—Major J. A. Moncreiffe (Oxfordshire Hussars).

2nd Cavalry Division.

D.M.G.O.—Lieut.-Colonel J. C. Petherick, M.C. (3rd Hussars).
3rd M.G.S.—Major F. W. M. Cornwallis, M.C. (17th Lancers).
4th M.G.S.—Major E. W. Macarthur (18th Hussars S.R.).
5th M.G.S.—Major E. S. D. Martin, D.S.O., M.C. (5th Dragoon Guards).

3rd Cavalry Division.

D.M.G.O.—Lieut.-Colonel C. Kerr, M.C. (Royal Horse Guards S.R.).
6th M.G.S.—Major J. C. Humfrey (Inniskillings).

Digitized by Google

7th M.G.S.—Major T. Preston, M.C. (Yorkshire Hussars).
Canadian M.G.S.—Major J. W. Boulter (Royal Canadian Dragoons).

From about June 25 to July 25, practically all units in the Cavalry Corps were attacked by an influenza epidemic, which the R.A.M.C. called 'P.U.O.' ('Pyrexia, unknown origin'). The Machine Gun Squadrons sometimes had thirty to thirty-five men ill at one time, the illness usually lasting ten to 14 days. This made it very hard to look after the horses properly, especially when it is remembered that a Machine Gun Squadron, with its numerous pack and limber horses, had a bigger proportion of horses to men than a regiment.

(To be continued.)

Digitized by Google

A SIMPLE WAY TO CHECK PRISMATIC COMPASSES IN THE FIELD OR ON THE MOVE WHICH WILL GIVE RESULTS WITH NOT MORE THAN ONE QUARTER OF A DEGREE ERROR

By Lt.-Colonel W. H. Scott, C.M.G., D.S.O., 9th Light Horse Regiment, Australian Imperial Force.

This method is based on an astronomical problem known as finding true Meridian by equal altitudes.

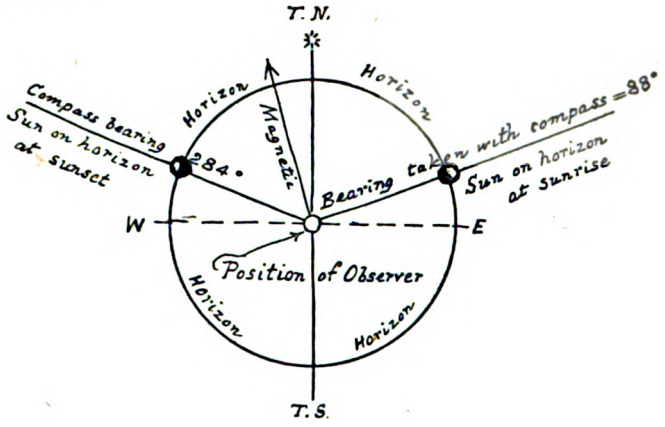
Method.—Take a bearing of sun's centre at sunrise on a normal horizon, *i.e.*, one where the horizon is not more than a degree of elevation above the point of observation; take a similar bearing of the sun at sunset; add the two together. If greater than 360°, subtract 360 from the sum and divide the remainder by 2, which will give the error *West.* If less than 360°, subtract sum from 360 and divide by 2, and the result will give the error *East.*

An approximate method of checking prismatic compasses *correct to* 15 *minutes of arc.*

This error is due to the daily change of declination of the sun, which would be about 11 minutes between sunrise and set.

Digitized by Google

Example :—



Bearing sun at sunrise	=	88°
Bearing sun centre at sunset	=	284°
		372°
		360°
		2)12
Error West = 6°	=	6°

Note.—The sunrise bearing may be taken at one position, while the sunset ones may be taken anywhere within a radius of 30 miles without materially affecting the result from a military point of view. Bearings may also be taken at sunset one day and sunrise the next and treated in the same manner.

Reason.—The reason of this is that the sun rises and sets at the same angular distance on either side of the True Meridian + or — the daily change of sun's declination, multiplied by the duration of time between sunrise and sunset, divided by 24.

Take the example above (*i.e.*, with diagram): if the true bearing of sun were read the bearing at sunrise would be 82° and 278° at sunset or 82° West of North. The two together equal 360°, no account being taken for change of

Digitized by Google

declination. But, in the example, the compass having an error westing, both readings are increased, each in this case by 6°; and as two bearings have been taken, the error has been doubled, which makes it necessary to divide the result by 2, after obtaining the difference between the sum of the sunrise and sunset bearings from 360°.

The above method was used by the writer when commanding the 9th Light Horse Regiment through the E.E.F. Campaign, with very satisfactory results.

Note by Editor.—As the author has pointed out, this method is accurate only in rather flat countries and, of course, when there is no bank of cloud on the horizon; but, even under difficult conditions, we strongly recommend that it should be practised by all officers.

Digitized by Google

RECENT PUBLICATIONS

'A Record of the West Somerset Yeomanry, 1914–1919.' by Captain R. C. Boyle, M.C., with a foreword by Brig.-General R. Hoare, C.M.G., D.S.O. Illustrations and Maps. 8vo. (St. Catherine Press), London, 1921.

LIKE so many other Yeomanry units the Fates ordained that the West Somerset Yeomanry should serve through the late War as Infantry and as such they formed part of the 74th (Yeomanry) Division.

The Regiment received its baptism of fire in Gallipoli, where it experienced the dreadful blizzard before the evacuation in December, 1915. Many people even now do not realize the awful conditions on that front when, without any winter clothing or equipment, our men fought to the waist in mud and water and exposed to intense frost.

When the Peninsula was evacuated the Regiment proceeded to Egypt and in 1917 were sent to Palestine, where they took an active part in the brilliant operations which culminated in the surrender of Jerusalem.

In 1918, the Battalion proceeded to the Western Front and took part in the severe fighting which closed the War.

The book is good reading throughout, and those who complain that Records of the late War are dull reading will find themselves mistaken in the case of the West Somerset Yeomanry.

Captain Boyle maintains a vein of humour throughout the narrative and the book is full of anecdote. It is well illustrated by photographs, and has an excellent set of Maps.

H. G. P.

Digitized by Google

'The Veterinary Journal' for February contains an editorial by Frederick Hobday, C.M.G., F.R.C.V.S., Honorary Veterinary Surgeon to His Majesty the King, which refers to the Indian Government studs broken up in the last century owing to their colossal extravagance. An incident is related of the rare gift of judging Arab horses. The Commander-in-Chief visited the stallion depôt at Babugarh and cast a whole batch of Arabs as unfit for breeding military horses. They had been purchased at ridiculously small prices, after being landed at Bombay, by a very fine judge of Arabs. The rejected stallions were bought by the Civil Administration, and subsequently a special commission sent to India reported that those very horses were the best Arab stallions in the country.

Back numbers of the CAVALRY JOURNAL, from 1906 to 1914, are on sale at 2s. post free.

Annual volumes, bound in white forril cover, with red design and lettering, also covers ready for binding are available on application to the CAVALRY JOURNAL, Royal United Service Institution, Whitehall, S.W. 1.

Digitized by Google

HISTORICAL NOTES

SIR WATKIN WILLIAMS WYNN, the 5th Baronet, whose portrait we reproduce, is represented wearing Yeomanry uniform of the year 1800. At the outbreak of the Irish Rebellion, he raised the regiment of 'Ancient British Fencibles' and took them to France at the time of the Battle of Waterloo, but arrived a day too late to share in the victory.

He was born in 1772, married the daughter of the 1st Earl of Powis, Lady Henrietta Clive, and died in 1840.

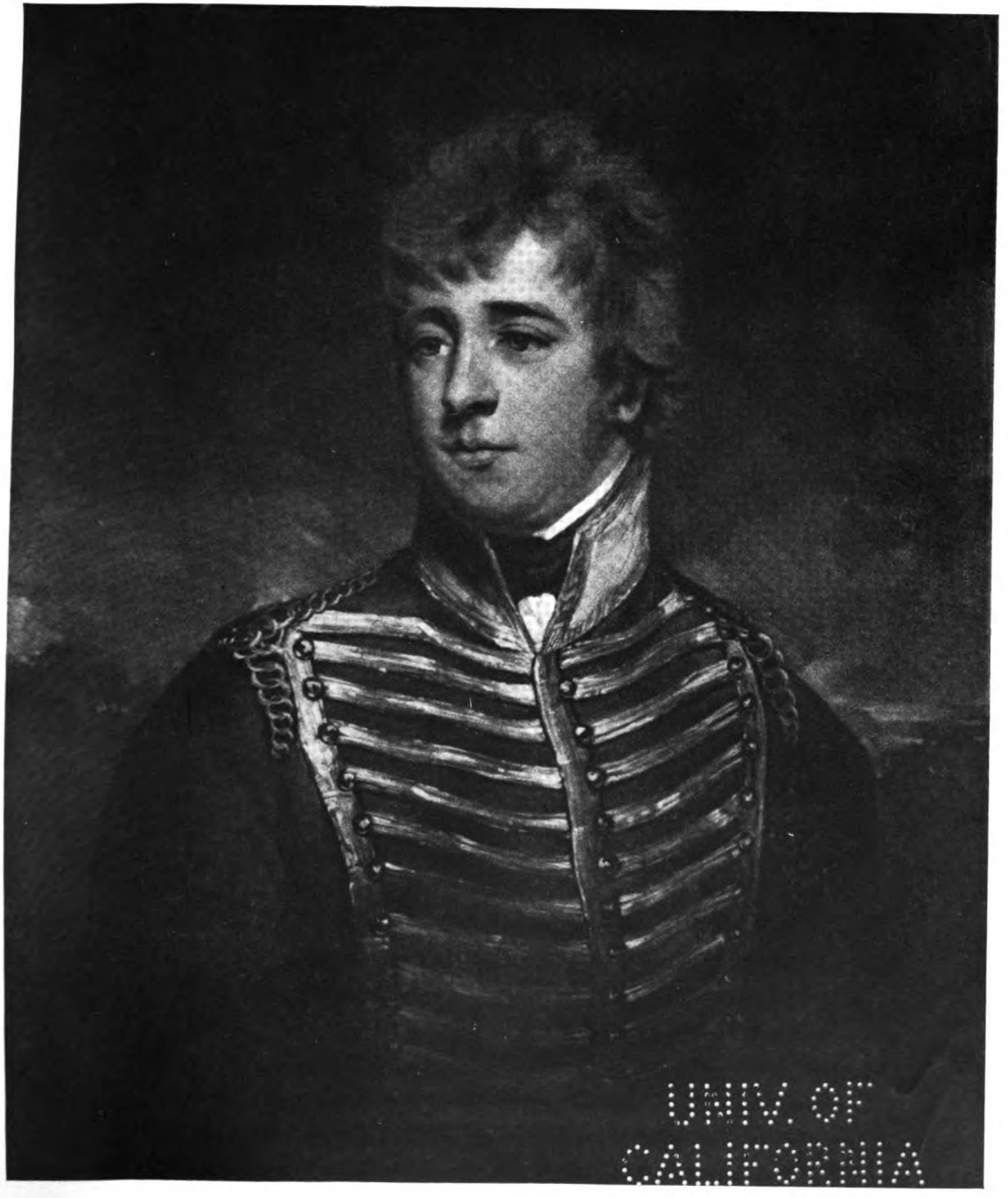
The original painting by J. Hoppner, from which our portrait was taken, is believed to have been destroyed by fire in 1858, when most of the family seat, Wynnstay, in North Wales, was burnt down.

The despatches announcing the glorious battle of Blenheim, August 13, 1704, were brought to England by the great grandfather of Lieut.-Colonel Percy, who bore the tidings of the still more decisive battle of Waterloo, June 18, 1815.

Sergeant Weir, of the Scots Greys, was pay sergeant of his troop and as such might have been excused serving in action, and perhaps he should not have gone forward, but on such a day as Waterloo, he requested to be allowed to charge with his regiment. He fell and was mortally wounded, and left on the field.

Corporal Scott, of the same regiment, asserted that when the field was searched, for the wounded and slain, the body of Sergeant Weir was found with his name written on his forehead by his own finger, dipped in his blood. This, his comrade said, he was supposed to have done that his body might be found and known, in order that it should not be imagined he had disappeared with the money of his troop. The deceased was a man of exemplary conduct in the corps,

Digitized by Google



SIR WATKIN WILLIAMS WYNNE, Bart. (1800).

Digitized by Google

UNIV OF
CALIFORNIA

Digitized by Google

and bore a *high* character in his native village of Mauchline, where his father, a poor shoemaker, resided, and towards whose support the Waterloo Committee remitted fifty pounds.

According to the contemporary press, among the wounded survivors of the Inniskilling Dragoons in Exeter in 1816, there was a Sergeant who received in the Battle of Waterloo thirteen sabre wounds in his body, a musket ball passed through his thigh, and both his arms were broken. In this state he lay on the battlefield (amidst a heap of slain) from the Sunday till the Tuesday following, when the persons employed to bury the dead observed some signs of life in him, and he was conveyed to an hospital and recovered.

General Chlapowski has recorded that, in riding, Napoleon never used the spur or pressure of the leg, but controlled his horse with bit and riding whip.

In 1809, after taking Ebersburg, Napoleon rode at a gallop for four hours and arrived at the walls of Vienna. He rode up on to the glacis, and a well-dressed crowd of Viennese, recognising him from 1805, took off their hats and acclaimed him with 'vivats.'*

In the British Light Cavalry immediately previous to the Peninsular War, mares were excluded, and the horses of every troop were of a distinctive colour. When that campaign opened, horses were purchased irrespective of sex or colour and balloted for by the different captains. This proved a more equitable plan, and thus each troop secured an equal chance of getting the best horse for the campaign.†

This system prevailed in Hussar regiments in 1815.

A. L.

* 'Mémoires sur les Guerres de Napoléon.' Genl. Chlapowski.

† 'Jottings from my Sabretasche.' Bentley, London, 1847.

Notes of this description will be welcomed by the Editorial Staff for insertion in the JOURNAL.

Digitized by Google

SPORTING NOTES

Racing

This is the time of year that, in the old days, every Cavalry Regiment quartered at home was looking forward to the regimental races. They were most sporting affairs, but, owing to the cost, the authorities requested Colonels of regiments not to hold them. This was a mistake as, if a regiment happened to be quartered near where there was a steeplechase course, arrangements could always be made to hold the meeting over the course. The company would give two open races and from £100 to £150 to the regimental race fund. They took the money paid at the gate and usually made a good thing out of it. The only expense the regiment was put to was for the luncheon, which was a good opportunity of repaying the hospitality received from people living in the neighbourhood. Most regiments had rules barring horses that had been in a training stable for two months prior to the races. This reduced the field to genuine hunters that had been regularly hunted, and the officer had to train his horse himself. This taught him a lot about horse management, to say nothing about the experience he got riding the horse himself in the race.

We owned a little mare that must nearly hold the record for a Subaltern's Cup. She ran five years running, won it twice, twice second and the other year third. She was also twice second and once third in the Regimental Point-to-Point, and we hunted her for twelve seasons.

We wonder whether in these days, when all nations have

Digitized by Google

'But the firmly held spear stops the rush that he tries,
And backward he totters, sinks over—and dies.'

Digitized by Google

By permission of the Trustees of the Wallace Collection.

Horace Vernet pinxt.

THE IMAGE OF WAR.

Digitized by Google

come to the conclusion that sports of all kind are half the training of officers and men, regimental races will ever be started again. We are afraid not. More than half a century ago the Continental opinion of our Cavalry was that they had beautiful hands but no heads. They would go anywhere they were told to, and the charge of the Light Brigade at Balaclava was often quoted. Anyway, after peace was made, France, Prussia, Austria and Russia went in keenly for steeplechases. They were organised for both officers and other ranks. It is certain that a man who can ride a good race over a steeplechase course can also ride a horse anywhere he likes. Possibly a hunt gives a man a better eye for a country, which is a very useful thing, but a race teaches him more about what a horse can do if ridden with judgment.

In the old days the system of training officers and men in the Riding School was bad. We never knew an officer, who had not learnt to ride prior to joining, ever turn out a really fine horseman. This is rather a sweeping assertion, and, of course, there were a few exceptions, but very few.

The recruit, on joining, was put on a horse, possibly for the first time in his life, pulled into a very uncomfortable position, and told to ride like that. As soon as the horse began to move the recruit would be hanging on to him round his neck, and then would get properly cursed. He was told to sit up straight, keep his elbows in, etc., etc. We always advocated that to start with, if a man could keep on the back of a horse, the position did not matter. As soon as the man got confidence and could stay on, it was easy to tell him he would look better riding in a certain position, and then he would very quickly get into the right position. There was a truly awful weapon of torture used in those days to make a man sit up straight—the back board. This was a stick placed between the back and the elbows. You felt like a trussed fowl, or, if possible, more uncomfortable. Every muscle in your body seemed to be useless. Our first riding-

Digitized by Google

master's favourite order to his roughriders was 'Bring in the long whip.' We once heard him asked the best way to train a remount. 'Oh, you can but 'it 'em,' was his answer. But, in spite of all, the horses in the regiment were a well-trained lot.

Readers will remember that some years ago Colonel Hall Walker, now Lord Wavertree, presented to the nation his breeding establishment, together with stallions and mares. This was a very valuable gift and, being well managed, has more than paid its way. The stud, unfortunately, is situated at Tully, near the Curragh. The new Free State officials propose to do away with it and cut the farm up into small holdings. By what right they can do this, we cannot see. The stud was not given to Ireland, but to the British Nation, and every effort ought to be made to preserve it for what Lord Wavertree intended.

The National Hunt Meeting at Cheltenham, on March 8 and 9, was a great success in spite of the weather, which was bad. The usual crowd turned up, including many soldiers and hunting people from all parts. The management are most generous. In the two days there are two races of £1,000 each and six of £500. This accounts for the big fields in nearly every race. In the National Hunt Race, which is for horses that have never won a race except point-to-point, and have to be ridden by amateur riders, a field of thirty-five faced the starter. People from Cheshire declared that their horse, Conjuror II., could not be beaten, and the result proved that they were right. This horse won Lady Dudley's Point-to-Point last season, was hunted regularly in Cheshire up to Christmas, mostly by the owner's daughter, and then

Digitized by Google

sent to Coulthwaite to be trained. He was ridden by the owner's son, and never put a foot wrong. We believe this was Mr. C. Dewhurst's first ride under rules.

NATIONAL HUNT STEEPLECHASE of 1,000 sovs, added to sweepstakes of 10 sovs. each. Four miles.

CONJUROR II., b g by Garb Or, dam by Juggler (Major C. Dewhurst), aged, 12st 3lb ..... Mr. C. P. Dewhurst 1
RED STAR IV., ch g, pedigree unknown, aged, 12st 3lb...Mr. H. A. Brown 2
BADMINTON II., b g by Fra Diavolo—Lotus Lily (Mr. S. Cochran), aged, 12st 3lb ..... Mr. Whitaker 3

The Grand Military

The Grand Military Meeting was hardly as interesting this year as on many occasions in the past. It could not be expected with so many Cavalry regiments on 'active service' in Ireland. There was the usual crowd, and H.M. the King was there the first day with several members of the Royal Family.

In the Gold Cup Mr. Sankey repeated his victory of last year on that good little mare, Pay Only, who this year had to carry the welter weight of 13 stone. Only four turned out for this race, which was disappointing.

Another disappointment was in the Allies' Race on the second day. Only Belgian officers competed, none of the other Allies being represented. We had hoped that French and Italian officers would have tried for this valuable race, and we are sure the Belgian officers would have been delighted to compete against them. Comte d'Oultremont repeated his victory of last year, only not on one of his own horses. Three of the six starters belonged to the same owner. We are afraid that next year the conditions, and possibly the value, of this race may be altered.

That good horse, Trespasser, won the Imperial Cup for the third time, a very fine performance.

Digitized by Google

Results—First day

THE SELLING STEEPLECHASE of 200 sovs. Two miles.

ARMADALE, b g by Hanover Square—Princess Ruby (Mr. E. J. H. Holley), aged, 11st 12lb .....Capt. Thompson 1
DICK BEHAN, ch g by Christian de Wet, dam by Cairo (Mr. H. B. Harvey), aged, 11st 7lb .....Owner 2
LIE LOW, ch g by Llangibby—Gently (Mr. V. Gilpin), aged, 11st 7lb Owner 3
Dancing Wave (Mr. Barthropp), aged, 12st 3lb.....Mr. P. Roberts 0
Joy Bells II. (Capt. H. C. Beaumont), aged, 11st 12lb.....Capt. Vivian 0

(Winner trained by Holley.)

Betting—9 to 4 agst ARMADALE, 5 to 2 agst Lie Low, 11 to 4 agst Dancing Wave, 6 to 1 agst Dick Behan, and 100 to 8 agst Joy Bells II.

Won by eight lengths; six lengths between second and third.

THE GRAND MILITARY GOLD CUP of 650 sovs. Three miles.

PAY ONLY, ch m by Walmsgate—Teddie III. (Mr. W. Filmer Sankey), aged, 13st.....Owner 1
BROKEN WAND, b or br c by Lonawand—Debris (Mr. Groves), 5 yrs, 11st 10lb .....Capt. Murland 2
DELIRIUM, b g by Barcadaile—Fever Heat (Col. G. Paynter), aged, 12st Owner 3
Rufus XXI. (Lt.-Col. G. F. H. Brooke), aged, 12st 7lb.....Major Crossley 0

(Winner trained by H. A. Brown, Atherstone.)

Betting—5 to 4 agst PAY ONLY, 2 to 1 agst Delirium, 7 to 2 agst Broken Wand, and 100 to 8 agst Rufus XXI.

Won by a length and a half; four lengths between second and third.

THE PAST AND PRESENT HANDICAP STEEPLECHASE of 260 sovs. Two miles and a half.

SILKEN PRINCE, b g by Silken Thomas, dam by Red Prince II. (Major P. Hornby), aged, 10st 9lb.....Mr. P. Dennis 1
GOLCAR, b h by The White Knight—Jonestown (Lord Savile), aged, 12st 2lb .....Captain Bennet 2
SERBAN, ch g by Aquascutum—Erzsike (Mr. H. A. Brown), aged, 11st 4lb Owner 3
Secretive (Lt.-Col. G. F. H. Brooke), aged, 11st 2lb.....Capt. Thompson 0
Greenogue (Capt. T. E. W. Brinckman), aged, 10st 9lb.....Owner 0
The Fly III. (Mr. E. J. H. Holley), aged, 11st .....Mr. J. Bristow 0
Royal Chancellor (Major W. E. Lyon), aged, 10st 8lb (car. 10st 9lb) Colonel R. Thompson 0
Gipsy Anne (Commander R. B. McCowen), 5 yrs 10st 5lb.....Mr. G. Elliott 0

(Winner trained by D. Rogers, Sparsholt.)

Betting—6 to 5 agst Golcar, 9 to 4 agst Serban, 9 to 2 agst SILKEN PRINCE, 10 to 1 agst Secretive, and 100 to 8 agst any other.

Won by five lengths; same between second and third.

Digitized by Google

A MAIDEN HUNTERS' STEEPLECHASE of 250 sovs. Two miles and a half.

LADDOUX, b g by Meleager, dam by Spook—Tricks (Capt. H. B. Latham), aged, 11st 4lb ..... Owner 1
BULGADEN, ch g by Bonaparte, dam by Barcadaile—Miss Emmett (Colonel G. Paynter), aged, 12st ..... Owner 2
KASAKI, b g by Fugleman—Fair Elinor (Capt. B. Hay), aged, 11st 11lb ..... Col. Little 3
Friday II. (Capt. R. Ansdell), aged, 11st 4lb ..... Mr. N. Palmer 0
Faithful Syce (Mr. A. Baillie), 6 yrs, 11st 7lb ..... Major Cavanagh 0
Scarlet Monk (Mr. A. E. Barlow), aged, 11st 4lb ..... Owner 0
Santox (Col. D. Bingham), aged, 11st 4lb ..... Capt. Leaf 0
Lord Clifton (Capt. E. Bingham), aged, 11st 7lb ..... Owner 0
Simon's Loch (Mr. F. A. Cairnes), aged, 11st 4lb ..... Owner 0
Scotch Mist II. (Mr. V. Delaforce), 6 yrs, 12st ..... Owner 0
Ranee IV. (Capt. K. E. Digby), aged, 11st 4lb ..... Owner 0
Susanne IV. (Capt. J. Everidge), aged, 11st 7lb ..... Capt. Murland 0
The Devil to Pay (Mr. H. W. Forester), aged, 11st 4lb ..... Owner 0
Corner Boy (Capt. R. Howard), aged, 11st 7lb ..... Mr. Learmonth 0
Sammy VIII. (Major James), aged, 11st 7lb ..... Owner 0
A New Suit (Mr. H. Lumsden), aged, 11st 7lb ..... Owner 0
Paddy Ryan (Lt.-Col. A. K. Main), aged, 12st ..... Mr. Shield 0
Last Off II. (Col. H. S. Pearson), 6 yrs, 11st 7lb ..... Owner 0
Bachelor's Boy (Major C. T. Walwyn), aged, 11st 7lb ..... Mr. Hedges 0
Starlight XX. (Capt. M. Wardell), aged, 11st 4lb ..... Owner 0
Karind (Mr. P. Williams), aged, 11st 11lb ..... Owner 0

(Winner trained privately.)

Betting—5 to 2 agst Bulgaden, 5 to 1 agst Santox, 7 to 1 agst Susanne IV, 10 to 1 each agst Faithful Syce, Lord Clifton, The Devil to Pay, and Kasaki, 100 to 8 agst Karind, and 20 to 1 agst LADDOUX or any other.

Won by twelve lengths; three-parts of a length between second and third.

Results—Second day

THE UNITED SERVICES' SELLING HANDICAP STEEPLECHASE of 200 sovs. Two miles.

CARRIGRUE, ch g by Cannock Chase II.—Rose Amber (Capt. H. de Trafford), aged, 11st 5lb ..... Owner 1
HAPPY JACK II., ch g by Lactantius—Gladys III. (Capt. J. B. Powell), aged, 11st 10lb ..... Owner 2
DAISY CUTTER, ch g by William Rufus—Lady Daisy Cutter (Mr. R. N. Willett), aged, 11st ..... Mr. R. Pulford 3
Armadale (Mr. E. J. H. Holley), aged, 12st 8lb ..... Col. Little 0
Broadwood (Capt. C. Reynard), aged, 11st 11lb ..... Owner 0
Mont Royal II. (Major T. F. Cavenagh), aged, 11st 3lb ..... Owner 0
Whiston (Mr. J. Pendarves), aged, 10st 4lb ..... Owner 0

(Winner trained by W. Payne, Farthingstone.)

Betting—9 to 4 agst Daisy Cutter, 9 to 2 agst CARRIGRUE, 5 to 1 each agst Armadale and Happy Jack II., 6 to 1 agst Whiston, and 10 to 1 agst any other.

Won by eight lengths; a bad third. Broadwood was the only other to finish.

Digitized by Google

THE GRAND MILITARY HANDICAP STEEPLECHASE of 400 sovs. Two miles and a half.

LOCH ALLEN, br g by Lochryan—Kirstie (Capt. R. C. G. Vivian), aged, 12st 6lb .....Owner 1
SECRETIVE, b g by Ben Alder or Pam—Secret (Lt.-Col. G. F. H. Brooke), aged, 12st 11b .....Col. Little 2
ANIMOSITY, br g by Myram—Anna Boleyn (Capt. H. de Trafford), aged, 12st 5lb .....Owner 3
Down Under (Major T. F. Cavenagh), aged, 11st 10lb.....Owner 0

(Winner trained by Gore, Michel Grove.)

Betting—5 to 4 on LOCH ALLEN, 3 to 1 agst Animosity, 5 to 1 agst Secretive, and 7 to 1 agst Down Under.

Won by six lengths; three lengths between second and third.

THE ALLIES' GRAND STEEPLECHASE of 800 sovs. Two miles and a half.

PORTMORE, br g by Meleager—Wild Rag (Capt. A. Loewenstein), aged, 11st 7lb .....Comte d'Oultremont 1
DENVER (Commandant A. Van Derton), aged, 11st 7lb...Lieut. Van Derton 2
BRUTUS II., b g by Walmsgate—Miss Kendle (Capt. A. Loewenstein), aged, 12st .....Lieut. A. Benoit 3
Chevalier Bayard (Capt. A. Loewenstein), aged, 12st....Lieut. Schoutheete 0
Cragus (Lieut. H. Goode), 5 yrs, 11st 7lb (car. 12st).....Owner 0
Maraschino II. (M. Jacques Wittouch), 5 yrs, 11st 7lb (car. 12st 7lb) Lieut. Jaiffier 0

(Winner trained by W. Payne, Farthingstone.)

Betting—11 to 10 on PORTMORE, 5 to 1 agst Cragus, 6 to 1 agst Denver, 7 to 1 agst Chevalier Bayard, and 10 to 1 agst any other.

Winner finished alone, all others falling, but Denver and Brutus II. were remounted and completed the course.

THE IMPERIAL CUP (OPEN HANDICAP HURDLE) RACE of 1,100 sovs. Two miles.

TRESPASSER, b h by Kildare II.—Intrusive (Mr. P. F. Heybourn), 6 yrs, 12st 7lb .....G. Duller 1
COUNT ROSS, ch c by Rossendale—Gold Riach (Capt. A. S. Wilson), 5 yrs, 10st 11b.....G. Pellerin 2
HENRY B., b g by Henry the First—Frusquin Belle (Sir A. Bowen), 6 yrs, 10st 10lb.....M. Tighe 3
White Heat (Lady Watts), 6 yrs, 12st 5lb.....A. Escott 0
Double Up (Mr. A. B. Walker), 5 yrs, 12st 2lb.....C. Hawkins 0
Lukeston (Mr. E. H. Tattersall), aged, 11st 5lb.....J. Reardon 0
Bumble Bee (Mr. W. H. Dixon), 4 yrs, 11st 3lb.....Capt. Bennet 0
Halberdier (Lord Denman), 6 yrs, 11st.....F. B. Rees 0

Digitized by Google

Wildfellow (Major W. H. Milburn), aged, 10st 5lb.....L. B. Rees 0
Fragola (Mrs. A. Blain), 6 yrs, 10st 11b.....D. Dick 0
Tomahawk (Mr. M. Weil), 4 yrs, 10st.....T. Leader 0

(Winner trained by J. M. Bell, Epsom.)

Betting—6 to 4 agst TRESPASSER, 9 to 4 agst Bumble Bee, 8 to 1 each agst Count Ross and Halberdier, 10 to 1 agst Double Up, 100 to 8 agst White Heat, 100 to 6 agst Tomahawk, and 20 to 1 agst any other.

Won by three lengths; four lengths between second and third.

THE TALLY-HO HUNTERS' STEEPLECHASE of 250 sovs. Three miles.

CRIMSON RAMBLER VI. (Major M. C. C. Harrison), aged, 10st 11b
Mr. P. Palmer 1
GRENHURST, ch g by Oppressor—Royal Mary (Col. G. Paynter), 6 yrs, 11st 12lb .....Owner 2
CARADOC II., b g by Ben Wyvis—Lady Hatteraick (Mr. Gibbons), aged 11st 11lb .....Owner 3
Hermit's Delight (Capt. A. Bethell), aged, 11st 2lb.....Capt. Vivian 0
Cottier (Mr. R. L. McCreery), aged, 11st 2lb.....Owner 0
Wave's Crest (Major T. F. Cavenagh), aged, 10st 9lb.....Owner 0
Susanne IV. (Capt. J. Everidge), aged, 10st 9lb.....Mr. Learmouth 0
Criss Cross (Mr. H. Forester), aged, 10st 4lb.....Mr. Eastman 0
Sheepshead (Capt. W. Murland), aged, 11st 4lb.....Owner 0
Last Off II. (Capt. H. S. Pearson), 6 yrs, 10st 9lb.....Owner 0
Karind (Mr. P. Williams), aged, 11st 3lb.....Mr. Lumsden 0

(Winner trained privately.)

Betting—3 to 1 agst Sheepshead, 7 to 2 agst Hermit's Delight, 4 to 1 agst Caradoc II., 7 to 1 agst Karind, 8 to 1 agst Wave's Crest, 10 to 1 agst Grenhurst, and 100 to 8 agst CRIMSON RAMBLER VI. or any other.

Won by a short head; three lengths between second and third.

THE MAIDEN STEEPLECHASE of 200 sovs. Two miles and a half.

NED CARVER, b g by Crathorne, dam's pedigree unknown (Mr. E. H. Tattersall), aged, 12st 7lb.....Mr. Sankey 1
WAVE'S CREST, ch h by Tidal Wave—Silk Worm (Major T. F. Cavenagh), aged, 12st 2lb .....Owner 2
CIVVY LIFE (Mr. M. Beresford), 5 yrs, 11st 4lb.....Mr. W. Heath 3
Riverston (Capt. W. J. Cooper), aged, 11st 11lb.....Owner 0
Vendetta II. (Mr. G. F. Elliott), aged, 12st 2lb.....Col. Little 0
Our Village (Mr. G. W. Holt), aged, 11st 11lb.....Owner 0
Cold Steel II. (Mr. Napier), aged, 12st 7lb.....Owner 0
Barnapeke (Capt. C. Reynard), 6 yrs, 11st 11lb.....Owner 0
Mischa Big (Mr. J. S. Starling), aged, 11st 11lb.....Owner 0

Digitized by Google

Last Chance (Major C. T. Walwyn), aged, 12st 2lb.....Mr. Hedges 0
Lady Jane VII. (Mr. A. A. Ward), aged, 11st 11lb.....Owner 0
Starlight XX. (Capt. Wardell), aged, 11st 11lb.....Owner 0

(Winner trained by Poole, Lewes.)

Betting—Evens NED CARVER, 6 to 1 each agst Wave's Crest and Vendetta II., 8 to 1 agst Starlight XX., and 10 to 1 agst any other.

Won by fifteen lengths; two lengths between second and third. Riverston was the only other to finish.

The Grand National

There were many falls in the Grand National this year. Thirty-two horses competed, and only three got round without a fall. Two others, however, completed the course. The two horses that had been favourites in the betting for some time both fell at the first fence—Southampton and Shaun Spadah. The ground was hard and, owing to rain in the morning, was rather slippery near some of the jumps, which may account for the amount of grief.

GRAND NATIONAL STEEPLECHASE of 50 sovs each and £5,000 added. Four miles and 856 yards.

Mr. Kershaw's MUSIC HALL, b g by Cliftonhall—Molly, aged, 11st 8lbs L. B. Rees 1
Mr. Widger's DRIFTER, br g by Raft—Katie, aged, 10st—W. Watkinson 2
Mr. Bulteel's TAFFITUS, b g by Eavesdropper—Faithful Lassie, aged, 11st T. Leader 3

Sergeant Murphy and A Double Escape also completed the course. Music Hall started at 100 to 9.

Point-to-Point Races

The 2nd Life Guards held their point-to-point races in conjunction with the Grafton Hunt Meeting. Captain Beaumont won the Light-weight Race, and Captain Bethel the Heavy-weight Race.

An interesting feature in the Grafton Hunt Race was the performance of Prince Henry, who made all the running and only got beat on the post by less than a length.

Digitized by Google

The 10th Hussars' Race was held at the Belvoir Hunt Meeting, and Prince Henry again had to put up with second place, being just beaten by Mr. Stewart on Ruan. Fourteen starters.

Army Point-to-Point

The Army Point-to-Point Races were held on March 27th at Arborfield Cross, in the Garth country, over a stiff course, with the following results :—

THE PRINCE OF WALES'S CUP (LIGHT WEIGHTS).

The Hon. R. C. Cubitt's LIMERICK (Capt. Shaw Stewart)	1
Capt. D. M. B. Hall's WITCH II.	2
Capt. J. A. Paton's PAX VOBIS	3

Won easily. The winner and the second represented the Coldstream Guards and the third the Carabiniers.

EARL BEATTY'S CUP (WELTER WEIGHTS).

Captain W. S. Cornwallis's TREGEAGLE	1
Major R. Houston's KELLY	2
Col.-Com. A. E. W. Harman's WARRIOR	3

Won by two lengths. The winner represented the Royal Scots Greys, the second the Royal Dragoons, and the third the First Cavalry Brigade.

EARL HAIG'S CUP (FOR CHARGERS).

Lieut.-Col. Malise Graham's RED SEAL	1
Capt. P. J. C. Honner's SALLY	2
Capt. H. R. Kerr's CHRISTINE	3

Won by two lengths. The winner represented the 16th Lancers, the second the R.H.A., and the third the R.A.S.C.

EARL OF CAVAN'S CUP (PAST AND PRESENT).

Lt. J. A. G. Emmett's BALLYRAFTON	1
Capt. H. A. Pelly's SPOOK	2
Col.-Com. A. E. W. Harman's JOCK	3

Won easily. The winner represented the 1st Life Guards, the second the 7th Hussars, and the third the 1st Cavalry Brigade.

GARTH HUNT RACE.

Capt. H. C. H. Eden's CYRANO	1
Major H. Charrington's PEGGY	2
Major F. Anderson's GLORY	3

A very good finish. The winner represented the R.F.A., the second the 12th Lancers, and the third the Black Watch.

Digitized by Google

There were 25 starters for the Prince of Wales's Cup, and the other races were well supported. There were seven roads to cross during the races, which was rather too many. An objection to Colonel Malise Graham's horse, for going the wrong side of a flag, was overruled.

At the Bicester Hunt Point-to-Point Races, Prince Henry, 10th Royal Hussars, won the Hunt race on Rathgarogue, beating Colonel Little on Solomon by four lengths. Colonel Tomkinson, Royals, won the adjoining Hunts Race at the same meeting.

Hunting

The past season has rather suffered from all manner of weather. To start with, the ground was so hard and dry, no scent, and really not safe to gallop a horse on. Then came frost and snow, later floods, and to top up with the outbreak of foot-and-mouth disease which prevented many packs from hunting part or all of their country.

There is also a serious outcry against the danger of sending horses to the meet owing to the slippery state of the roads. The tarred road is perfect for motors, but for the valuable hunter it is a danger. Some people declare that, in a short time, no one will be able to get second horsemen. They have to spend most of their time on the slippery roads, and, as a body, are coming to the conclusion that the game is not worth the candle. We have heard of several men who now go to a meet in a horse motor-van with their hunter behind them. This sounds ideal to some people, but we always thought the ride to the meet on a good hack was part of the enjoyment of a day's hunting.

Polo

We publish an article by that well-known polo player, General de Lisle, on the vexed question of the measurement

Digitized by Google

of polo ponies. We are afraid that what he advocates, the measurement of ponies for the best tournaments but not for others, would lead to confusion. We quite agree with him that measurement from the back instead of from the withers would be much better.

In a letter to the 'Polo Magazine' from Colonel E. D. Miller, he admits that the game would be a much better one if no pony over 14·3 was allowed to play. He then goes on to show that it would be nearly impossible, without doing harm to the game, to insist on measurement of ponies. One of his arguments is that a large proportion of the ponies now playing would be eliminated from the game. This could be got round by allowing horses already registered at Hurlingham to continue playing. Secondly, he states that, owing to the war and other causes, there are not enough 14·3 ponies to go round. The general idea seems to be that things will arrange themselves without going back to the 14·3 standard. No one will play big horses if they can get ponies, and if dangerous animals are barred things in time will come right.

Shooting at Home

Gun dogs of all kinds were in great evidence at Cruft's Dog Show. The Duke of Grafton, who judged Labrador retrievers, had a very fine entry, and also a most difficult one to judge. H.M. the King entered a team of three, and one of them, a very nice dog, took two first prizes. Mrs. Quintin Dick, as usual, did well.

The Golden Retrievers were judged by Major Palmer, late 10th Hussars. There was a big entry, and this breed is becoming very popular. They are nice, friendly house dogs; but in the field at present they are slow and soft, and, until they get more dash, will never be able to compete with Labradors or flat coats at Retriever Trials. This is the opinion

Digitized by Google

we formed after judging at the Golden Retriever Trials, which were held for the first time this last season.

There were also big classes of Pointers, Setters and Spaniels, and the show was a great success. Mr. Cruft has been wise to cut it down from three days to a two-day show.

Coursing

A good Double event

At Altcar, Lord Tweedmouth, late of the Royal Horse Guards, brought off a good double, his dog, 'Guard's Brigade,' winning the Waterloo Cup, and with 'Tricky Lass' he secured the Waterloo Purse.

Army Athletic Association

This Association is in a strong financial position, in spite of so many regiments being out of England. The balance credit amounts to over £2,000. They look forward to a good time in the present year when most of the troops will have returned from Ireland, 'any way for a time.'

The Endurance Test in America

The third annual 300-mile endurance test was held in America at the end of last year. These tests were originated to decide what is the best class of horse for speed and endurance suitable for Cavalry remounts. Points were given for speed and condition at the end of the test. There were seventeen entries, but only six completed the course.

The horses had to do 60 miles a day for five days, regardless of weather. Forty points were given for speed and 60 points for condition at the end of the race. Every horse had to carry 245 lbs. or over, which is considered to be the average for a Cavalry horse. The riders had to feed and care for their own horses.

Digitized by Google

The race was won by Crabbet, a pure-bred Arabian, who came in second, but on points just won by one point, beating the thoroughbred Vagrant. The third was what is called in America Arab-standard-bred. Two of the others that finished were thoroughbred.

The course apparently was severe, and on the fourth day the last 14 miles were over hard and slippery roads.

India

We hear from the Queen's Bays, now quartered at Bangalore, that in February they held a very sporting Boxing Tournament, confined to the regiment. The events received large entries and the boxing was above the average.

Madras District Gymnkhana Football Tournament

1st Round. Bye.

2nd Round. The Queen's Bays, 3 goals, *v.* 145th Battery, R.F.A., 2 goals.

Semi-final. The Queen's Bays, 7 goals, *v.* Royal Army Ordnance Corps, 0.

Final. Played at Bangalore, February 21, 1922. Queen's Bays, 7 goals, *v.* Anglo-Indian Athletic Club, 1 goal.

After the final, H.E. Lady Willingdon presented the winners with the magnificent silver cup; each member of the team received a silver tankard.

It is of interest to note that this is the first time for twenty-four years that cup has been won by a Cavalry regiment, the last Cavalry regiment to win this trophy being the 10th (Prince of Wales's Own) Hussars in 1898.

Polo Tournament, Madras

Runners-up in the Prince of Wales's Commemoration Tournament; winners of the Rajah of Venugopole Challenge Cup, The Queen's Bays.

Digitized by Google

Team: No. 1, Captain R. T. Barnard, M.C.; No. 2, Captain J. J. Kingstone, D.S.O.; No. 3, Lieutenant G. H. Fanshawe; Back, Captain and Adjutant E. D. Fanshawe.

We are indebted to the 'Chief Scout,' Gen. Sir R. Baden-Powell, for a very good picture of Pig-sticking that appears in this number of the Journal.

Palestine

A successful Polo Tournament was decided at Ludd a short time ago. In the final, the 5th Dragoon Guards were beaten by a Ludd team by three goals to two.

By permission of Lieut.-Colonel Marchant, 5th Dragoon Guards, a most successful Boxing Tournament has just been held. The arrangements were perfect and the bouts keenly contested, some of the boxing being of really good class.

There has been very little Sport in Palestine, beyond shooting, owing to the excessive rains for the past three months.

Partridge shooting came to an end on the 1st of February, and although no large bags were obtained a considerable number of birds were accounted for during the season.

Many more woodcock were shot this year than last—particularly at Roshpina.

Snipe shooting is in full swing and a considerable number of duck have been shot in South Palestine—quail are just coming in, and with them the last shooting of the season.

Most Sports and Polo meetings are being held at the end of this month and April.

Digitized by Google

The Ludd Hunt

The Ludd Hunt, started soon after the war, is now hunting the country round Ramleh, Ruhon and Bir Salem. Lieut.-Colonel Singleton, H.L.I., is at present master, and Captain Thwaytes, R.A.V.C., huntsman. The pack consists of eight couple of hunting hounds, of which two and a half couple are foxhounds and two couple German pointers. The pack, up to date, has shown very good sport. On December 22 a jackal was put up at Bir Salem, and hounds ran at a fast pace to Ramleh, a point of about 8 miles. On Boxing Day a large field met the pack at Ramleh, many of the Government and police officials from Jerusalem coming down for the day. Falls were numerous, as the going was very heavy.

The country is a difficult one to ride over, and a bold, clever horse is required to negotiate the cactus hedges and orange groves.

Big Game Shooting

A short time ago we read an account of a tiger shoot held recently in India. Several tigers were accounted for, but one was hit in the ribs and managed to get away. The account went on to say that this tiger was left to the shikaris to account for. This in the old days would have been considered very unsportsmanlike. Englishmen do not usually leave wounded animals to the tender mercies of natives.

A rather exciting form of sport is represented in the reproduction of that fine picture, 'The Image of War,' now in the Wallace Collection, by the famous French artist, Horace Vernet. The lions are putting up a good fight, and some of the Arabs seem to be having a bad time. The dash, vigour and accuracy in detail in this picture are extraordinary.

We hear that the Government have again decided to kill off the game in Zululand, hoping that the fly will then

Digitized by Google

disappear and so stop the spread of disease to domesticated animals.

It is by no means certain that the fly would disappear, although it is an old superstition ' No game, no fly.'

We hope that, if it is decided to kill off the game, better and more humane methods will be arranged than the late big drive in Zululand.

Cavalry War Memorial

We are able to announce that the Committee has taken up the question of various sites in London with the authorities of H.M. Office of Works, who have the matter under consideration.

The 9th Lancers are raising a subscription from officers, both past and present, for the Memorial Fund. We hope other regiments, which may not have done so already, will follow suit.

Printed by Eyre and Spottiswoode, Ltd., His Majesty's Printers, East Harding Street, E.C. 4.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

UNIV. OF CALIFORNIA

Digitized by Google

From the picture by J. P. Beadle in the United Service Club.

THE CHARGE AT EL MUGHAR, November 13th, 1917.

THE

CAVALRY JOURNAL

JULY 1922

THE CHARGE OF THE 6TH MOUNTED BRIGADE AT EL MUGHAR, NOVEMBER 13, 1917

THE picture depicts the leading squadron of the Bucks Yeomanry at the moment of reaching its objective. It was led by Captain Bulteel, D.S.O., M.C., who has his sword in his left hand. The officer on his left on the black horse is Lieut. Perkins, M.C. The officer in the centre behind the dead Turk is Lieut. Manning, M.C.

Swinging up the hill in rear of and to the right of this squadron is Captain the Hon. Neil Primrose's squadron; and beyond, the Regimental Head-Quarters, Bucks Yeomanry, with the 3rd squadron of the regiment. The village of El Mughar is seen away to their right.

The right flank of the Dorset Yeomanry is seen breasting the hill on the left of the Bucks.

A full description of this feat of arms appeared in the CAVALRY JOURNAL for October, 1921.

In the course of the lecture delivered early in the present year at the Royal United Service Institution on 'Reflections on the Cavalry Campaign in Palestine,' Colonel Commandant G. A. Weir, C.M.G., D.S.O., Commanding 3rd Cavalry Brigade, said: 'There is one outstanding tactical lesson brought out by this campaign, and that is that, where no physical obstacle

Digitized by Google

exists (such as barbed wire), cavalry can charge riflemen and machine guns in positions with every prospect of success.

'On no less than 12 occasions during these operations did cavalry charge infantry and machine guns in position and in ten of these actions were entirely successful. Of the two which can be classed as unsuccessful, one was the mounted attack attempted at Irbid, in which a squadron of the 2nd Lancers of the 10th Cavalry Brigade failed to reach the Turks, who were ensconced behind the walls of the village, and, after suffering casualties, were compelled to hold what ground they had gained until morning. The Turks retreated during the night.

'The other partial failure, the last action in the campaign, at Haritan, north of Aleppo, had such a moral effect on the Turks that they withdrew 18 miles during the following night.'

Though in the late war few massed mounted attacks were seen on the scale of those of Seydlitz, Murat and Kellermann, of Lord Lake in India, or of Lord French in the relief of Kimberley, the results of our cavalry charges were no less sudden, decisive and far-reaching; but even as a battle is only an incident in a campaign and there may not be one big fight in months of weary war work, so a charge, though a prominent part, is only one part of the function of cavalry; yet it may prove the only possible means of winning a battle, and such was the case at El Mughar.

The account of the Fourth Phase of the Operations of the Mounted Troops of the Egyptian Expeditionary Force in 1918 will be completed in the next number of the Journal.

Digitized by Google

THE REDUCTION OF THE CAVALRY

THE reduction of the Cavalry establishment, in conformity with the plan of amalgamation outlined in March last by the Secretary of State for War in the House of Commons, is now in process of being carried out.

As regards the Cavalry, the 1st Life Guards are to be reduced to two squadrons, and the 2nd Life Guards to two squadrons, the four squadrons to be amalgamated into one regiment, 'The Life Guards (1st and 2nd).' The same principle underlies the reduction of the Cavalry of the Line —a reduction which means in effect the abridgment of the establishment by the equivalent of no fewer than eight Cavalry regiments. The four senior regiments, the Royals, the Scots Greys, the King's Dragoon Guards and the Bays, survive intact, but of the remaining six regiments of the Corps of Dragoons, the three senior are to be reduced to two squadrons and the three junior to one squadron, and from the amalgamation of one reduced senior with one reduced junior regiment, the net result is a series of composite regiments of three squadrons each. This arrangement has the double merit of preserving the identity of the curtailed units, while at the same time not impairing them to a degree below which it would be impossible to expand them, if necessary, at any future time.

This process of amalgamation and reduction gives the following Cavalry establishment:

Household Cavalry.

Royal Horse Guards (reduced by two Hotchkiss troops); The Life Guards (1st and 2nd).

Digitized by Google

Cavalry of the Line.

Dragoons: King's Dragoon Guards; Queen's Bays; 3rd/6th Dragoon Guards, 4th/7th Dragoon Guards, 5th/6th Dragoons; The Royal Dragoons; Royal Scots Greys.

Hussars: 3rd Hussars; 4th Hussars; 7th Hussars; 8th Hussars; 10th Hussars; 11th Hussars; 13th/18th Hussars; 14th/20th Hussars and 15th/19th Hussars.

Lancers: 9th Lancers; 12th Lancers; 16th/5th Lancers; 17th/21st Lancers.

The problem of reduction was a difficult one because, if the Army Council had proceeded on the principle of selecting regiments for reduction in their order of seniority as a whole, all the Lancers would have suffered reduction, the Hussars would have been left with two regiments only intact, and the Dragoons and Dragoon Guards would have escaped reduction altogether. Hence the Army Council proceeded on the more equitable principle of reduction according to seniority in each individual corps or, in other words, they selected for reduction the last raised regiments in each corps, working backwards until they had secured the requisite equivalent of eight regiments, and then amalgamating the reduced regiments—this last process being conducted as far as possible by reference to the existing linked system.

These amalgamations, unfortunately, of necessity involve dispensing prematurely with the services of a large number of officers and other ranks, and much earnest care and attention have been bestowed on evolving as fair a principle of selection and rejection of personnel as possible.

The reconstitution of the squadrons of the recently disbanded 5th Lancers, 21st Lancers, 19th Hussars and 20th Hussars, in accordance with the much welcomed approval of the King to the restoration of those four regiments, is now in progress. The Carabiniers, 7th Dragoon Guards, and Inniskilling Dragoons are now being reduced to one squadron preparatory to going overseas next trooping season to join

Digitized by Google

the 3rd, 4th and 5th Dragoon Guards respectively for amalgamation, and, similarly, the 18th Hussars in India are now engaged in reducing to one squadron for embarkation this autumn to the United Kingdom where the squadron will be amalgamated with the 13th Hussars at Aldershot.

The Cavalry establishment will thus suffer reductions to the equivalent of nine regiments; but by the adoption of the amalgamation scheme, disbandment has been avoided, and the identity of all the regiments saved to the extent of at least one squadron, sufficient at all events not only as a nucleus for restoration, if practicable, at any future time, but to keep alive the best traditions of the regiment.

CAVALRY WAR MEMORIAL

The Committee of the CAVALRY WAR MEMORIAL FUND regret that so far they have not succeeded in obtaining a site in the Mall, and it appears unlikely that there will be any available in that neighbourhood. They are at present negotiating for a site near the Marble Arch. The subscriptions already received or promised amount to approximately £10,000.

Digitized by Google

DATES OF RAISING THE EXISTING REGULAR REGIMENTS OF THE BRITISH CAVALRY

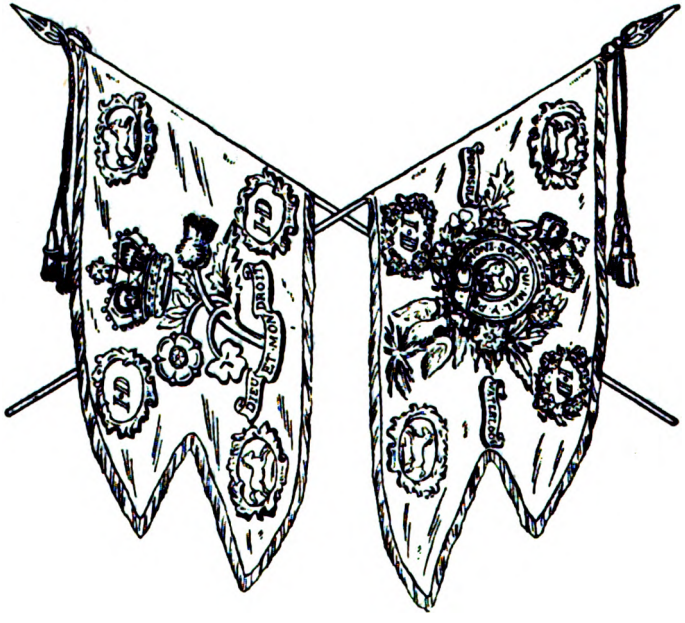
Regiment.	Date of Raising.	Remarks.
1st Life Guards - -	January 26, 1661 -	The regiment traces back to two troops of Horse (Cavaliers), who had followed King Charles II. into exile. In 1788, 1 troop of Life Guards and 1 troop of Horse Grenadier Guards became the 1st Regiment of Life Guards.
2nd Life Guards -	January 26, 1661 -	The regiment traces back to two troops of Horse (Cavaliers), who had followed King Charles II. into exile. In 1788 the Queen's troop of Life Guards and the Scots troop of Horse Guards became the 2nd Regiment of Life Guards.
Royal Horse Guards -	January 26, 1661 -	Raised from men of the Royal Regiment of Horse, formed from one of the Parliament Regiments known as Colonel Unton Crook's Regiment of Horse, which had been disbanded in December, 1660.
1st Dragoon Guards -	June 6, 1685 - -	Became 2nd Horse. 1st D. Gs. in 1746.
2nd Dragoon Guards -	June 20, 1685 -	Became 3rd Horse. 2nd D. Gs. in 1746.
3rd Dragoon Guards -	June 23, 1685 -	Became 4th Horse. 3rd D. Gs in 1746.
4th Dragoon Guards -	July 28, 1685 -	Became 5th Horse, and in 1746, 1st Irish Horse. 4th D. Gs. in 1788.
5th Dragoon Guards -	July 29, 1685 -	Became 6th Horse, and in 1746, 2nd Irish Horse. 5th D. Gs. in 1788.

Digitized by Google

Regiment.	Date of Raising.	Remarks.
6th Dragoon Guards	July 30, 1685	Became 7th Horse, and in 1746, 3rd Irish Horse. 6th D. Gs. in 1788.
7th Dragoon Guards	December 31, 1688	Became 8th Horse, and in 1746, 4th Irish Horse. 7th D. Gs. in 1788.
1st Royal Dragoons	1661, as the Tangier Horse.	Became Dragoons 19th November, 1693.
2nd Dragoons	November 25, 1681	The Regiment traces back to troops of Horse and Dragoons to 1678.
3rd Hussars	August 2, 1685 (Dragoons.)	Became Light Dragoons, 1816; Hussars, 1861 (the 3rd obtained precedence of the 4th on account of its being the Queen Consort's Regiment of Dragoons, and its men having served in other troops of Horse prior to those of the 4th).
4th Hussars	July 17, 1685 (Dragoons.)	Became Light Dragoons, 1816; Hussars, 1861.
5th Lancers	1858	The 5th Dragoons were disbanded in 1799.
6th Dragoons	June 20, 1689	Raised as Dragoons.
7th Hussars	November 30, 1690 (Dragoons.)	Became Light Dragoons, 1783; Hussars, 1805; trace back to independent troops of Horse and Dragoons to 1689.
8th Hussars	February 1, 1693 (Dragoons.)	Became Light Dragoons, 1775; Hussars, 1822.
9th Lancers	July 22, 1715 (Dragoons.)	Light Dragoons, 1783; Lancers, 1816.
10th Hussars	July 22, 1715 (Dragoons.)	Light Dragoons, 1783; Hussars, 1806.
11th Hussars	July 22, 1715 (Dragoons.)	Light Dragoons, 1783; Hussars, 1840.
12th Lancers	July 22, 1715 (Dragoons.)	Light Dragoons, 1768; Lancers, 1816.
13th Hussars	July 22, 1715 (Dragoons.)	Light Dragoons, 1783; Hussars, 1861.
14th Hussars	July 22, 1715 (Dragoons.)	Light Dragoons, 1776; Hussars, 1861.
15th Hussars	March 10, 1759	Raised as Light Dragoons; became Hussars, 1806.
16th Lancers	August 11, 1759	Raised as Light Dragoons; became Lancers, 1816.

Digitized by Google

Regiment.	Date of Raising.	Remarks.
17th Lancers - -	November 7, 1759 -	Raised as Light Dragoons; became Lancers, 1822.
18th Hussars - -	February 23, 1858	Raised as Hussars.
19th Hussars - -	1861 -	From Hon. East India Company 1st European Cavalry.
20th Hussars - -	1861 -	From Hon. East India Company 2nd European Cavalry.
21st Lancers - -	1861 - (Hussars.)	From Hon. East India Company 3rd European Cavalry; became Lancers, 1896.



Digitized by Google

THE CAVALRY SPIRIT

One of the Colonels-in-Chief of British Cavalry Regiments, a foreign Monarch, in course of conversation recently with a member of the Cavalry Journal Committee, said as follows:

He quite realised that reduction in national expenditure was an urgent necessity and that economy had to be put into force in every possible direction, but at the same time he feared lest economy might be pressed to a point where it ceased to be real and became a false economy.

His anxiety was the greater because he felt convinced that those outside the army, and indeed a great many in it, did not realise the enormous value that good cavalry like ours possesses for the army as a whole.

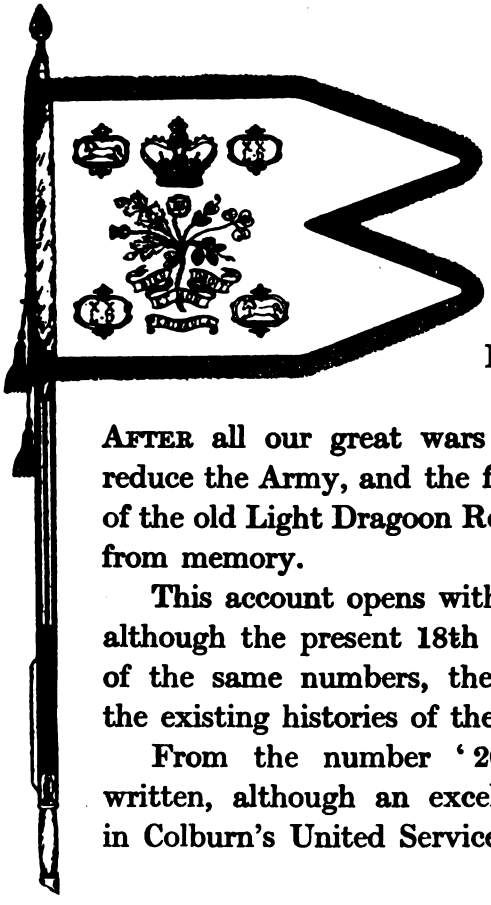
He feared that those who were responsible for this reduction regarded it largely from the tactical point of view in Flanders battle fields and from the financial point of view of the Ministers of the Treasury, but as a soldier he knew personally that the true fighting spirit and self-sacrificing discipline of an army in all its branches was, in the past, bred in the cavalry, and that it spread itself from that source into the infantry and associated arms.

The cavalry spirit often gave life and soul to an army which otherwise were a dead machine in some countries.

Take from the Cavalry units their wonderful *esprit de corps* and you destroy in a day that which had been built up by successive generations of good soldiers, that which no amount of staff training or of mechanical invention could adequately replace.

A. L.

Digitized by Google



DISBANDED CAVALRY REGIMENTS

20TH TO 25TH LIGHT DRAGOONS

By MAJOR H. G. PARKYN, O.B.E.

AFTER all our great wars it has been the policy to largely reduce the Army, and the following is a short account of some of the old Light Dragoon Regiments that have long disappeared from memory.

This account opens with the 20th Light Dragoons, because although the present 18th and 19th Hussars had predecessors of the same numbers, their records have been published in the existing histories of the present regiments.

From the number '20' upward no history has been written, although an excellent account of the 20th appears in Colburn's United Service Magazine for 1876.*

20TH REGIMENT OF LIGHT DRAGOONS.

First Regiment (1760–63).—The date of Raising of this Regiment, according to Fortescue, is 1760, but in a list of the Land Forces of 1760 the date is given as November 7, 1759.

The Regiment was raised in Ireland and entitled Twentieth Regiment of (or Corps of) Light Dragoons; they were commanded by Sir James Caldwell, Bt., whose commission is dated January 12, 1760.

* A fuller history of the 20th will be given in a future number of the CAVALRY JOURNAL.

Digitized by Google

After a short existence the Regiment was disbanded in 1763.

Trimen states that the Regiment when raised was entitled 20th Inniskilling Light Dragoons.

The uniform was red with yellow facings, which are said to have been changed to black later.

Second Regiment (1779–83).—Formed in 1779 out of the Light Troops of the 3rd Dragoon Guards and 6th Inniskilling and 11th Dragoons. This Corps, which saw no service, disappeared in 1783; its uniform was scarlet with yellow facings and silver lace. Its commanding officer had been Major-General R. P. Philipson.

Third Regiment (1791–1818).—The Jamaica Light Dragoons, raised for special service in that Island in 1791 and paid for out of the Colonial revenue. It returned to England in 1802 and the title Jamaica was discontinued.

Much information regarding the subsequent service of the Regiment can be obtained from 'The Hussar' by The Revd. G. R. Gleig, which is the account of the life of Serjeant Landshiet, who joined the Regiment in Guildford after having seen service in several foreign Hussar Regiments in the pay of the British Government. He served with the Regiment in the capture of the Cape of Good Hope and later in the expedition to Monte Video and Buenos Ayres.

In the landing at Monte Video two squadrons of the Regiment distinguished themselves by charging and capturing three enemies' guns.

In 1808 the 'Troops' that had been employed in South America went to Portugal, and at the action of Vimiera carried out a very gallant and successful charge, although at its close they found themselves in a field surrounded by a high fence, with the only exit held by the French, and but for the timely arrival of the 50th Regiment their plight would have been precarious in the extreme. In this action the Regiment lost its Colonel—Charles Taylor. The

Digitized by Google

remaining Squadrons of the Regiment had been employed during this period in Naples and Sicily and one squadron was present at the Battle of Maida. The Regiment also took part in the disastrous expedition of 1807 to Egypt, and in 1808 was in Sicily, and was at the capture of Genoa, 1814.

Two Dragoons of the Regiment, named Jacob Longman and John Green, were awarded a medal by order of Sir John Stuart as a mark of his approbation of their gallant conduct in cutting their way (when entrusted with orders) through the enemy's infantry, who had disembarked on the morning of the 18th of September 1810, in the neighbourhood of Messina. The Medals had the following inscriptions:—

Obverse.

Sicily
From Lieutenant-General Sir J. Stuart
Commander of the Forces
to
Jacob Longman
of the 20th Light Dragoons.

Reverse.

For the brave and active vigilance
displayed on
the landing of the enemy
at
St. Stephano near Messina
on the 13th September 1810.

A Non-Commissioned Officer party accompanied the British Military Commissioner—Sir Robert Wilson—to Constantinople in 1811 and afterwards to Russia. This detachment was with the Russian forces through their retreat to Moscow, and was afterwards present at the battles of Lutzen, Bautzen, Dresden and Leipzic.

Button.
20th Light Dragoons.
Circa 1812.

Digitized by Google

The uniform of the Regiment was blue with, at first, yellow facings and silver lace, which were changed later to orange facings and gold lace. At one period the Regiment wore as a badge the design of an alligator.

They were disbanded in 1818.

21st Regiment of Light Dragoons.

First Regiment (1760–63).—In 1760 were raised by the Marquis of Granby as the 21st Regiment of Dragoons or Royal Foresters. According to 'Regiments of the British Army,' by Captain Trimen, the Regiment was raised at Windsor and entitled the 'Royal Windsor Forresters,' but

Gilt Ornament on Red Cloth worn on Front of Light Dragoon helmet. 21st Regt. of Dragoons or Royal Foresters, 1760–63.

Button. 21st Light Dragoons. Circe 1812. Gilt design encased.

no mention of this title is made in the official Army List, nor did they have it on their badges. Their uniform was red faced with blue. On the front of the Light Dragoon helmet on a red ground was worn the Royal Cypher below a crown, the letter 'R' on the left and 'F' on the right, while below was the motto, 'Hic et Ubique.'

A specimen of this helmet is in the Zeughaus, Berlin.

The Regiment was disbanded in 1763.

Second Regiment (1779–83).—Was raised in 1779 and numbered the 21st, but, like their predecessor, only existed for a short time, being disbanded in 1783. The uniform was scarlet with white facings and silver lace. The Commanding Officer was Colonel Douglas.

Third Regiment (1794–1820).—In 1794 a corps was raised in the North of England without expense to the Government,

Digitized by Google

and numbered 21st. Their first Colonel was T. R. Beaumont, but on the Regiment being ordered to the West Indies they were taken out by Lieut.-Colonel A. Mackenzie, Colonel Beaumont remaining in Ireland to recruit three additional troops. It saw considerable service in San Domingo, and afterwards at the Cape, from whence a squadron was sent to take part in the Expedition to Monte Video.

The remaining squadrons of the Regiment remained at the Cape and saw various service against the natives.

In 1817 the Regiment moved to India and was actively employed under the Marquis of Hastings, and after considerable service returned home and was disbanded at Chatham in 1820.

A detachment of the Regiment had served in Madeira and when Napoleon was sent a prisoner to St. Helena, the Regiment provided a troop for duty in the island, which remained there until the death of the Emperor and was not disbanded until 1821.

The uniform of the Regiment was blue, the facings being firstly yellow, then pink, and after 1814 black velvet. The lace was gold prior to 1814, in which year it was ordered to be silver, but in 1815 the gold lace was resumed.

The author has a button which apparently belonged to this Regiment.

It is a gilt half ball button with the incised design of XXI inside a circle and star, the circle being inscribed, Yorkshire L.D. No mention is made in any History of this title, and it would appear to have been used unofficially.

22nd Light Dragoons.

First Regiment (1760–68).—According to 'Records and Badges of the British Army,' a Regiment ranking as the 22nd Light Dragoons existed at this date, but no mention of it is made in Fortescue's History of the British Army, nor in the official Army List for those years.

Digitized by Google

C. H. S. del.

Digitized by Google

19th LANCERS, 1817-21.

Digitized by Google

Second Regiment (1779–83).—Raised for Home Service only by the Earl of Sheffield, and first of all known unofficially as 'The Sussex.' The Regiment was disbanded in 1783, the Earl of Sheffield having been succeeded by William Viscount Feilding.

Third Regiment (1794–1802).—Raised without expense to the Government in April 1794 and commanded by Colonel William Viscount Feilding.

In an order dated May 25, 1794, the uniform of the Regiment was ordered to be red.

In January 1801 Colonel Banastre Tarleton succeeded to the Command, which he held until the Regiment was reduced in 1802.

Fourth Regiment. (*See* 25th Light Dragoons.)

23RD LIGHT DRAGOONS.

First Regiment (1781–83).—Raised in 1781 and formed from drafts from seven Light Dragoon Regiments.

The uniform in 1781 was red faced with deep green, the lace was silver and the buttons and loops were worn in twos. The design on the button was a star with $\frac{23}{LD}$ in its centre. Waistcoat and breeches were white.

Upon the reduction of the Army in 1783, the Regiment was renumbered the 19th, and as such had a long and distinguished career.

Button.
23rd Light Dragoons.
Circa 1815.
Silver design encased.

Second Regiment (1794–1802).—Raised without expense to the country and commanded by Colonel William Fullarton. Consisted of six troops. It was reduced in 1802.

Digitized by Google

In 1800 the turbans on their Light Dragoon Helmet were yellow.

Third Regiment. (*See* 26th Light Dragoons.)

24th Light Dragoons.

First Regiment (1794–1802).—Raised without expense to the Government and commanded by Colonel Wm. Loftus, April 1, 1794.

According to 'Records and Badges of the British Army,' by H. M. Chichester and Major G. Burges-Short, they displayed on their Light Dragoon helmets the motto 'Death or Glory.'

On May 25, 1794, their uniform was ordered to be red instead of blue.

In 1800 they had yellow turbans on their Light Dragoon helmets.

They were broken up in 1802.

Second Regiment. (*See* 27th Light Dragoons.)

25th Light Dragoons (1794–1820).

Raised 1794. Commanded by Colonel Francis Edward Gwyn and formed without expense to the Government.

Their uniform was ordered in 1794 to be red, but in an Order dated January 13, 1798, it was directed that in their

Badge worn on front of Light Dragoon helmet by 25th Light Dragoons. Prior 1802.

next issue of clothing they were to be given a grey jacket with scarlet collar and cuffs.

In 1802 they became, owing to the reduction of several Light Dragoon Regiments, the 22nd Light Dragoons.

Digitized by Google

In Hamilton Smith's Book of Plates of Uniforms, 1812, the 22nd are described as having—

> Pink collar, cuffs, lapelles and turn backs. Blue jacket. White breeches. Silver lace. Pink girdle with two dark blue stripes.

In 1814 their facings were changed from pink to white and their lace from silver to gold.

In 1796 the Regiment was on service in Cape Colony and took part in the march to Saldanha Bay, the first march ever made by British troops in South Africa. They afterwards saw considerable service in India, taking part in the Invasion of Mysore in 1799 and the Mahratta Wars.

In November 1800 the Regiment formed part of a smal force sent to suppress a rebellion which had broken out in the Fort of Ternakul, and which was not taken until severe casualties had been inflicted on our troops.

They formed part of the Expedition to Java in 1811, and, returning to India, were present at the action of Maheidpore in 1817. They returned to England in 1818 and were disbanded in 1820.

The only Battle Honour carried by the Regiment was that of Seringapatam, which had been granted them in 1818.

In a future number the 26th to 33rd Light Dragoon Regiments will be dealt with.

Digitized by Google

SOME HISTORICAL CHARGERS

THE greatest generals have gone well on horse-back and have been well mounted. We associate with Mahommed his swift Borak, with Alexander the Great his high-spirited Bucephalus, with Napoleon the high caste Marengo.

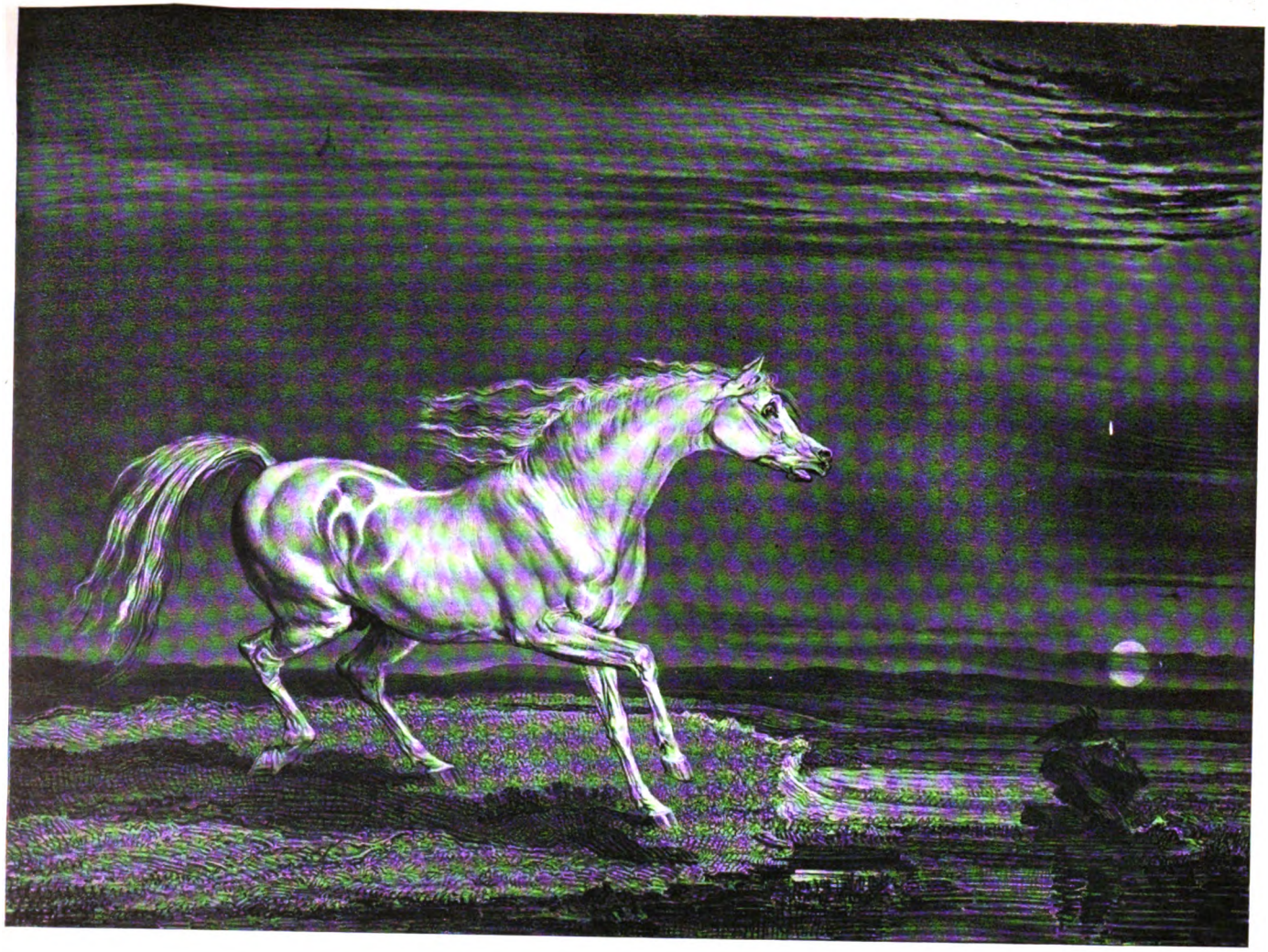
The name of an Englishman has been made famous by the great qualities of a foreign horse, his charger, for it was the first of the three Eastern Sires from which all English thoroughbreds of to-day throughout the world are descended in the male line.

Thoroughbreds trace back to one or more of these three progenitors: to the Byerley Turk (imported 1689), through Herod; the Darley Arabian (imported 1705), through Eclipse; and the Godolphin Barb (imported 1728), through Matchem.

There is little doubt that the Byerley Turk, a bay with black points and no white mark, was an Arabian horse captured from the Turks by the Christian forces of Austria and bought by Captain Robert Byerley who had raised a troop of Horse at Doncaster in 1685 for the service of King James II.* In 1689, Colonel Robert Byerley, promoted to command his regiment, which is now the Carabiniers, imported the horse, and in the following year rode him at the Battle of the Boyne. The colonel galloped forward to observe the enemy's disposi-

* The late Lady Anne Blunt, one of the highest authorities on the Arabian horse, wrote in a letter in 1913: 'Dr. F. W. Dünkelberg's work on horsebreeding asserts that the Byerley Turk was captured from the Turks *bei dem Entsatz von Wien 1683.*' There is mention in Evelyn's Diary of captured Arabians being brought into Vienna.

Digitized by Google

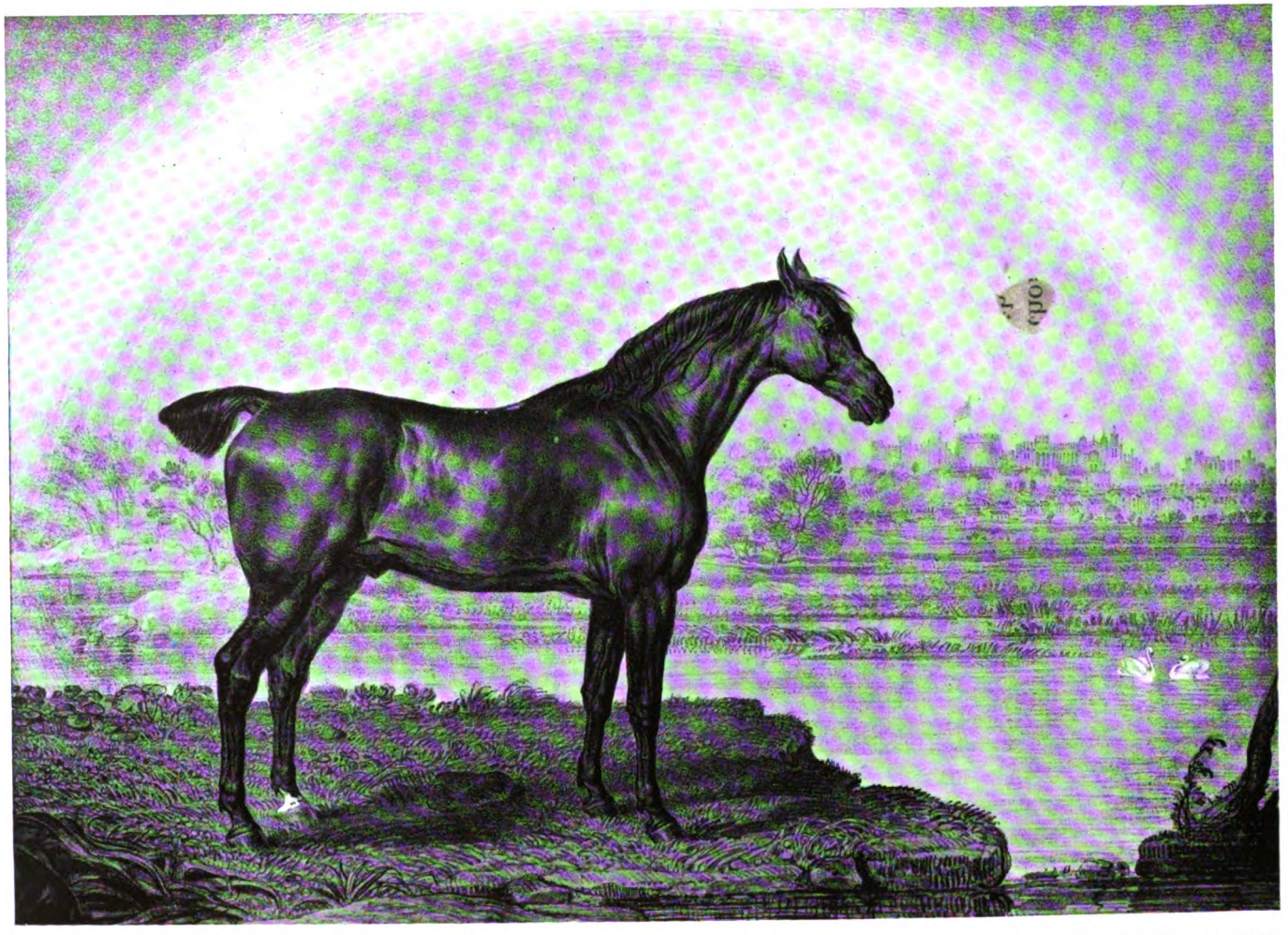


James Ward, R.A.

MARENGO.

The Favourite Charger of Napoleon 1st.

Digitized by Google



From an engraving kindly lent by Robson & Co., 7, Hanover St., W.

After James Ward, R.A., 1824.

NONPAREIL.

The Favourite Charger of His Majesty King George the Fourth.

Digitized by Google

tions and narrowly escaped capture, but owed his safety to the remarkable speed of the horse. The regimental history relates that 'Colonel Byerley served with distinction in Ireland; but, having suffered in his health and being more attached to agricultural pursuits than to the adventurous scenes of military life in time of war, he retired from the Service.' He put his valuable charger to the st[illegible]nd so laid the first stone in the building up of the English [illegible]roughbred as he is to-day, a fusion of the Arabian with the swift and hardy horse of early Britain, of which the high quality and light type is proved by the bones which have been found in ancient crannogs (lake dwellings) and barrows.

Marshal Soult rode an English blood horse as his charger, of which he became possessed in the following manner:

On the retreat and their re-embarkation at Corunna (January 16, 1809) all the horses were ordered to be shot. Sir Godfrey Webster's groom, rather than destroy his master's favourite charger, stripped him of his furniture and clothing and turned him loose; the horse ran immediately to the French Lines, and being shown to Soult he adopted him immediately as his own charger. This horse was no other than the well-known 'Pedestrian,' which had won so many plates and matches at Newmarket.

Frederick the Great rode an English half-bred, 16 years old, named 'Tall Grey,' on the 10th of April 1741, at his first battle, Mollwitz. As it grew dark, the king, who was then a novice in war, thought the battle lost and fled towards Oppeln, which he reached at midnight, expecting to find Prussians there, but the Austrians had taken the place and Frederick returned, pursued by an Austrian Hussar, whose fresher mount gradually gained upon 'Tall Grey,' which had been galloped for thirty miles.

The king turned in his saddle and said, 'Hussar, if you will leave me now, I will remember it.' 'Be it so, we will meet after the campaign is over.' The Hussar was Paul

Digitized by Google

Werner, who took the first opportunity to enter the Prussian service, rose to be a Lieut.-General, Colonel of a regiment of Hussars, and Knight of the Black Eagle.

Frederick reached Loewen at daylight, where his Aide-de-Camp, Buelow, found him in a mill and acclaimed him as the victor! Hence the saying that on this occasion 'the king covered himself with glory and flour.'

'Tall Grey,' who had carried Frederick not less than 65 miles on that memorable night, lived to the age of thirty-five.

The following extract from the *Manchester Courier* in the year 1788 is of interest: 'A grey horse of the very uncommon age of forty-eight died last week in Manchester. He was brought there from Scotland by the rebels in 1745, and has since been in daily use of carrying milk about the town so that his extreme age is within the knowledge of most of the inhabitants.'

Marengo was the favourite charger of Napoleon I, and our illustration is from the portrait painted from life in 1821, by James Ward, R.A. At the time the picture was painted artists often indulged in allegory, and the idea of Mr. Ward was to convey the fright of the horse at the raven, a bird of ill omen; the setting sun suggesting the departing glory of the great General.

Exception has been taken to the attitude of the horse, standing only on the near side legs, but the genius of the artist thus gives an impression of activity which would not otherwise have been attained.

Marengo was a beautiful white or light grey barb—or, more correctly, an Arab—possibly bred in Egypt, fourteen hands one inch in height, procured by Napoleon in Egypt after the Battle of Aboukir in 1799. The horse was ridden by him at the battle of Marengo in 1800, and named after the victory. He is believed to have subsequently carried his master at Austerlitz 1805, at Jena in 1806, at Wagram 1809, in the

Digitized by Google

Russian Campaign of 1812, and at Waterloo 1815, when he was wounded in the near hip.

After Napoleon's defeat at Waterloo, Lord Petre obtained possession of the horse, and sold him to Lieut.-General J. J. W. Angerstein, formerly of the Grenadier Guards, who bred from him at his paddocks at New Barnes, near Ely. 'Marengo' with his 'black eye, wide nostrils, clean limbs, and a faithful heart' was much admired by competent judges, who pronounced him a perfect barb and faultless.

The animal was well cared for and petted in his old age, and on his death his skeleton was preserved and presented to the Royal United Service Institution by Lieut.-General Angerstein, with two of the hoofs. The remaining hoofs were made into snuff boxes: one passed to the possession of the Angerstein family of Weeting Hall, Norfolk, and the other was presented by the General to his brother officers of the Brigade of Guards, and is kept in the Tilt Guard at St. James's Palace.

The horse figures prominently in many battle pictures of Meissonier, and in that of Andrew Gow, R.A., entitled 'The Flight from Waterloo.'

In the South African war of 1899, General H. Alberts, of the Transvaal Burgher Forces, owned a horse, named 'Old Blackie,' which he purchased a few weeks before the outbreak of hostilities and rode through all the vicissitudes of the campaign until one of the last actions of the war, which occurred at Holspruit, near Springs, in April, 1902. In the confusion of the night encounter 'Old Blackie' was captured and General Alberts's second charger was killed. When peace came, General Ian Hamilton, sympathising with the Boer leader in the loss of his favourite charger, promised its return, and the first act of restitution after long years of hostility took place at Heidelberg when the writer, who had ridden 'Old Blackie' since his capture, handed him over to his delighted former master.

Digitized by Google

THE ROYAL HORSE ARTILLERY WITH CAVALRY

THESE are the days of so-called progress, when everything that has been is reckoned obsolete for that very reason, and when we read almost daily triumphant pæans of joy in terms of regiments to be disbanded and extravagant pronouncements foreshadowing the 'exit of the artillery horse.' It may none the less be no unseasonable moment to record a few impressions which, if we are to be allowed no longer to look upon them as constructive for the future, may with proper decorum be buried sadly in the past as matters of history and of fact. 'Morituri te salutant.'

General impressions, then, of past experience convey the idea that, whereas much progress was made in the co-operation between the two arms in the late war, yet opportunities of really getting on to terms and grasping the exact relationship of Horse Artillery to Cavalry often went begging, and for this condition each was equally responsible. In other words, even under the most ideal and intimate associations, there still remained the vague sense of mystery about the 'black magic of the gun' unintentionally fostered by absence of effort to simplify and explain its uses and limitations.

It is not intended in this article to make incursions into matters of technical detail, but to attempt to reduce them into terms of the human element and to endow them, as far as possible, with flesh and blood. To enable this to be done, the Cavalryman is invited to accept as a basis the following fundamental facts, which will be found in no text book :—

1. That it is in the nature of accelerated promotion to the young Artillery Officer to be selected to work with Cavalry.

2. That he immediately finds himself firstly interested in, and secondly sympathetic with, the personalities, traditions,

Digitized by Google

and *esprit de corps* of those units with which he is in contact, in a way which hitherto in other larger organisations may scarcely have stirred his attention.

3. That in the case of the Rank and File R.H.A. this is, perhaps, even more pronounced—the lively interest displayed in their cavalry regiments and their "form" arguing almost pride of possession.

4. That in the case of officers and all ranks the close nature of the Cavalry organisation—whether of Division or Brigade—predisposes to the definite end of devotion (and if need be, sacrifice) to the welfare, satisfaction, and service of Cavalry friends and allies. In the larger dismounted organisation this is equally the case, but the incentive is more mechanical that personal.

Before proceeding further with these general considerations, it would be honest to admit that at this point we arrive at an obstacle requiring considerable care in the handling, a bone of contention better left to others to dispute: nor is it the intention of the writer to raise issues and rush in where expert knowledge fears to tread—but how goes the Horse Artillery? By Batteries forming an integral part of the Cavalry Brigade, or grouped under Divisional Command?

No susceptibilities need be violated if we say both, according to the circumstances of the case. In dealing with historical fact, however, we are on safe ground in remembering that, in 1914, whereas the R.H.A. constituted Divisional Artillery on moving up against the advancing enemy, from the commencement of the first day's fighting Batteries joined Cavalry Brigades and remained with them for over four years, a period broken into only under abnormal conditions of trench-warfare when Divisional Artillery was at intervals reformed for purposes of relieving Field Artillery Brigades in the line or covering their own Cavalry dismounted on replacing infantry in the trenches.

Experience showed the arrangement to be an admirable

Digitized by Google

one. After few necessary trials and expedients, a system was evolved which appeared to work with perfect smoothness and satisfaction to all concerned. In a short time conditions became ideal. Cavalry Brigade Majors and Staff Captains took the Battery into the family circle as the new inheritance of their Brigadiers. The care and thought bestowed on the three regiments was ungrudgingly extended to the Horse Artillery, and as far as the writer's experiences go (as in the case of many other Horse Artillery Commanders), he can testify to a period of contentment and gratification among officers and men at the treatment given and consideration shown, which mark this period with the happiest recollections of soldiering in all his service. Here we have the ideal foundations, then, for true co-operation when the rough times punctuate the smooth and serious operations are in the wind.

*But this is only the beginning. It follows that friendships are made all round from the Brigadier and Regimental Commander down to Troop Leader, valuable knowledge of personality and character which, if properly cultivated and understood, will give the Artilleryman insight into situations otherwise obscured by the fog of battle; even to the young officer with his section of guns working with a Squadron Leader whom he personally knows and respects, or to the Troop Leader who with his young Gunner friend has to wrestle with the problem of a sudden emergency or fleeting opportunity.

And yet, even under these conditions, there still remains that undefined 'black magic of the gun.'

* * * * *

* I had intended to avoid personalities, but I cannot pass over this paragraph without reference to the sense of a home left behind when the time came to leave my Cavalry Brigade; nor can I ever forget the red letter days on which my Cavalry Brigadier (whom we adored and, alas! whose death leaves a gap which no one can ever fill) and other friends of the 2nd Cavalry Division visited me in the line at intervals after I had passed on into an infantry division; and a to me ever memorable occasion on which I found my Brigade covering 'Toby' Long's battalion and spent a late night with him talking over the dear old days of the red and white horse-shoes.

Digitized by Google

It is really very simple. A few technicalities which are not gone into here (but for which it is hoped space may be found in a future issue) are all that is necessary for the Cavalryman to grasp, and the illusion is dispelled. The more important features are common to both and need no artillery-man to expatiate on, so they may be briefly summarised in a few paragraphs.

Firstly: The essentials for successful combination on the artillery side of the question are mobility, simplicity, ready improvisation, rapid decision. To discuss each of these separately would occupy space that is not available, but in any case each makes a demand on the gunner's powers of initiative. Briefly, these essentials may be defined as follows:—

Mobility: The exercise of the highest judgment in horse-mastership and eye to country, to enable the wheels to compete in pace and staying power with the mounted horseman.

Simplicity: The readiness on the part of the gunner to dispense with elaborations, especially in connection with communication from the observer to the gun—probably the most difficult problem the Horse Artilleryman has to grapple with and certainly one that is least appreciated by the other fighting arms.

Improvisation: The test of ability in dismissing hard and fast recognised rules and in showing readiness to substitute a working scheme, which will achieve the same results, at the shortest notice.

Rapid Decision: The correct observation and recognition of the various phases of the Cavalry battle, and the readiness to meet without hesitation the unexpected developments that will invariably turn up.

All the above agreed essentials can be brought into full account where the gunner understands the characteristics and temperament of the Cavalry Leader with whom he is co-operating. In any one of these full use of an opportunity

Digitized by Google

can be taken where an instinctive knowledge of personality enables the one to appreciate the likely movements of the other even to the extent of anticipation of his next action.

* * * * *

But this is not in any way intended to indicate relief of his cavalry *confrère* from his responsibilities for *information.* No matter how mutual the understanding, how close the liaison, the desperate effort for intelligent co-operation on the part of the gunner must be responded to by such solid information as may at least assure him of the correctness of his assumptions and give him fresh and accurate knowledge for the further development of his dispositions. And here, even under the best conditions, comes failure again and again; and I doubt whether, even at the end of the Great War, this undisputed fact was ever really grasped by the Regimental Cavalry Officer, even of experience. The writer has spent many hours of earnest discussion, with officers concerned, on the absolute dependence of the guns on a reasonable interpretation of the position by those most closely engaged in the fight, only to find on the first occasion that this unalterable fact had again been lost sight of.

The reason is not far to seek, and is readily recognised by the gunner. It stands to reason that the Cavalry Commander—more particularly the Squadron Leader—whose force is heavily engaged and at close grips with the enemy, whose entire attention is devoted to a desperate local encounter and the handling of his own immediate command, and who may even find his own personal surroundings constricted and confined by heavy attack or defence, will often be hard put to it to enable him to withdraw his attention from these absorbing intricacies and confine it to writing a cool, collected report in which briefness with lucidity is essential and information of practical value to the artillery behind. But its vital importance remains for all that.

And here we may briefly consider the common faults

Digitized by Google

which are of most frequent occurrence in the information given to, and the task demanded of, the Artillery.

Looseness of expression is the first. The use of the terms 'right' or 'left' is often the chief offence, where the writer forgets that the interpretation will be made from the point of view of the whole battle-front and that his own particular sector has probably swung very considerably one way or the other out of the general alignment. The use of the compass or map, or both, with reference to some unmistakable or conspicuous landmark, on the other hand, is irrefutable.

The terms 'over' or 'short,' again, should be employed with an intelligent conception of the general direction from which the shells are coming. For the same reason as that given above, the description may strictly have reference to lateral error—a question of deflection—rather than to range, or *vice versâ*. This may obviously be brought about when the guns have taken position to a flank.

The timing of messages—but, surely, this is a platitude—is often omitted. An intelligent observation of the course of the engagement on the part of the Artillery will clearly show that a message has taken long in coming, but a message received late is very much better than no message at all, provided that the time of despatch clearly indicates how stale this line of the hunt may be. The situation may have changed, but the Gunner will at least have received knowledge of a recent phase which may be an invaluable help to an accurate estimate of the condition of affairs at the moment, if he is in a position to observe the general features of the action.

Yet another common fault lies in some of the demands for the application of the Artillery. This was, of course, particularly noticeable on the change from trench-warfare to the running fight in March 1918; the difference between the legitimate trench-target and the reasonable artillery objective in mobile warfare clearly not being appreciated.

Digitized by Google

The limitations of the gun must be recognised under such conditions, and the tendency to assign tasks to the Artillery which should naturally fall to the smaller arms, carefully guarded against.

Again, it should never be forgotten that the number of guns in immediate support of Cavalry is never large and the ammunition supply comparatively small; that, in consequence, a great number of minor targets can only be engaged by few guns at the expense of more important objectives which no other arm can engage.

Finally, all the errors mentioned above can be eliminated at one stroke, or at least reduced to negligible dimensions, by the precaution of the Cavalry Commander in selecting the neighbourhood of his Artillery as his headquarters. This was the method generally adopted by the writer's Cavalry Brigadier and invariably brought with it the greatest satisfaction. Here all messages are received, conferences are held, orders sent out.

* * * * *

So far, so good. It would be as well, perhaps, to stop here, or the danger of entering upon involved topics would be encountered. Controversial and technical details have been as far as possible avoided and only the human touch brought to play; but there is enough here to make the remainder follow on lines of sympathetic thought by both parties. Maybe enough stress has not been laid on the responsibilities to the Cavalry of which every gunner is sublimely conscious; and for fear such a thought should cross the mind of the Cavalry reader it only remains to emphasise the duties of the Horse Artillery subaltern who finds himself attached with his section of guns to a small Cavalry formation. This officer will find himself frequently called upon to act with a regiment or even a squadron. He will have to be prepared to take unusual risks, though he should avoid putting himself into a position from which extrication will

Digitized by Google

be impossible except where the situation demands extreme measures. The loss of guns—though not in itself necessarily as disastrous or dishonourable as tradition used to lead one to believe (for surely guns may be as gloriously lost as won) —has a demoralising effect out of all proportion to its military value, as the centre of gravity of even a small force is to be found in its artillery, and the Cavalry trooper is as strongly influenced by this sense as is his officer. At all events, situations of all natures will be met which will thrust the urgent necessity for quick and accurate decisions on this young officer, and, as has already been indicated, improvisations may have to be made where normal procedure may not be applicable to the conditions. Big and difficult responsibilities indeed! The case of the R.H.A. subaltern having been understood, it follows that the Battery Commander shoulders a bigger burden on similar lines; and by no means the least important part rests on his powers of instruction in, and inculcation of, the above principles. The task is made the easier by the knowledge that the young officer has been appointed by selection and that his aptitude for work with Cavalry presupposes an ability to assimilate instruction on these lines.

* * * * *

Of one fact the Cavalry soldier can at least assure himself. The gunner is determined to see him through the fight at any sacrifice, for better, for worse. The guiding inspiration is to make the rough path of the Cavalry smooth, the prevailing hope to win his confidence and to give that satisfaction which only successful co-operation in achieving desired results can genuinely bring about.

* * * * *

Since writing the above, the question of the amalgamation of the Riding Establishment, R.A., and the Cavalry School has been under the serious consideration of the authorities. Should this suggestion now materialise, consolation may be

Digitized by Google

afforded to whichever Establishment may be put to the inconvenience of moving by the fact that an unprecedented opportunity will arise for the application of mutual understanding and good fellowship that will lay the basis of a combination of the two services of incalculable value to the success of both.

Canadian Cavalry Association.

This patriotic and far-seeing organisation was founded in 1910 at a course of senior officers at Stanley Barracks, and has proved of the greatest practical value in assisting the policy of the Minister of Militia, who is the honorary president. The honorary vice-president is General J. H. MacBrien, chief of general staff, and the president is Brigadier-General R. W. Patterson, C.M.G., D.S.O., of Winnipeg.

The last meeting was an enthusiastic one; and while many practical measures for the Cavalry and Mounted Rifles were decided, the opinion was expressed that, if there is to be retrenchment and economy, Cavalry is the last thing in Canada that should be cut down.

The meeting was brought to a close by singing the National Anthem.

Digitized by Google

THE ROMANCE OF THE DRUM BANNER

By Edward Fraser

II.

Reading through the despatches of the victorious commanders of old wars down practically to the Napoleonic War, ever since regular armies were in existence, one always finds recorded the number of kettle-drums taken, together with the number of captured standards and colours. That was because every kettle-drum from the earliest times had its regimental banner, which was looked on when taken as a trophy of equal value with the trophy standards and colours of the defeated cavalry and infantry corps. A military *ordonnance* of the old French Royal Army at its period of highest efficiency in Louis XIV.'s reign speaks explicitly of 'l'usage de regarder les timbales avec leurs tabliers (*i.e.*, kettle-drums with their drum banners) comme des insignes qu'il est déshonorant de se laisser enlever dans un combat.' Napoleon took the same view. Exactly as he appointed in the Infantry two picked veterans to attend each regimental Eagle, as the 'Eagle Guard,' armed with halberds and large-bore pistols 'to blow out the brains of anyone attempting to seize the Eagle,' keeping close to the colour-bearer, or 'Porte-aigle,' so he appointed in each cavalry regiment authorised to have kettle-drums (all had drum banners) two picked veteran troopers, each of no less than five years' campaign-service, men of exceptional physique and horsemanship, to attend the kettle-drums and to answer with their lives that they did not fall into an enemy's hands. Among the men, the army slang

Digitized by Google

name for their appointment was that they were 'pour bouiller le chaudron'—to boil the pot; just as the slang regimental name for the Eagle was 'le cou-cou,' the cuckoo!

The usage we had in Marlborough's time, and down to the end of Queen Anne's War, of only allowing kettle-drums—except in the case of the Household Cavalry—to regiments of Horse (the 'Heavies,'—Cuirassiers down to 1714) who had captured enemy kettle-drums, or standards, in action, was adopted from the Germans serving as allies under Marlborough; and they, *more Germanico*, had cribbed the idea from the French. No less a personage than Marshal Turenne, in his campaigns in the middle of the seventeenth century, originated the rule; Louis XIV. adopted it and maintained it throughout his reign. After the close of 'Queen Anne's War,' as soldiers of the time spoke of the war that historians call 'The War of the Spanish Succession,' to reward cavalry corps that had done distinguished service in the field, although they had not had the luck to capture enemy kettle-drums or flags, the rule became relaxed in all armies, and much about the same time. In the regiments allotted kettle-drums, negroes, gaudily got up, and with turbans and plumes, were employed as drummers in practically all the Prussian, Austrian and French corps; and also in a good number of ours. The foreign agents bought them as slaves at Liverpool, which was the great European market, and took them abroad to their regiments, where they were formally 'freed' and enlisted for training. Kettle-drums, and of course drum banners, for one invariably went with the other, were granted—always, as stated, by favour of the Sovereign—to regiments of Horse, the former Cuirassiers, or Heavy Cavalry. Dragoons and 'Chevaux-Legers,' as the Light Horse of Germany and France were officially styled, were not allowed kettle-drums, having to use the ordinary infantry side-drum, slung in front of the drummer across the horse's withers.

Frederick the Great broke through the custom during the

Digitized by Google

THE CAVALRY REGIMENT'S BAND OF THE XVI CENTURY.

Digitized by Google

Carabiniers.

Royal Dragoons.

Royal Scots Greys.

Inniskilling Dragoons.

10th Royal Hussars.

12th Royal Lancers.

DRUM BANNERS.

Digitized by Google

Seven Years' War, and allowed both Hussar and Dragoon, and also later, Uhlan or Lancer, regiments, to have kettle-drums and banners, provided they had taken enemy standards or kettle-drums in action. That rule held in Germany down to the late Great War. The Prussian Garde-du-Corps, Cuirassier and Dragoon Guard regiments all had kettle-drums, but they were authorised in only five of the twenty-six Dragoon regiments, in seven of the twenty Hussar regiments (including the Leibgarde Husaren), and in only three of the twenty-three line-cavalry Uhlan regiments. The French Royal Army remained faithful to the old rule and excluded all below 'Horse.' Napoleon had no regular rule outside the Imperial Guard, all the cavalry regiments of which, heavy and light, had kettle-drums, with often very costly and elaborate drum banners. One pair is recorded to have cost 28,000 francs, and the Colonel who ordered it got into very hot water with Napoleon and had to find half the cost out of his own pocket.

We granted kettle-drums to Dragoon regiments without exception after the Seven Years' War period; but drew the line at letting Light Dragoon regiments have them until nearly the close of the eighteenth century. Then they became practically universal for all cavalry. Also, most of the Yeomanry and Light Horse Volunteers of the French Revolution and Napoleonic Wars adopted them, patriotic ladies working both standards and kettle-drum banners, or public-spirited county gentlefolk providing them by purchase. What is perhaps the oldest set of drum banners in England is that of the London and Westminster Light Horse, bearing the arms of the City and Westminster, now among the innumerable and priceless historic treasures at the Royal United Service Institution Museum, Whitehall.

Digitized by Google

A CAVALRY EPISODE IN THE ADVANCE TO THE MARNE

By Brigadier-General C. Burnett, C.B., C.M.G.

Much mental and physical labour, and a good deal of ink, was expended in the days before the Great War by cavalry soldiers, and still more ink by cavalry critics, on the training of the mounted arm, in order that the latter might live up to the high standard of excellence which official regulations demanded.

This standard culminated in the mounted attack, the *summum bonum* of the cavalry offensive.

It is vain to delude ourselves into the notion that we had exalted fire tactics into the most prominent place.

The official regulations had, it is true, with what seemed a late and reluctant conviction, impressed on all the importance of that part of the training; but in the training itself, and during manœuvres, a vast amount of time was spent on pure mounted work, dependent on a little fire support.

The great amount of time expended thereon was unavoidable if such mounted work was to be successfully performed.

Our friends, as well as our principal enemy, apparently shared this conception, as the conduct of their grand manœuvres fully testified.

How, even admitting our successes in Palestine—and we were not training for operations in that country especially—did it all end?

Were none of those many 'Right wheels into line' of our cavalry exercises to be profitably demonstrated? Were

Digitized by Google

no counterparts of those classic culminating features of the 'Kaiser' manœuvres, reminiscent of the halcyon days of Seidlitz and Murat, to be reproduced on the plains of Western Europe?

Had Loir and Cherfils written in vain? What hindered this clash of arms?

A good deal of the terrain was well suited for cavalry action, the opponents were seemingly trained to the last ounce, and the sabres of the three armies must have run into tens of thousands.

It takes two, however, and they must be of one mind, to bring off such a duel, and perhaps our chief adversary's natural cunning prompted him to cloak his real intentions with those cavalry mass attacks at the close of his yearly manœuvres.

This was the second time we had been deceived—I think with our eyes open, too—in the tactics of our adversary.

Fifteen years previously, the Boer had steadily refused to mix himself up in these mounted mêlées.

However, our all-round training was so thorough that we easily held our own in 1914 in the dismounted fighting which ensued.

In the early days of the war, there was a mass of German and a large amount of Allied Cavalry on or near the Franco-Belgian frontier. After Charleroi, Mons, and the fighting in the Ardennes, an ideal situation appeared to have been created for the German independent cavalry.

When Lincoln's Generals reported that the enemy covered so much ground that it was impossible to push through, that statesman replied that the 'animal must be very thin somewhere.'

In spite of vast numbers, a retreat on the scale of that which took place between August 23 and September 4 must have exemplified Lincoln's prognostication.

But no independent German cavalry masses dashed into

Digitized by Google

such gaps, to be met by vigilant protective bodies of Allied mounted troops.

There were no trenches; there was no barbed wire to speak of; there were no tanks, very few aeroplanes; in fact, nothing much to worry about except what every cavalryman supposed he might encounter.

The ground, moreover, was in many places excellent, and much better than that comprised in many carefully selected manœuvre areas.

Again, when the tide turned, and the front, bowed from Paris to Verdun, sprung back to a straighter line, one might have reasonably concluded that the psychological moment had at last arrived.

For had not Von Kluck and Von Bülow each left a Cavalry Corps to hold back the left of the French 5th Army and the British Force, and did not the two latter contain five British Cavalry Brigades and a French Cavalry Corps? While yet another French Cavalry Corps was in the vicinity of Paris.

It would have been for ourselves and posterity one of the most thrilling and instructive episodes in modern war, had the forecasts of writers on cavalry tactics been illustrated by the clash of charging squadrons on the fields of Flanders, Picardy or Champagne.

Many an able treatise would have been composed had such a combat ensued. Failing the larger encounter, lesser skirmishes must have place, though even of these there are, unfortunately, no great number from which to make a choice.

There was an abortive attempt at Élouges, near Mons, to produce a Marengo-like atmosphere into the left of the British line on August 24, 1914.

There was a good fight, a really typical cavalry combat, by the 5th Cavalry Brigade near Cérizy, ably described by Colonel Howard Vyse in the April number of the CAVALRY JOURNAL of 1921.

Digitized by Google

But one can hardly call the surprise at Néry a true cavalry encounter, though it was a grand example of disciplined valour.

In addition, the 3rd Cavalry Brigade, in the neighbourhood of Plessis, performed excellent rearguard service at a very critical time during the retreat from Mons.

The above short summary, it is true, omits French and Belgian actions, and no doubt some other small affairs undertaken by the cavalry of the British Expeditionary Force. But the impression remains that there were very few real cavalry encounters during this retreat, and still fewer during the subsequent advance across the Marne to the Aisne.

One of those other 'small affairs' undertaken by a part of the 2nd Cavalry Brigade of the B.E.F. during the advance to the Marne may be of interest to record, and, as it was a characteristic cavalry fight, it may be deemed worthy of a place in the pages of the CAVALRY JOURNAL.

Before proceeding with the actual details of the skirmish, it would, perhaps, be best to briefly reconstruct the general situation on the western flank of the great line of battle, and more particularly the local situation in front of the right of the British Army, just before September 7, 1914, the date on which the skirmish took place.

Following on the change of direction of the German right, which commenced on September 3, we find their 1st Army roughly situated as follows on the morning of September 6 :—

IVth Reserve Corps.—Along the line of the River Ourcq, north of Meaux, forming the flankguard.

IInd Corps.—South of the Grand Morin and west of Coulomniers, opposite the British, preparing to wheel back to face towards Paris.

IVth Corps.—South of the Grand Morin and south-east of Coulomniers, marching on Provins to attack the 5th French Army.

Digitized by Google

IIIrd Corps.—South of the Grand Morin and west of Esternay, marching on Villers St. Georges to attack the 5th French Army.

IXth Corps.—North of the Grand Morin and north of Esternay, linking up with the IInd German Army.

IInd Cavalry Corps.—IVth Division on the Ourcq; IXth Division north-east of Rosoy; IInd Division south-east of Coulomniers.

Ist Cavalry Corps.—Guard Division, south of La Ferté-Gaucher, about to take possession of Courtacon and other villages half-way between Courtacon and Provins, and in conjunction with part of the IInd Cavalry Corps, heading the advance of the IIIrd and IVth Corps. Vth Division, south-east of Guard Division.

Von Kluck received orders on September 5th to abandon his forward march, and during the 6th pressure on the IVth Reserve Corps caused him to strengthen his flank.

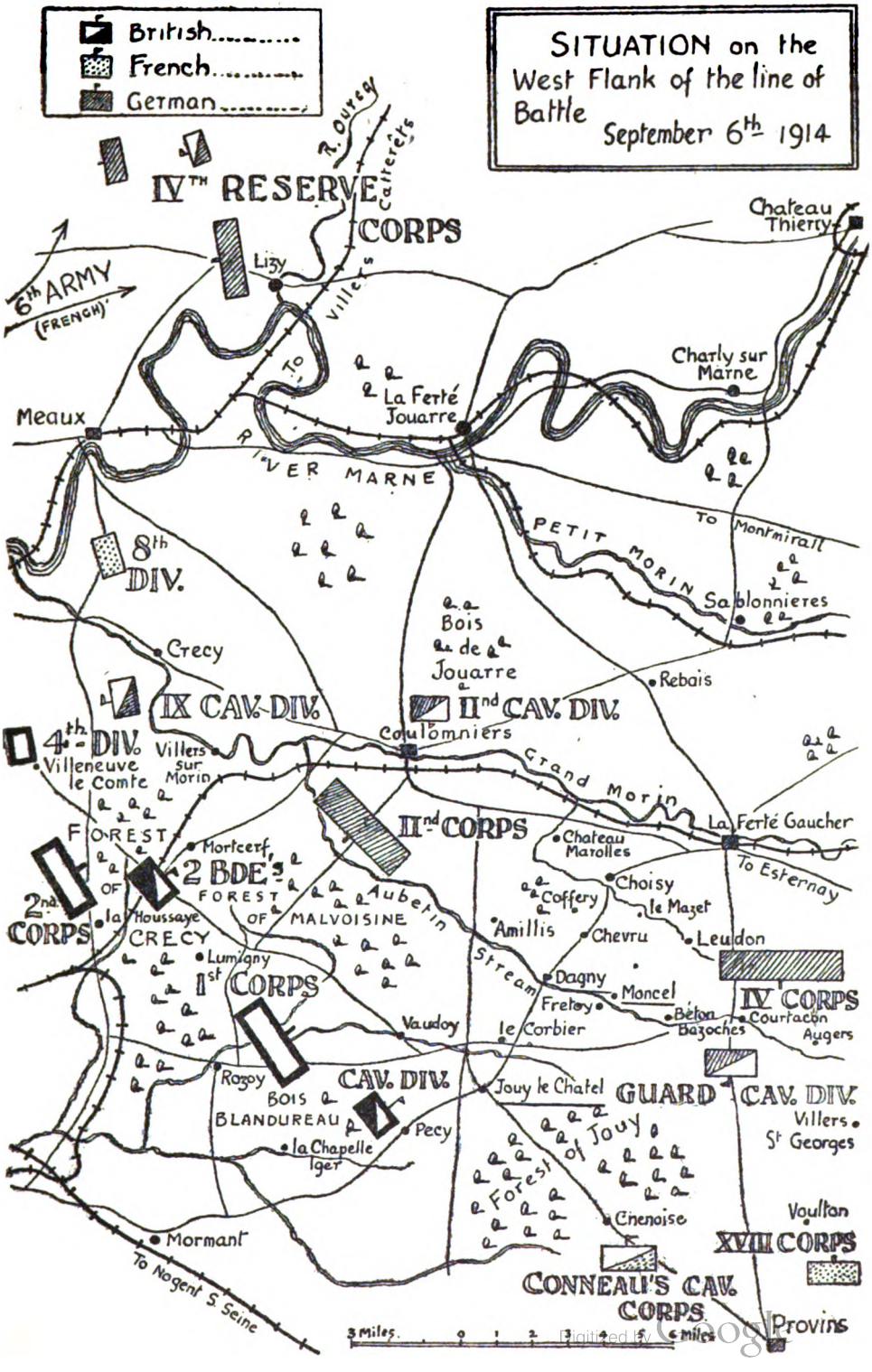
Some time before midday on the 6th saw the high-water mark of the German advance on Provins.

During the morning, the IInd Corps, leaving its rear-guards to hold off the British, moved to the assistance of the IVth Reserve Corps. The IVth Active Corps stayed its advance, wheeled about, and moved on La Ferté sous Jouarre, on the Marne.

At once a gap of over 25 miles in extent opened between the Ourcq and the right of the IIIrd Corps, now west of Villers St. Georges. This gap was filled by the two German Cavalry Corps, less one Division, and the rearguards of the IInd and IVth Corps, during the latter part of the 6th and the 7th of September.

On our side, by midday on the 6th, the British Army had its IIIrd Corps (4th Division) in the neighbourhood of Bailly, its IInd Corps between La Houssaye and Villeneuve, and its Ist Corps between Chapelle Iger and Lumigny, in échelon of Corps from the right.

Digitized by Google



Digitized by Google

The British Cavalry Division (1st, 2nd and 4th Brigades) was engaged with hostile rearguards north-east of Chapelle Iger and the Bois Blandureau.

The 3rd and 5th Brigades were covering the advance of the IInd Corps.

The gap was still wide between the British Cavalry Division and Conneau's Cavalry Corps of the 5th French Army, which was south of the Forest of Jouy, but these cavalry bodies had got into communication with one another.

The XVIIIth Corps, on the left of the 5th French Army, was still further off, heavily engaged in driving back the IIIrd German Corps and Richthoven's Guard Cavalry Division, at and about the village of Voulton, some 9 kilometres north of Provins.

Between noon and nightfall on September 6, 1914, much might have happened—a menace of disaster to the German right wing, and an augury of dazzling success to the Allied arms. Little, however, occurred.

To the ordinary officer, though he only knew the local situation, it appeared a disappointing day, and a big *coup* missed.

The two Divisions of the German IInd Cavalry Corps, and the rearguard of the IInd Corps, had ample leisure to hatch their plans for holding off the British Army, while the battle went one way or another in front of the French 5th and 6th Armies.

By nightfall, after heavy fighting, the advanced troops of the XVIIIth Corps had reached Augers, while the British Army, by the same time, had advanced but a short distance, and although opposition had decreased in the afternoon, the line Jouy le Chatel-Villers sur Morin only was reached.

The British Cavalry Division was ordered to billet in the vicinity of Jouy le Chatel after the completion of some desultory fighting which had commenced early in the day.

Hostile cavalry with guns had been located about 8 A.M.

Digitized by Google

1½ miles south of Vaudoy. Our cavalry got in touch with them on the north-east edge of the Bois Blandureau and about Pécy.

The enemy was estimated at a strength of about a Cavalry Division, and little progress was made throughout the day, though a lot of shells were interchanged between the two forces.

However, towards evening the Germans retired, and our cavalry pushed on by the right of the Ist Corps, which had now reached Pécy, advanced through Jouy le Chatel, the 2nd Cavalry Brigade bivouacking ¾ mile north-east of that town, with the 18th Hussars on outpost duty right and left of the cross-roads 1 mile east of Corbier.

Touch had been gained with the French Cavalry Division of the 5th Army, in the vicinity of Chenoise, from 11.30 A.M. onwards, by means of motor-car and cyclists, and the gap between the British and French Cavalry was rapidly narrowing.

Such, briefly, was the situation at nightfall of September 6, at which hour the retrograde movement of a part of the German right wing must have been known to the commanders of the French and British Armies.

On September 6, a message from the C.G.S., timed 3.30 P.M., ordered a forward movement of the British Army in a north-east direction, the Cavalry Division to the area Chateau de Marolles—Choisy—Chevru, and the 3rd and 5th Cavalry Brigades to move in rear of the left of the Ist Corps.

In conformity with this message, Divisional operation orders of September 6 ordered the Cavalry to advance at 6.30 A.M. next morning on two lines: the 2nd Cavalry Brigade with four guns of I Battery, R.H.A., to start from Jonchery Farm and move *viâ* Faujus and just east of Choisy, while the remainder of the Division started from the cross roads, 1 mile east of le Corbier, and moved through Dagny and Chevru to Choisy.

The 2nd Brigade was ordered to send reconnoitring patrols

Digitized by Google

to Leudon and le Mazet, and the 4th Brigade a patrol to Coffery.

The first bound was to be to the line: Point 161—along the ridge to the wood south of Fontaine—Ramie. Communication between the 2nd and 4th Cavalry Brigades was to be established along this line.

Thus, in accordance with the orders which it had received, the 2nd Cavalry Brigade moved forward on the morning of September 7 as right flankguard to the Division, which was marching on Dagny.

The Brigade rendezvous was Jonchery Farm, and the column formed up there at 6.30 A.M.

It was the 9th Lancers' turn to cover the advance, and at that hour the regiment, very weak in numbers, moved off in the direction of Moncel.

The 18th Hussars headed the main body of the Brigade, with 'I' Battery, R.H.A., and the 4th Dragoon Guards in rear.

Having briefly led up to the commencement of operations on the morning of September 7, I will continue the story from an eyewitness point of view.

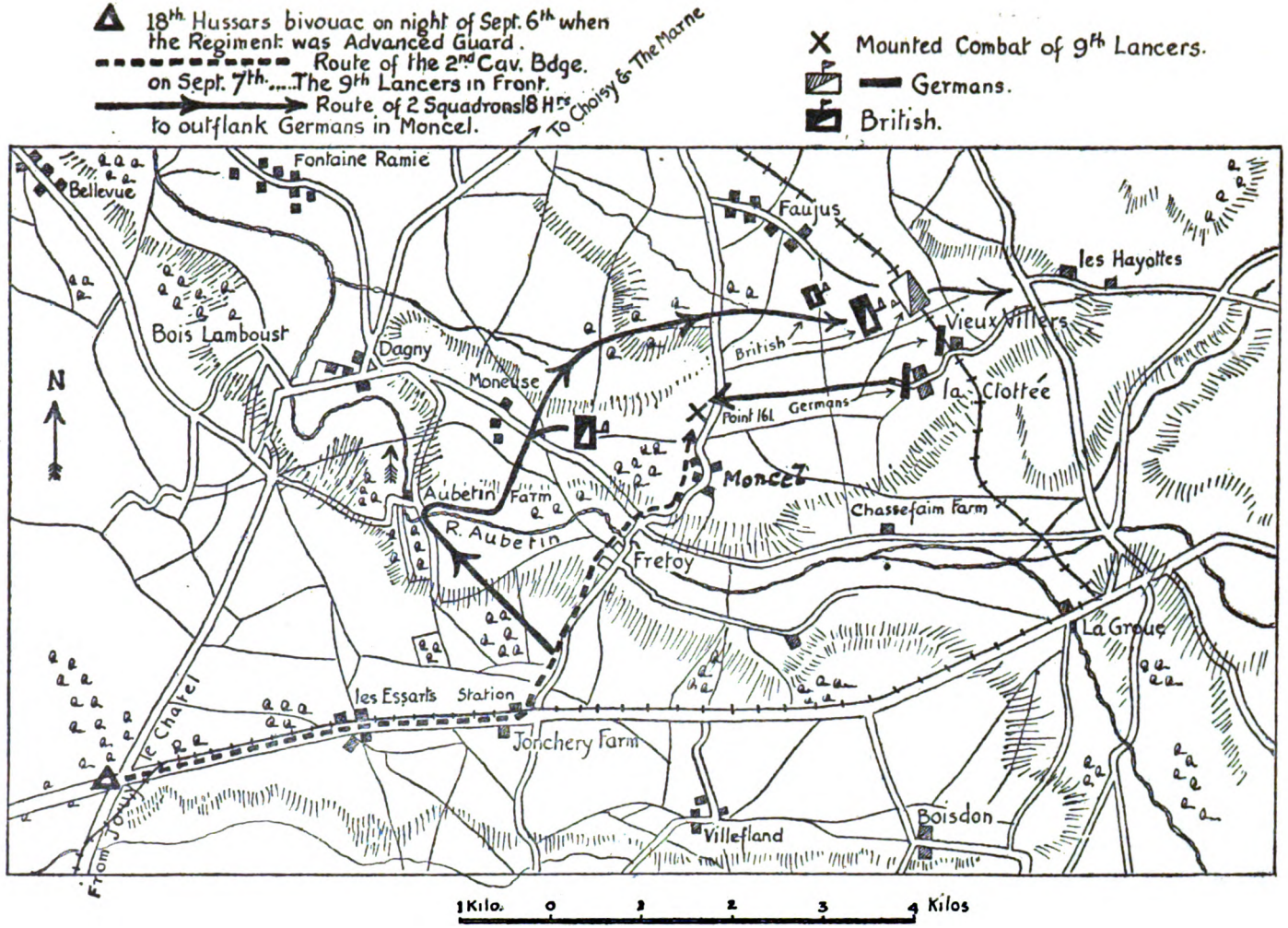
We had scarce proceeded a kilometre on our way when the affair of Moncel began.

The country we were now operating over was favourable for rearguard tactics. Although the large forests of Crécy and Malvoisine had been left behind, a good deal of scattered woodland blocked the view, and the absence of any pronounced rises prevented observation of distant operations.

The valley of the Aubetin stream formed a slight natural barrier, lined as it was by a succession of small copses on both banks, which latter were steep enough to restrict mounted troops to one of the many points where roads or roadways crossed the brook.

The country in general consisted of nearly flat stretches of open cultivated cornland, on which the corn stood in

Digitized by Google



Digitized by Google

stooks; while here and there patches of woodland, villages at pretty regular intervals, and farms with small enclosures round them broke the monotony of the open ground.

'C,' the advanced guard squadron of the 9th Lancers, under Captain Abadie, almost immediately the advance commenced, got in touch with hostile scouts in the village of Frétoy, chased these scouts across the river and through the village of Moncel, occupied that village, and posted a machine-gun section on its north-west edge. Captain Lucas Tooth's Squadron 'A' was on the right flank.

Colonel D. Campbell, in command of the regiment, being uncertain of the situation, rode up about 7.45 A.M. with Major Beale Browne, the H.Q. party, and a troop of 'B' Squadron, to some stacks on the higher ground just beyond the village, leaving the village on their right as they rode up.

At the same time a section of 'I' Battery, R.H.A., prepared for action on the ground just north-east of Jonchery Farm.

Colonel Campbell had just placed the horses behind a large stack, to give them cover against the enemy's rifle fire, when the Farrier-Sergeant of 'C' Squadron galloped up to say that a squadron of German Cavalry was advancing through a dip in the ground north-east of the village.

This squadron almost immediately came into view, advancing in line at a slow gallop on the stacks behind which the 9th Lancers were posted.

Colonel Campbell, though vastly outnumbered, determined to charge them. The small body of the 9th formed line and, led by their Colonel and Major Beale Browne, charged as hard as they could at the advancing squadron.

The latter's left flank opened out considerably just before impact, and the greater speed of the smaller force told perceptibly in the encounter.

The 9th went through their opponents, knocking a large hole in the squadron, unhorsing a good many riders and

Digitized by Google

bringing the remainder to a standstill, but their small numbers prevented them completing their task, and, after a short hand-to-hand fight, Major Beale Browne rallied what was left of the troop and galloped for the village, pursued by about a troop of the enemy.

Meanwhile, some of the enemy remained on the ground of the encounter, looking after their own wounded, and searching the dead and wounded 9th Lancers who had fallen in the charge; while others entered the village, which had been in part evacuated by 'C' Squadron, and galloped down the single street, only to hastily retreat again when they became aware of the proximity of the rest of the Brigade.

It was unfortunate that the 9th Lancer machine-gun jammed just at the critical moment, and could not fire a round in support of the mounted attack.

In the charge, Colonel Campbell was wounded in the arm by a lance, and in the leg by a bullet. The adjutant, Captain Reynolds, was severely wounded in the shoulder by a lance. Lieutenant Alfrey, the M.G. officer, who went to Reynold's assistance from the village, was killed while extracting the lance from his shoulder; two troopers were killed and five were wounded. The loss of the Germans was heavier, as we found out after we had occupied the ground.

During this encounter, the 18th Hussars, at the head of the Brigade, had arrived within some 1,000 yards of Moncel, and it was clear that considerable opposition was being encountered by the advanced guard.

They then received an order from the Brigadier to the effect that two squadrons of the regiment were to move *viâ* the west of Moncel, and outflank the enemy from that direction.

A fair amount of firing had been going on, some bullets had fallen close to the head of the column and some shells a little distance away, so it seemed probable that the enemy were in certain strength in the immediate vicinity, though

Digitized by Google

no information concerning him or of the situation in general had come in.

'A' and 'B' Squadrons of the 18th, both very much below strength, proceeded at a fast pace across the Aubetin stream, at Aubetin Farm, the nearest point of passage west of Fretoy, turned east for about half a mile after crossing the stream, and moved through the wooded country which lined its banks. The 18th then wheeled to the north and emerged from the woodland just south of the village of Moneuse, wasting a little time in cutting some wire fences which enclosed the woods.

Immediately after crossing the Dagny road, scouts reported that some of the enemy were halted, dismounted, in the plain, which stretched from the edge of the wood just passed through for some distance north and north-east of Moncel.

The C.O. and Major Stewart, going forward to a point just east of the Dagny road, saw about 500 yards to the north-east some thirty or forty mounted and dismounted men, and some dead horses lying near them, while small bodies of mounted troops were retiring in the direction of La Clottée Farm.

Major Stewart, who was in command of 'A' Squadron, was directed to push one of his troops into the village of Moncel and hold it, while he brought the other two in action against the Germans, who, it was very evident, were engaged in 'going through' the pockets of some wounded men of the 9th Lancers.

The country to the north, at a distance of about three-quarters of a mile, was wooded, and the ground undulating, and it was necessary to make it good before moving further in the direction of Faujus and Vieux Villars, where, from the little information so far gathered, the enemy's supports seemed to be.

Major Leveson, who commanded 'B' Squadron, was ordered to take his squadron just east of Moneuse, gain the

Digitized by Google

wooded strip which lay to the north-east of that village, follow the valley up south of Faujus, and try and cut the enemy off from Vieux Villars. Meanwhile, Major Stewart, taking advantage of scattered trees, got to within about 300 yards of Moncel, pushed one troop into the village, and opened fire with the other two he had with him on the Germans, who were then about 300 to 400 yards north of the village.

The fire of the two troops was very effective, and came as a complete surprise, as the morning was misty, and the foe did not seem to be expecting trouble from this direction.

Several Germans were knocked over, and the remainder very rapidly scampered off in the direction of Vieux Villars, followed by 'A' Squadron, dismounted, for about 1,000 yards, when they were brought to a stop by rifle and machine-gun fire from the farm of 'la Clottée.'

In the meanwhile Major Leveson moved north, and then north-east, along the wooded belt, which ran from the north of Moneuse to a point about three-quarters of a mile south of Faujus. Having reached this latter point he dismounted, left Captain Sopper, his second in command, with one troop and the led horses, and set out with three very weak troops under Lieutenants Pilter, Summers and Nicholson (all of whom lost their lives later on in the war), to attack the farms at 'la Clottée' and 'Vieux Villars.'

When about 500 yards from the former place, which was his first objective, and less than 300 from a light railway line, which crossed his left front as it wound its way across the cornfields from Vieux Villars to Faujus, a squadron of German Cavalry, the 1st Dragoons of the Guard, about sixty strong, suddenly topped the slight railway embankment a little to his left front, having evidently spotted the led horses, and, no doubt expecting to find them an easy prey, moved at a gallop in their direction.

The Squadron Commander, however, almost immediately

Digitized by Google

he had crossed the railway, saw Major Leveson and the latter's dismounted men, and swung his squadron round to charge them.

Just previously the presence of the advancing horsemen had become known to Major Leveson's scouts and had been instantly reported to him. He had therefore time to swing forward his right and bring his command in line directly across the enemy's path.

The scene of the ensuing encounter was a long flat stretch of cornland, on which the wheat stood in stooks; but these presented no serious obstacle to either fire or movement.

Leveson, having completed his wheel, at once opened a steady fire which was crushing in its effect. A stream of bullets, fired by good marksmen, could hardly fail to strike, again and again, such a magnificent target.

The hostile squadron was in perfect line, moving at a gallop at a distance of about 200 yards, when it first received this fire, and, carried on no doubt by the impetus of the attack, the wave of horsemen spent itself some 50 yards from 'B' Squadron, where a struggling mass of horses and riders, in an almost unbroken line, strewed the stubble.

It seemed as if the ground had opened and swallowed up the advancing horsemen, but a second glance disclosed many of the fallen foe in one line on the reaped cornfield, with others laying in dotted heaps further away, while a few more lucky ones galloped for dear life whence they had come.

It was now about 10 A.M., and a little previously an order had been received that the Army was not to advance beyond the line Dagny—Amillis until further instructions were issued.

Presumably in consequence of this order, the attack on the farm of La Clottée was stopped, Major Leveson receiving orders from Brigade Headquarters to discontinue his advance.

It was not till noon that the advance recommenced, and two precious hours were lost. One may surmise that a good

Digitized by Google

impression was being made on the enemy's rearguard screen, and that, had a rapid advance of a large mounted force been initiated, a considerable success would have ensued.

Unity of command, authorising the concentration of Allied cavalry and guns, and the support of mobile infantry, was a preliminary necessity for reaping the fruits of any such small success as that which has just been described.

Sergt. Arnitt's Account

It may be of interest to record the impressions of one of the Non-commissioned Officers of 'B' Squadron, Sergt. Arnitt, who took part in this encounter—

'On September 7, 1914, "B" Squadron had orders to make a flanking attack on a farm, which "A" Squadron was taking on in front.

'I remember we were very weak in numbers at this time, as my troop, when dismounted, was only ten strong, including the troop officer. We dismounted for action under cover in some undergrowth, about 1,000 yards from the farm, and advanced in extended order towards it. There was a lot of firing going on towards "A" Squadron, when to our surprise someone shouted that a squadron was charging at us on our left. Of course, our object in view, the farm, was quite forgotten, and our most gallant and resourceful leader, seeing his opportunity, gave orders to take up a position and open a rapid fire.

'The squadron leader of the German squadron did not seem to have noticed us at first, and I believe he intended charging in the direction of the led horses; moreover, we had left a troop with the latter, which no doubt further led him to suppose that we were all in that direction. Their squadron, which was about eighty or ninety strong, was led to destruction by a most brave and gallant leader, for though he quickly grasped the fact that his men were in a hopeless

Digitized by Google

position, he nevertheless changed his direction and charged down on our ranks.

'As soon as we heard that noise which sounded quite familiar to us all, we at once opened fire. After the first two volleys were fired, half their squadron had fallen in front of a small railway line, and, though the remainder pressed on, yet in an incredibly short time the whole squadron was wiped out. I say "wiped out," because I know for certain only three men got away, and I am sure they must have been hit several times, as when they disappeared over the skyline they had no weapons left and their horses were lame.

'Immediately afterwards we advanced and occupied the railway line which lay just in front, and from behind which the enemy had appeared. When we arrived there the sights we saw I shall never forget, as my position was right in the centre of the prostrate German line. Fine men they were, too, but for a moment I had no time to observe them, as we were still being fired at from a wood about 600 yards to our left front. However the fire soon stopped, no doubt on account of the wounded Germans and of our own invisibility behind the slight cover given by the railway line, and our led horses got the benefit of it instead. We lay quite still for about ten minutes, when a Sergeant shouted to me to watch a German officer who lay just on my left rear. I turned round and saw him moving about in a strange manner, and, seeing his hand wander near his belt, I covered him with my revolver and told him to lie still; but he still kept moving his hand, so I thought I had better go and investigate. On reaching him, I found that he had been badly wounded, so I gave him water and dressed his wounds, and he thanked me in good English and handed me his revolver and field-glasses, and told me to keep them as a keepsake.

'While I was attending this same officer, my squadron leader gave the order for two men a section to take water to the wounded and dress their wounds. I think the way our

Digitized by Google

men treated those unfortunate Dragoons will never be forgotten. We had no one hit, I am pleased to say, but two of the led horses were slightly wounded.

'We left the field of battle after everyone had been put right and retired to a farm about a mile in rear, where the Colonel praised the Squadron for its gallant behaviour and excellent shooting.'

German Account

The following is an abridged account of the day's work of the Ist Guard Dragoon Regiment on September 7, 1914, taken from Major Von Altheim's book, 'Das erste Dragoner Regiment im Kriege, 1914–1918':—

'The Ist Guard Regiment left Bréton-Bazoches early on the morning of September 7, 1914, heading the advance of the Guard Division.

'When the Division retired under pressure of the French advance, the regiment turned first to the west, and then on the nearer approach of the British to the north.

'In front of us was the village of Frétoy, and on our right a meadow stream. We hastened to gain the brook and village before the enemy came into the water meadow near by. The passage was attained only under the nose of the oncoming enemy.

'North-east of Frétoy was a small wood, in which the regiment gained cover. The 2nd and 3rd Squadrons seized and held the edge of the wood. The 5th and two weak troops, which at that time made up the 4th Squadron, remained mounted. The 5th Squadron was seventy strong, its patrols and point being still out.

'Our commander, accompanied by a few troopers, rode into the village of Moncel, which lay in front of us, to gain information.

'We had all observed some hostile horsemen riding about

Digitized by Google

in the country to the south, when the commander came back and said, "The 5th Squadron will attack." He pointed out as the objective some high straw ricks, which stood some hundred metres north of Moncel, and which lay about 900 metres away. It was difficult to gauge the exact situation, but some rifle fire was going on in that direction.

'Rittmeister Von Ganling gave the signal to move off. The squadron trotted on in column of troops, and followed the Rittmeister who, with both his trumpeters, Blasche and Friedrich, galloped on ahead to reconnoitre more exactly. Bullets began to fly past.

'In a moment one saw a number of the enemy shoot up from among the straw stooks.

'The Rittmeister gave an order for deployment, and immediately afterwards the gallop. All at once a machine-gun opened fire on our left. One clearly saw the small whirls of dust rise up in the field, and the gun must have been somewhere to the half left, but could not be observed.

'The Rittmeister ordered a wheel. The centre continued at a gallop, but the wing could not keep up on its tired horses, so a considerable body bunched together on the right.

'The squadron swept through the machine-gun fire. The hostile riflemen sprang up when the German horsemen charged; they were Englishmen. At the same time, a mounted squadron appeared behind the stacks in a hollow. Our hearts beat high. A mounted combat! There they stood, an English Lancer regiment, motionless in their ranks, the lance in the bridlehand, the revolver in the right.

'Why did not the Englishmen ride on? By not doing so they missed their opportunity. We sprang over the riflepits, and soon scattered the Englishmen during the short time that the period of cutting and thrusting lasted. Then there was a halt. A mix-up of horsemen followed, among whom ran the English riflemen, hiding themselves on the ground. There were also many loose horses of the unseated Tommies.

Digitized by Google

Our horsemen from the right, shouting "Hurrah," rode up to complete the outflanking of the enemy.

'The enemy gave way, and the whole mass moved to the left on the village. "Pursue, pursue." If we succeed, the enemy will run into our reinforcements and will be lost.

'The wild pursuit went back across the Chaussée which led to the village of Moncel. The English are just in front of us; they ride for their lives. Our lances are ready for the enemy, but the last Englishman vanished in time into the village.

'The assembly is sounded. The Rittmeister called the advanced troopers together and formed a column of troops. At that moment Sergeant Mehlis came towards the squadron, and reported that the whole place was full of the enemy.

'The squadron turned about on the cornfield over which it had come. It walked quietly back. Buddenbrock's troop received an order to move back on the ground where the attack had taken place, so as to succour the wounded and look after any prisoners.

'The squadron proceeded to take post in the foremost houses of Les Hayottes, fixed itself up, counted up the missing and wounded, was told off again, and then occupied a farm by a small railway which overlooked the ground by which an attack could come.

'Buddenbrock's troop found on the ground of the collision some wounded men, including Sergeant Rennus and Trooper Gelin, who were badly hit. There were also a number of Englishmen. A German lance had gone through the breast of a lieutenant. There were also some unwounded English, who hid themselves in the stubble.

'Before we could save our wounded, the English opened fire on the spot, so that Buddenbrock had to leave, so as not to suffer more losses. One of his men was hit.

'When the squadron rode to the attack, Trooper Hübner, on the left flank, suddenly observed the enemy's machine-

Digitized by Google

gun. It stood close by the village of Moncel, on the flank of the squadron.

'Sergeant Mehlis, accompanied by a few men, immediately determined to attack the gun.

'The English, when they saw themselves suddenly attacked, gave way and did not attempt to continue to serve the gun, so it fell under the German lances. Some Dragoons stopped to remove the gun, but as they could not manage to do so, they smashed it up with stones and rendered it useless. Other Dragoons rode some distance into the village and surprised the limber, which was in a lane they passed by.

'Unfortunately, Trooper de Ries was killed at this spot. Mehlis himself rode right into the middle of the village, which was full of hostile troopers. He brought this important information back to the squadron, after he had silenced the machine-gun at a decisive moment.

'Our opponent was a 9th Lancer Squadron. Possibly one troop was dismounted, and this composed the firing line.

'In trusting to the machine-gun fire the English squadron had hesitated to charge.

'Our attack overthrew riders, riflemen, and the machine-gun.

'The 5th Squadron had, during the attack and afterwards, turned away a good deal to the left, and almost described a circle.

'The English who had fallen from their horses, and those who had been in the firing line, hastily made themselves scarce. The led horses vanished with the rest of the squadron.

'As soon as the English observed that the German troops had retreated, they came back again to the scene of combat. The lancers behaved well towards our wounded. Those who came to England in captivity had a proportionately equitable fate.

'After the attack of the 5th Squadron the situation was such that the riflemen of the 2nd and 3rd Squadrons in the

Digitized by Google

strip of woodland, in the fields between Moncel and les Hayottes, held their position under fire.

'The riflemen of the 5th Squadron had, as already explained, seized a farm on the way between the two villages. Here they drove off English patrols which, apparently, wished to find out whither their adversary had gone.

'From the west heavy English forces recommenced to move against the regiment. Our only reserves were the two troops of the 4th Squadron. These had to be flung against the enemy to prevent the firing line being overwhelmed.

'Under the leadership of Lieutenant V. Glasow and Sergeant-Major Grade, they rode to the attack. They came under a furious machine-gun fire of such intensity that the majority fell on one small patch of ground. Lieutenant V. Glasow and the greater number fell at once close to the railway line. Sergeant-Major Grade and about twelve riders over-rode the firing line, plunged beyond the line, and then encountered fresh machine-gun fire. It seemed that the entire two troops were annihilated. The enemy halted, and even drew back from the railway, so that help could be brought to the wounded.

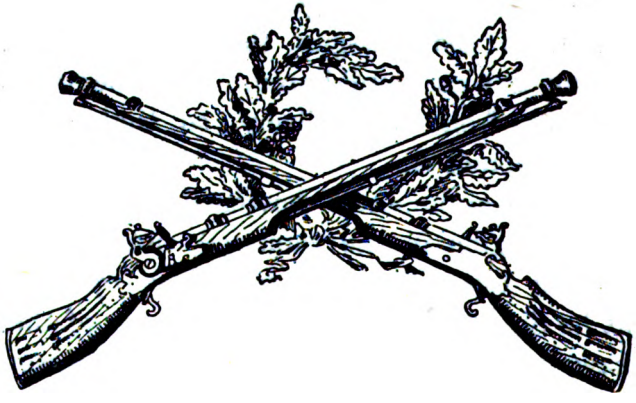
'Doctors and ambulances hastened to the spot. They succeeded in bringing in the wounded, notwithstanding that the enemy had established himself close by. It must be owned that he directed his fire over the heads of the Germans, when he saw that they had to deal with their wounded and take them away. In the end, the troops were got away. Unfortunately, the whole of the transport, together with the wounded, subsequently fell into the hands of the French.

'The result of this little attack was proportionately great. It so checked the advancing enemy that the German rear-guard was able to march off later uninterrupted. It appears from an English statement that the enemy was the 2nd British Cavalry Brigade, which consisted of the 9th Lancers and 18th Hussars.

Digitized by Google

'The English write that they were attacked by two German squadrons and were driven back. Probably they reckoned the twenty horsemen under Buddenbrock as another squadron. According to their account, the 4th Squadron consisted of seventy horsemen—it was only thirty-eight strong.'

There follows a list of casualties for the day. From it we read that the 4th Squadron suffered thirty-eight, and the 5th Squadron eighteen casualties. Comment on this account seems unnecessary.



Digitized by Google

LION HUNTING

By 'Inniskilling'

(*concluded*)

If, by some mischance, you did not kill your first lion dead, ignore all the others, and keep on firing at him till he stops moving. If an animal makes off wounded, you should get on after him and keep on shooting so long as he is in sight, in the endeavour to stop him before he can reach covert. Once you have lost sight of him, your troubles have begun. A wounded lion, so long as he is going away from the hunter, and sees a way out, will seldom charge. It is usually when he begins to think he is cornered that he turns

upon the enemy. There are, of course, exceptions, such as a lioness with young cubs, or a beast which is sore from recent wounds or injuries, and so is in a bad temper. The former will sometimes, though not invariably, charge without provocation; often she merely tries to make such a demonstration as will serve to drive away an intruder. But, whether wounded or not, she always requires very careful handling.

Once your lion has been wounded and has got out of sight, it is better not to follow on the blood spoor at once

Digitized by Google

if the latter leads into thick covert. Sit down and 'make a plan,' as the Boers say. If you have dogs in camp, send for them. Even with quite indifferent dogs, the danger of following a wounded lion in thick covert is nearly halved. Without such assistance your task is very difficult. A wounded lion usually selects the most impenetrable part of the thickest bush he can find, and there lies silent, ready to pounce out on any incautious pursuer from a distance of a very few yards. In such cases the odds are very heavily against the man. If no dogs are available, some hours should be allowed to elapse—which, if the animal has been badly wounded, will allow him time to die in peace, and if not, will at least stiffen his wounds, and reduce his activity.

You must proceed with the utmost caution, scouting the far side of every likely thick place to see if the blood spoor leads beyond. When you think you have located him, try to get a view from some position of safety—up a tree, for instance. It is in your favour that the animal may have ceased to dread pursuit, and has his attention more fixed on his own sufferings than on the necessity for self-defence. Therefore, if your approach is perfectly silent, and you keep out of sight, the wind also being right, there is just a slender chance that you may surprise him. Should you fail to view him, a shot may move him to show himself either for offence or for further flight. Should he leave his shelter with the obvious intention of charging, and you are duly hidden, say, behind a tree and remain motionless, you will probably get a good shot at him while he gazes about, whisking his tail. He will, however, be harder to knock out now than he was at the first attack, and you, yourself, are less likely to be so steady. It is hardly necessary to add that your followers must be well under cover in rear of you. Fortunately, a wounded animal is as likely to attempt to get away as to attack you. Perhaps a lioness is a little more likely to charge than a lion similarly situated; but I don't think there is

Digitized by Google

much to choose once an individual has been wounded and followed up. Natives sometimes say that a young lion is more dangerous than an old one, and that the converse is true with the other sex.

I believe a wounded lion only charges in desperation, because he sees no way of escape otherwise; accordingly, such an animal in company with others is much less likely to make trouble than if by himself, since he feels a sense of protection in a crowd. However, it is the nature of most animals to get away by themselves when badly hurt.

The general moral is that, for your own sake and your people's sake, and for the sake of the splendid beast you seek to destroy, it is well to use every effort, even at the imminent risk of losing your chance altogether, not to take doubtful shots at lions. The experienced hunter will seldom, except by unavoidable accident, get himself into a tight place.

Sometimes the country is open or nearly so, and is dotted with isolated patches of forest, bush, or reeds. It is in such havens that lions will probably be found taking the daily siesta. These places are sometimes of large extent, and so dense that, when you are inside, the lions may slip away without giving you even a glimpse of them. A drive is here the best method. It is best to take up a position down wind and about 100 yards from the edge of the covert, more or less, according to local conditions. A piece of bush, a tree trunk, or, failing these, a slight artificial grass or reed shelter, can be used for concealment. When you are safely in position, the trackers go to the up-wind side of the bush, fire the grass, and generally create the greatest disturbance possible. This nearly always has the immediate result of bringing the lions out on the down-wind side, provided they have not seen you take up your post. They will usually pause on the rim of the covert, like bathers about to jump into cold water, and will then trot rapidly across the open, often stopping to

Digitized by Google

scan the country in front. There are two moments to make use of; the first, when the animals pause on the edge of the bush, and the second just when they have passed, or are opposite to you. On a shot being fired, they will all break at once into a gallop, but, being unable to locate its source, are not likely to turn back into covert, except in the case of a wounded one, which will nearly always do so. Troops, or pairs, of lions can almost always be driven out of covert without difficulty; but old, solitary males are frequently much more cunning, and will lie very close, even allowing beaters to pass close to them without making a sign. To dislodge such wily customers is very hard; often the only means is fire, if the covert will burn, or some good dogs. Terriers are excellent for the purpose; they are noisy, active and plucky, while their small size enables them to slip about under the brushwood in comparative safety. There is practically no danger to the men who are sent in to drive a bit of bush for lions, provided none of the latter have been wounded. Unless the bush is a very big one, it is indeed often not necessary for them to enter it, if they make enough noise.

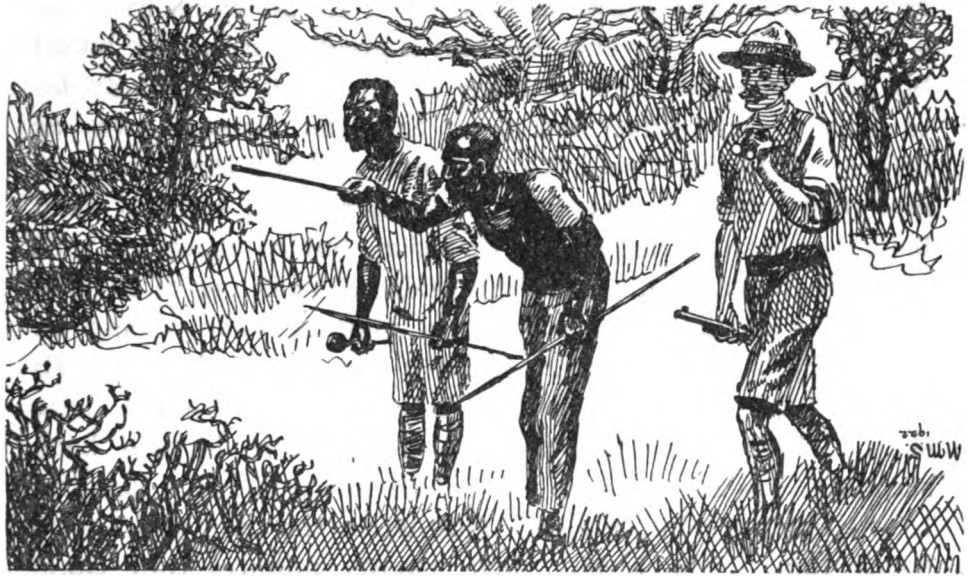
It is seldom that people are found adhering consistently to their own precepts, and an instance comes to mind when I had very much better luck than my neglect of certain fundamental precautions entitled me to.

One forenoon we were working the banks of a dry river bed, its sandy channel blocked with huge masses of dwarf palms and reeds which formed ideal places of concealment for lions.

Presently we picked up fresh tracks of a solitary male, and followed them for half a mile along the rocky and thorn-bushed bank, before they plunged in among the palms to the left. Almost immediately my leading tracker dropped, and pointed excitedly to a spot among the reeds about 80 yards away. From my recumbent position I could see

Digitized by Google

nothing, so I crawled to a mass of logs and *débris* in the river bed, to the left front. Peering through these, I presently made out part of the reddish mane of a sleeping lion, less than 30 yards away. Exactly what part of his head or neck it was, I could not be sure, and so thick was the tangle between us that I felt certain in any case, my ·303 bullet



SPOTTING A LION IN THICK BUSH.

would deflect from the small mark available. So I waited with what patience I could for him to change his position, and give me a view. Suddenly, without any preliminary movement that I could see, he was on his feet, and before I could find a clear space in front of the muzzle of the rifle, he disappeared behind the palms. Following very carefully, I could see nothing of him. I knew he could not have seen or winded us; but feared that the curious sixth sense, which wild animals seem to possess, had warned him that all was not well; so I whistled up the boys, and we tracked him into a dense grove of palms and drift, 200 yards down river. Sending my two followers round up wind to scare him out, I got behind a small tree on top of the bank. Twice the boys

Digitized by Google

went right through the palms, shouting and whistling, without the lion betraying his presence by the slightest movement or sound. The boys were certain he was still inside, and so we decided to fire the reeds. Some time passed and the smoke rolled over in dense clouds; still nothing happened, and the fire had got two-thirds of the way through, when suddenly out he burst and passed across my front 50 yards away at a heavy gallop. My shot hit him a great deal too far back; but it turned him, and he came up the bank at right angles to his previous course, and about the same distance away as before. My second shot stopped him, and the third knocked him over; but he was up in a moment, and stopped dead behind a bush, facing in my direction, but so concealed that all I could see of him was the ominous whisking of his tail tuft. He stood thus for nearly a minute, when, seeing no enemy, he turned and galloped for a very dense piece of bush on the bank 100 yards away, giving no chance for a clear shot. There was a big pool of blood where he had been standing, which led me to think him badly hit, so I shouted to the boys to climb a small bluff across the river and try to locate him in the bush. After twenty minutes they came back to say that he had gone through the bush, and that they had seen him trotting slowly along the bank about a quarter of a mile up river. They said that he did not appear to be badly wounded, as he was moving quite freely. I was rather puzzled, but thought it as well to push on to where they had last seen him, and see what the blood spoor was like. We therefore walked straight ahead as fast as possible, and entered the bush I had seen him go into, quite carelessly. Both boys were in front and one was carrying my rifle. We had barely reached the outskirts, when there was a tremendous grunt close in front, and I had the momentary vision of a shaggy mass half-concealed by scrub, rising from the foot of a big tree not 20 yards away. The excellent 'Watch' had pushed the rifle into my hands in the flicker of an eyelid,

Digitized by Google

but the lion was as quick in diving into a dense mass of palms just behind him; while, as the weapon came to my shoulder, I found the other man's head in the line of fire. There was a crashing in front and then silence, and I think we all felt we were very well out of it. What had happened was obvious. Another lion had been lying in this bit of covert, and, disturbed by the shooting, had made off up river, while the wounded one had not gone much beyond the edge.

I now sent to camp for the dogs, and, with their assistance, we soon found the lion lying quite dead in the heart of the covert. I have no idea why he did not charge, as he wanted to do shortly before; probably he was feeling too sick. Anyhow, it was a lesson always to carry the rifle, and always to make quite sure your wounded animal has left covert before you rush blindly in yourself.

Digitized by Google

'THERE IS NO NEW THING UNDER THE SUN'
(Ecclesiastes)

By MAJOR E. J. HARDY, D.S.O., *The Royal Scots Greys*

ABOUT 2,300 years ago a Treatise was written on the duties of a Commander of Cavalry.

'This is the most ancient work known which deals specially with the Cavalry Service, and it is very interesting as an expression of the views of a skilled soldier who, throughout all his writings, seems to have shown not only a thorough knowledge of the Cavalry Service, but an appreciation and a fondness for it of a very marked character.' —'History of Cavalry' (Dennison).

It was called 'Hipparchicus,' and its author was Xenophon.

It is thought that it was written for the instruction of his son, who afterwards served in the Athenian Cavalry; his father perhaps wished him to qualify for a Commander.

Xenophon was an Athenian country gentleman, a great sportsman, writer and authority on Cavalry at a period when the Greek Cavalry had attained a very high degree of efficiency, and were the best trained troops in the world.

Although this Treatise is not generally well known, it may be of interest to readers of the CAVALRY JOURNAL to compare the latest ideas (as illustrated by the new Field Service Regulations and Cavalry Training) with those of the earliest writer.

The following extracts have been selected as likely to prove most interesting.

It will be noticed that the general principles are in most cases remarkably similar.

Digitized by Google

Chapter 1.

'Summary of the duties of a Commander-in-Chief of Cavalry. How he may keep his men and horses in an efficient and serviceable condition and render the inferior officers well qualified for their duties.'

Leadership.—'First of all it is incumbent on you to offer sacrifice, and to intreat the Gods to grant you to think, and say, and do, those things by which you may exercise your command most agreeably to them, and with the greatest pleasure, and honour, and benefit to yourself, your friends, and your country.'

Establishment and Reinforcements.—'When the Gods are propitious you must mount your Cavalry, taking care that the number prescribed by law may be completed and that the force previously enrolled may not be diminished; for unless new horsemen are added the number will constantly grow less, as some must retire from old age, and some must fail from other causes.'

Remounts.—'After the complement is made up, you must take care that the horses may be fed in such a way as to be able to endure exertion; for horses that are too weak for their work will be unable to overtake an enemy or to retreat.

'You must make it an object of your attention, too, that they may be fit for service; for such as are unmanageable are an aid to the enemy rather than to their friends.

'Such as kick when they are mounted, also, must be set aside, for they often inflict more mischief on their own side than the enemy inflict.'

You must pay attention to their feet also, that they may be in a condition to be ridden even on rough ground, knowing that when they suffer from being ridden they become useless—iron shoes were unknown at that date, and Grecian mountain paths were hard and rugged.

Digitized by Google

Skill at Arms.—When you have your horses in proper condition, you must next exercise your men; in the first place that they may be well able to vault on their horses, for by that means safety has been secured by many; and, in the second, that they may be qualified to ride over any kind of ground, as the enemy will be at different times in different places.

'When they are able to sit firm, you must see that they exercise themselves as much as possible in throwing javelins on horseback, and that they qualify themselves to do everything that Cavalry ought to do.'

Discipline.—'In the next place, you must make it your care that your men be obedient; for without obedience there will be no profit either in good horses, or in a firm-seated rider, or in fine arms.'

Cavalry Training.—'In regard to all these things, then, it is right that a Commander of Cavalry should give authoritative directions, in order that they may be properly done.'

Parliamentary Influence.—'But since the State, thinking it difficult for the Commander of Cavalry to accomplish all these objects without assistance, appoint him phylarchs (Squadron Leaders) as coadjutors, and enjoins the Senate to support him by giving their attention to the Cavalry.

'You should secure able speakers in the Senate, who may, by their remarks, keep the Cavalry in awe (for under the influence of fear they will attend to their duties better) and who may pacify the Senate, should they show any unreasonable displeasure.'

Training.—'To lead out the Cavalry frequently, however, in order that they may be qualified to keep their seats on every sort of ground, may perhaps appear, when there is no war, somewhat troublesome; but it will be proper to call the horsemen together and to advise them to exercise themselves, and when they ride out into the country or anywhere else, to quit the beaten road and to gallop their horses

Digitized by Google

over ground of all sorts, for this will be of much the same use as to lead them out, and will cause them less annoyance.'

Standard of Efficiency.—'It will be useful to remind them, too, that the State supports an expenditure of nearly forty talents a year for the Cavalry, in order that, if war arise, they may not have to seek Cavalry, but may make use of that which they have at once, as being in proper condition. How wise their Senate was, for it is natural that the soldiers, reflecting on this expense, should apply to their exercise with greater diligence, in order that, if war should break out, they may not have to contend, without due preparation, for their country, for Glory, and for life.'

Personal Example.—'It will be well for you also to announce to the men that you will take them out yourself on certain occasions, and will lead them over ground of every description.

'To render the men obedient, it is important to represent in your addresses to them how many advantages there are in submitting to orders; and it is of great effect to arrange things so in practice that the orderly may gain something by their good conduct, and the disorderly be in every respect the losers.'

The chapter concludes by urging Squadron Leaders to excel all their men in skill at arms and horsemanship, setting thereby a good example, and securing the respect and ready obedience of those under them.

Chapter 2.

Drill.—'Of the order to be observed by the Cavalry on different occasions.

'When your Cavalry are well exercised in all these particulars, they ought next to be taught a certain order, by observing which they may march in processions with the greatest precision, may perform their evolutions with the best effect, may fight, if it be necessary, with the greatest

Digitized by Google

success, and may pursue their marches and make their way over obstacles with the utmost ease and the least possible confusion.

'But if they are without any regular order, they may throw one another into confusion in defiles and passages of rivers, and no one of his own accord takes a post in face of the enemy.'

Squadron Leaders.—'For the Leader, you ought by all means to appoint an able man, for, if he is brave, he will whenever he is to march against the enemy, inspire those in front with ardour by his exhortations; or, if circumstances require him to retreat, he will be more likely, by drawing off his force judiciously, to preserve his men.'

Chapter 3.

Ceremonial.—Deals entirely with Ceremonial, and describes the manner in which Cavalry should drill on State occasions, processions, etc., including various evolutions at the faster paces, with minute detail in several cases, as, for instances :—

Position of the Lance.—'Nor will I omit to mention how their lances may be carried so as least to interfere with one another; for each man should hold his lance between the ears of his horse, if the weapons are to look formidable and distinct, and at the same time to present the appearance of a multitude.'

Seat.—'When you have to exhibit the Cavalry on hard ground, the men, to secure themselves from falling off their horses, should lean back as they ride, and, to prevent the horses from falling, they should keep up their heads with the bridle whenever they wheel round.'

* * * * * * *

Chapter 4.

March Discipline.—'Of the mode of marching in time of war. How to act cautiously and efficiently with a small force.

Digitized by Google

'On marches, the Commander of Cavalry ought constantly to consider how he may give rest to the backs of his horses, and afford relief to the riders as they proceed, whether by riding at a moderate pace, or by dismounting and walking at a moderate pace.

'In maintaining this moderate pace you will not fail if you pay proper attention to the matter, for any man can judge for himself, so as not to be unaware when others are overfatigued.

'When, however, it is uncertain whether you may fall in with the enemy, you must rest the squadrons in turn for it would be dangerous if the enemy should come upon you when all your men are dismounted.

'If you have to march through narrow passes, you must lead your men in single file; if you come into broad roads you must extend your front; and when you come into plains you must form in a solid body for it is well to execute these movements even for the sake of exercise, and it is more agreeable, as you pursue your route, to vary the modes of marching.'

Reconnaissance of Ground.—'When you march over difficult ground, it will be very proper, not only in hostile but in friendly country, that some of the junior officers should ride on in advance; who if they meet with impassable woods, may seek unobstructed ways, and point out to the rest of the cavalry where they must direct their march.'

Security.—'If you march in expectation of encountering dangers, it is the part of a prudent commander to see that extraordinary scouts go before the ordinary ones to ascertain the position of the enemy.'

Crossing Defiles.—'It is proper also, both for attack and defence and for the crossing of rivers that the soldiers should wait for one another, that those who get over last may not fatigue their horses by hastening after their leader; almost all officers know the propriety of this, but there are not many willing to take the trouble of constantly attending to it.'

Digitized by Google

Personal Reconnaissance.—'It is the duty of a Commander of Cavalry in times of peace to study to acquire an exact knowledge, as well of the enemy's country as of his own; and if he cannot obtain such knowledge personally, he may keep about him men that are best acquainted with the several parts of both countries; for a leader who knows the roads is a totally different person from one who is ignorant of them; and, in forming plans against the enemy, he who has a knowledge of the country has a vast advantage over him who is a stranger to it.

'That it is proper to endeavour to learn the state of the enemy's affairs by means of scouts has been long ago said; but I think it best of all for the General himself to watch the enemy, if he can, from some safe position and observe whether they commit an error.'

Intelligence.—'When you are procuring spies, too, before a war is actually begun, you ought to take care that they may be taken from towns friendly to both parties and from merchants; for all towns receive as friends those who bring anything with them; and such persons are sometimes useful as pretended deserters.

'You ought never to trust to your spies, however, so far as to neglect to keep on your guard, but you should always be as well prepared as if the enemy were reported to be approaching; for however trustworthy the spies may be it may be difficult for them to bring in information in time, since many obstacles occur in war.'

Secrecy.—'The enemy will be least likely to observe the march of Cavalry out of the camp if it be conducted by passing the word from man to man rather than announcement made by a herald or by a written order which is read out aloud.'

Security.—'Whenever it is necessary to guard against surprise, I always recommend watches to be set, and sentinels to be posted with secrecy; for thus, while they are a security

Digitized by Google

to their friends, they are rendered as it were an ambush to the enemy.

'The watch themselves, too, when they are concealed are less liable to surprise, and much more to be dreaded by the enemy.

'It is indeed the part of a prudent commander never willingly to expose himself to danger, except when he has previously made it clear that he will have the advantage over his adversaries.

'But for him to offer favourable opportunities of which the enemy may take advantage, may be justly considered rather a betrayal of his fellow-soldiers than a display of fortitude.'

Strategy.—'It is judicious, moreover, to make an attack on the enemy in the part where he is weakest, though that part may be at some distance, for to endure the fatigue of a long march is less dangerous than to contend against a superior force.

'If, again, when the enemy are on the march, any part of their force, weaker than your own, is detached from the main body, or strays from it through too great self-confidence, you must not fail to take advantage of such an opportunity; but you must always take care to pursue such weaker body with a force stronger than itself.'

'You may also profit by the following observations in regard to animals.'

Study of Wild Animals.—'Since birds and beasts of prey which are inferior in intellect to a man will seize on whatever is left unguarded and retreat to a place of safety before they are captured, and wolves will hunt cattle that are without protection, or steal such as are in places unwatched, and if a dog comes in pursuit of one of them, he will, if the dog is weaker than himself, attack him, or if the dog is stronger, will kill the animal that he is carrying and make off.

'And since wolves when they think themselves stronger

Digitized by Google

than those who keep guard, appoint some of their number to drive off the guard, and other to carry away the cattle, and thus secure subsistence for themselves.

'Does it not become man, when beasts can carry off their prey with so much cunning, to show himself wiser than beasts, which are themselves caught by the art of man?'

Chapter 5.

Of Contrivances for Deceiving the Enemy.—'A Commander of Cavalry should be fertile also in contrivances, and know how to make a small body of Cavalry appear large, and a large one appear small; how to make the enemy imagine that he is absent when he is present, and present when he is absent.

'It is an excellent artifice, also, to contrive, when you are weaker than the enemy, to strike terror into them, that they may not attack you; and when you are stronger, to create a false confidence in them, that they may come to a battle; for then you yourself are least likely to suffer loss, and are in the best condition to take advantage of any error on the part of the enemy.

'When you wish your Cavalry to appear numerous, let it be your first consideration whether there be a fair opportunity for doing do, that you may not attempt to deceive the enemy when you are close upon them; for it is safe to try such deceit at a distance and it is more likely to be successful.

'You must bear in mind that horses appear more numerous when they are in a close body, on account of the size of the animal, but that, when they are scattered about, they are easily counted.

'Should you, on the other hand, wish a large number to seem small, it is plain that, if there be grounds at hand to admit of concealment, you may keep some of your men in the open parts, and place others out of sight and thus disguise their number.

Digitized by Google

'To alarm the enemy you may adopt pretended ambuscades, may feign to send succour to this or that quarter, or may circulate false reports. The enemy, however, are always boldest when they hear that their adversaries have plenty of trouble or occupation.

'Having laid down these precepts, I shall add that a commander ought always to be on the alert to deceive the enemy so as to take advantage of present circumstances; for really nothing is more useful in war than deceit.

'If a person reflects upon the various advantages that have been obtained in wars, he will find that the most and greatest have been obtained by stratagems.

'It is sometimes an effectual mode of deceit to make it appear that you are extremely cautious and will run no risk; for this often leads the enemy to be less on their guard, and to commit more mistakes. On the other hand, if a commander appears on some occasions to be venturesome, he may, even while he continues quiet, yet feign to be preparing for some enterprise and cause the enemy much anxiety.'

Chapter 6.

How a Leader may Secure the Respect and Affection of his Men.—'Nor can a commander do what he pleases with his men unless they be disposed, with the help of the Gods, as to have a friendly feeling towards him, and a conviction that he has more skill than themselves in ordering battles with an enemy.'

Comfort and Security of the Men.—'A friendly feeling it is likely that the troops will entertain towards him, if he shows that he takes thought for them, that they may have provisions, may retire to a secure camp, and rest under a sufficient guard.

'In the field he must let it be seen that he pays attention to the forage of the horses, the tents, the water and the posting of sentinels, and all other necessary matters, exercising his

Digitized by Google

forethought, and even depriving himself of sleep, for the good of those under his command.'

Personal Example.—'Contempt for a commander they will be very unlikely to feel, if he appears to do whatever he orders them to do, better than they.

'He ought to exercise them in every sort of equestrian accomplishment, that they may see that their leader is able to cross ditches on horseback with safety, to leap over walls, to jump down from heights, and to throw his javelin efficiently; for all such qualifications contribute to protect him from being undervalued.

'If they feel assured, too, that he is skilful in directing affairs, and able to secure them advantages over the enemy; and if they are impressed also with the belief that he will not lead them against the enemy rashly, all such feelings will render troops more submissive to their commander.'

Chapters 7 and 8.

General Advice to Commanders.—'Sometimes it is advantageous to make attacks on the enemy when they are at their morning or evening meal, or when they are rising from their beds; for at all such times the troops are unarmed, the infantry for a shorter, and the cavalry for a longer time.

'On their sentinels and outposts you should never cease to make attempts, for these are always few in number, and are sometimes stationed far away from the stronger main body.'

Physical Fitness.—'Those, however, who would be able to annoy a much stronger Army than their own, ought to have so much the advantage over their enemies in military skill.

'The first requisite to this is, that those who are to engage in predatory excursions should be so inured to the fatigue of riding that they may be prepared to endure every sort of military exertion; for horses and men who are unaccustomed to such duty would appear like women going to fight against men.'

Digitized by Google

Equitation.—'But those who are taught and accustomed to leap across ditches, to jump over walls, to ascend banks or descend from them with safety, and to ride at full speed down steep ground, will have a great advantage over those who are untrained, as winged animals have over those that can only walk.'

Study of Ground.—'And those who are acquainted with the face of a country will as much surpass those who are unacquainted with it, in advancing and retreating, as those who have sight would surpass the blind.'

Horsemastership.—'A commander should understand moreover, that horses in good condition are such as are well fed, but at the same time exercised so effectively that they will not lose their wind under fatigue.'

Equestrian Exercises.—'Should any officer think that he should have too much trouble if he must thus exercise his Cavalry, let him reflect that those who exercise themselves in gymnastic games undergo far greater labour and trouble than those who practise equestrian exercises to the utmost degree; for the greater part of gymnastic exercises are performed with much sweat, but most of those of an equestrian kind with pleasure.'

Tactics.—'There are some commanders who, when they are going against an enemy to whom they think themselves superior, set out with a very small force, so that they often suffer what they hoped to inflict; and when they proceed against an enemy to whom they are quite certain that they are inferior, they take with them all the troops they can command.'

Retreat and Rearguards.—'But I am of opinion that you ought to act in quite a contrary manner; when a commander leads out his troops expecting to win, let him take whatever strength he can muster. No leader ever repented of obtaining an overwhelming victory. But when he makes an attempt upon an enemy far superior in numbers, and foresees that, after doing his utmost, he will still be obliged to retreat: I

Digitized by Google

assert that, in such a case, it is much better for him to lead a few of his men than the whole of them, picking the flower of his force, the best of his men, and the best of his horses; for being of that description, they will be able to execute any enterprise, and all the better conduct their retreat.

'Good horses and men will be able to escape from the hands of the enemy, especially if the commander contrives to threaten the pursuers with his reserve of Cavalry. For this purpose, pretended ambushes are serviceable, and it will be useful for himself also to discover at what point some of his own party may show themselves with safety so as to retard the course of the pursuers.'

Chapter 9.

Concluding Remarks.—'To secure men who will act against the enemy with prudence, fidelity, zeal and courage, requires great ability in a commander.

'He ought to be qualified to speak and act in such a manner that those who are under his command may feel convinced that it is advantageous for them to obey him, to follow him as their leader, and to engage the enemy under his direction, and that they may feel a desire for praise and a resolution to persevere in whatever course they adopt.

'It is quite enough for a commander to read these precepts but a few times, but let him seize every chance of testing them in action, and, looking to that which offers itself, work out that which is expedient.

'To commit to writing everything that he ought to do is no more possible than to know everything that will happen.

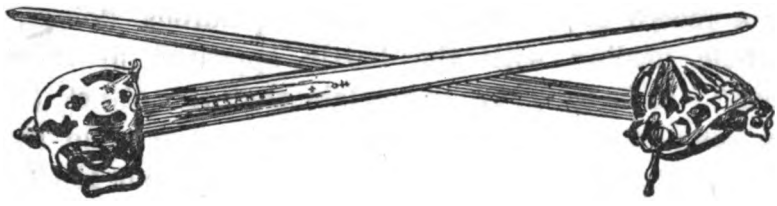
'Of all admonitions, however, the best seems to me to be, that whatever he discovers to be advantageous, he should take care that it be carried into execution; for neither in agriculture, nor in navigation, nor in military command does accurate knowledge produce any effect, unless the possessor of it takes care that it be carried into practice.'

Digitized by Google

To the reader who has waded through all, or some, of the foregoing extracts, it will I think be clear that Xenophon was at all events a writer who knew what he was writing about, and that the principles he evolved compare very favourably with those of the present time.

'I love everything that's old, old friends, old times, old manners, old books, old wine."

(*She Stoops to Conquer.*)



Digitized by Google

THE MACHINE GUN CORPS (CAVALRY) IN FRANCE, 1916–1918.

By Captain T. Preston, M.C., *Yorkshire Hussars.*

X.—Battle of Amiens.

The next occasion on which the Machine Gun Squadrons confronted the enemy was August 8, 1918—'the black day of the German Army,' as Ludendorff calls it in his "War Memories".'

It is not necessary to go into details about the Fourth Army attack on this date, for the present story is only meant to be a record of the Machine Gun Squadrons' doings, and an article dealing with the battle appeared in a recent number.* It is sufficient to explain that the attack (which was a complete surprise) was delivered in the main by the Australian and Canadian Corps, assisted by about 450 Tanks. There was no preliminary bombardment.

The task of the Cavalry Corps was to push through the Infantry when opportunity offered, secure the 'Amiens outer defence line'† and hold it till the Infantry came up. Subsequently the Cavalry was to move south-east in the general direction of Roye and Chaulnes.

On the night August 7/8, all three Cavalry Divisions moved out of Amiens in one long column (the horses being closed up almost nose to tail), and assembled in the fork

* 'The Door Ajar,' Cavalry Journal, October, 1921.

† This was a line of old trenches dug by the French in 1915-16. It was about 6 miles ahead of our front line.

Digitized by Google

between the Roye and Villers–Bretonneux roads. Forward of this assembly position, a special track was made by which the Cavalry could advance without masking the numerous batteries or interfering with the various Infantry reserves crowded behind the front line.

'Zero,' on August 8, was at 4.20 a.m.; the bombardment opened and the Tanks and Infantry moved forward. The attack was a stupendous success, and the leading Cavalry units began to pass through the Infantry about 9 a.m. or soon after. It should be noted that the 1st Cavalry Division (1st and 9th Brigades leading) was on the left; the 3rd Cavalry Division (Canadian Brigade leading) on the right; and the 2nd Cavalry Division in reserve. Their approximate lines of advance can be seen by the map, and the final objective was reached by 2.30 p.m., and earlier in some cases.

The 1st M.G. Squadron (temporarily commanded by the Divisional M.G. Officer, Lt.-Col. King) sent two subsections, under Lieut. Crawford, to act with the Bays; the regiment advanced about 5.30 a.m., subsequently passing through the Infantry south-west of Harbonnières. The machine guns came into action against small parties of Germans, and then helped the Bays to hold a line (dismounted) between Harbonnières and the railway. It was thought the enemy would counter-attack here, so the Brigadier ordered Lt.-Col. King to take up four more guns, these being under Lieut. W. B. Little and 2nd Lieut. W. H. Cain. The wisdom of this step was seen when the enemy attack actually came, for the 1st Squadron guns engaged three hostile machine guns and a trench mortar, with excellent results. The squadron was withdrawn at 6 p.m., having had 2 men killed, 3 wounded, and 9 horses killed and wounded.

Meanwhile, the 2nd M.G. Squadron had gone into action with its brigade. One section (Lieut. E. E. Roberts, M.C.) went with the 4th Dragoon Guards, and got some shooting at retreating Germans; this section did not rejoin the

Digitized by Google

squadron till 6 a.m. next day, August 9. The subsections of Lieuts. Hibbert and Page also did good service, engaging various targets and silencing two enemy machine guns; they lost only one man wounded during the day.

In the 9th M.G. Squadron (Major J. A. Moncreiffe) all six subsections were busy early in the day, working in close co-operation with their respective regiments. The section with the 15th Hussars, who were leading regiment, fired at an enemy motor-car on the Harbonnières–Rosières road; the car caught fire and the occupants had to abandon it. Good shooting! The section with the 8th Hussars, on the right flank of the brigade, successfully covered the advance of that regiment. The 9th M.G. Squadron was relieved in the evening of August 8 by Canadian Infantry machine guns, having lost during the day's operations 1 man killed and 2 wounded with 6 horses killed and 8 wounded. One gun, put out of action with a bullet through the barrel-casing, was replaced next day.

We must now turn to the three M.G. Squadrons with the 3rd Cavalry Division, which had crossed the River Luce at Ignaucourt.

The Canadian M.G. Squadron, advancing with its brigade towards Beaucourt, soon found its services were needed. Four guns with Lord Strathcona's Horse came into action against a small wood held by the Germans; another subsection provided covering fire for a mounted charge by a squadron of the Royal Canadian Dragoons, and afterwards protected the flank of the Strathconas from counter-attack.

The 7th Squadron sent one subsection with each of the three regiments in its brigade, keeping the remaining six guns in brigade reserve; but by the afternoon the reserve subsections had also been drawn into the fight near Cayeux Wood, firing on small bodies of Germans at different ranges. Squadron-Sergt.-Major A. Callaghan did valuable work, for which he was later awarded the D.C.M., whilst M.M.'s were

Digitized by Google

won by Lance-Corpls. R. Watchorn and S. E. Sherrard, who handled their guns with great skill.

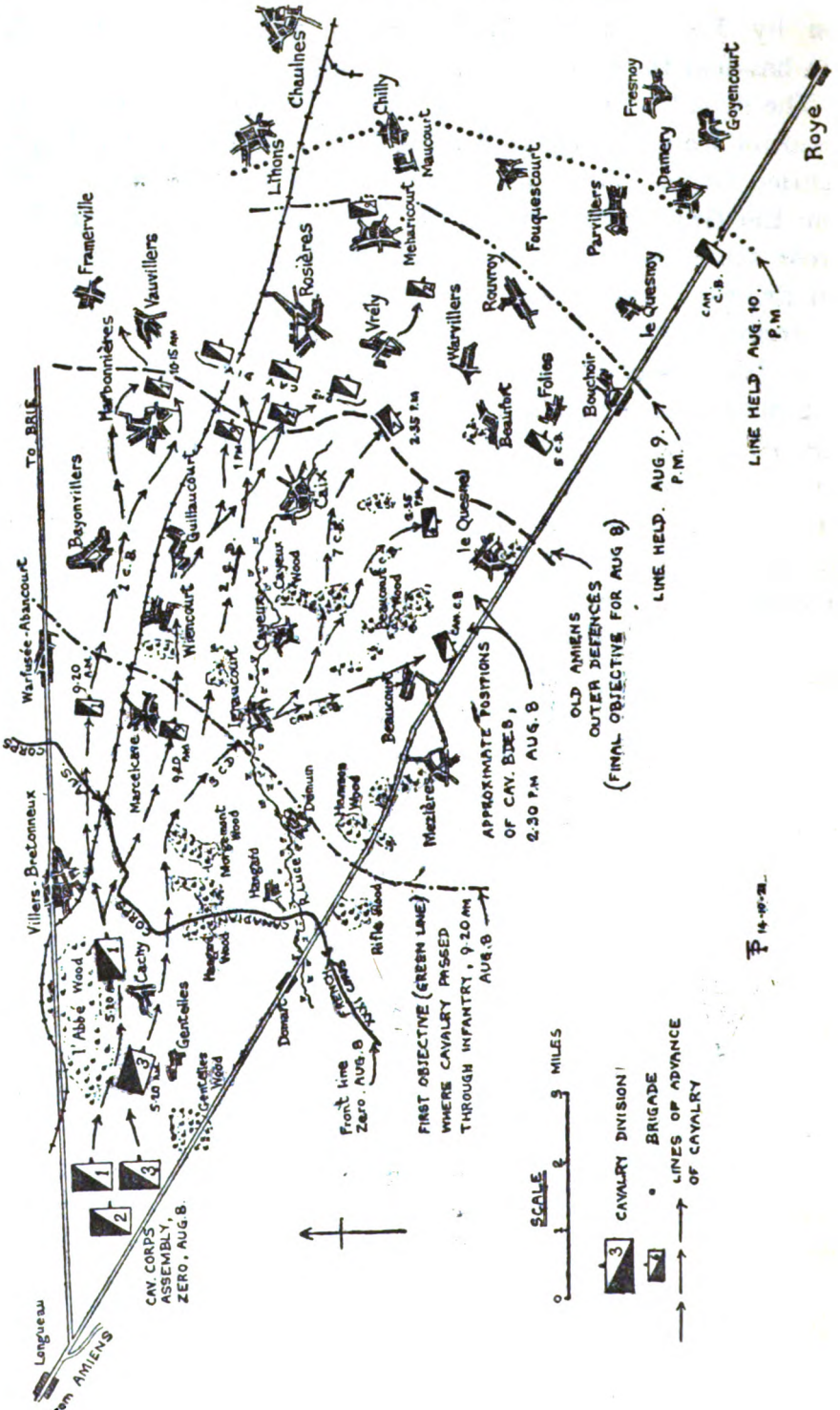
The squadron was commanded on this date (owing to the squadron leader being ill) by the Second-in-Command, Capt. Maurice Gray. This officer volunteered to take a message from the Brigadier to one of the regiments, and whilst riding across some open ground, was killed by a hostile machine-gun firing at long range. In recording this tragic incident, the writer may be allowed to pay a tribute to the memory of his friend and second-in-command. Maurice Gray was an example of the very best type of temporary officer—one who, though hating war and having had no idea of joining the army as a profession, yet proved himself a most capable and competent leader. Educated at Winchester (where he was in the cricket and Association football elevens), he went on to Trinity, Cambridge; but, on an eminent artist's advice, he left Cambridge to study painting at the Slade School, whilst besides his artistic talent, he had notable literary and musical gifts, being a promising violin player. He had joined the Bays when war broke out, and was afterwards seconded to the M.G.C. (Cavalry). Quiet—almost dreamy—in manner, he did not always get the credit for being the fine soldier that he undoubtedly was. One might truly write of him as Clarendon did of Falkland: 'Whosoever leads such a life need not care upon how short warning it be taken from him.' Gray's only brother, a Rifle Brigade subaltern, had fallen on March 31.

* * * * *

On the death of Capt. Gray, the command of the 7th M.G. Squadron devolved on Lieut. W. G. Wakefield, who was given later the M.C. The only other casualty this squadron incurred was one man wounded; the Canadian Squadron lost 3 killed and 13 wounded.

As the 6th Cavalry Brigade was in divisional reserve, the 6th M.G. Squadron did not get any actual fighting the first

Digitized by Google



Digitized by Google

day, but a few men were hit, including Lieut. A. W. G. Windham, M.C.

The 3rd, 4th, and 5th M.G. Squadrons, being in the 2nd Cavalry Division, which was in Corps Reserve, had little to do in the early stages of the battle. About 2.30 p.m., however, when the 1st and 3rd Cavalry Divisions had reached the final objective, the 2nd Cavalry Division pushed troops through to continue the advance. The 5th Lancers were directed on Warvillers, and with them went two subsections 3rd M.G. Squadron, which did very good work in subduing the fire of enemy machine-guns. Lieut. Mead and two men were wounded, whilst three others were hit, but remained at duty. Germans (chiefly machine-gunners) were holding the line Beaufort–Warvillers–Rosières, and the Cavalry pursuit was now checked. As the evening of August 8 closed in, an outpost line of dismounted Cavalry and Infantry was taken up, the horses being sent for the night to the Luce valley, between Cayeux and Caix, so as to be handy for watering. This area was considerably bombed by German aeroplanes during the night.

Next morning (9th) the advance was resumed, and there were great hopes of the Cavalry being able to make good the line Chaulnes–Roye, 4 miles ahead; these hopes were, however, disappointed.

Early in the day, the 5th M.G. Squadron (Major E. S. D. Martin, D.S.O., M.C.) sent a subsection each to the Scots Greys and 20th Hussars for a movement against Folies; the guns engaged retreating Germans at ranges of 1,400–1,600 yards, but beyond this the squadron got no real fighting.

The 2nd Squadron moved with its brigade *viâ* Vrély to Méharicourt, one section going with the advance guard (9th Lancers). The O.C. Squadron Major L. W. D. Wathen was wounded whilst at Brigade H.Q., and Lieut. W. White took over command. 2nd Lieut. E. G. Frere was also

Digitized by Google

wounded. Four subsections were in action during the day with the 4th D.G.'s and 9th Lancers, south-west of Méhari-court, but their opportunities were not many. They lost 1 man killed and 2 wounded, whilst 14 horses were killed.

It was evident, on August 9, that the Cavalry could not hope to make much more progress. The advance had now reached the edge of the 1916 Somme battlefield, which, with its old trenches, shell-holes, and wire, made mounted action almost impossible; further, the surprise effect of the previous day was wearing off, and the enemy's resistance was stiffer.

On August 10, the Canadian M.G. Squadron (Major J. H. Boulter) took part in an unsuccessful attempt to push forward along the Roye road, south-west of Damery. One subsection went with the Fort Garry Horse and two with Lord Strathcona's Horse; but as, owing to trenches and wire, the leading troops could not move across country, they tried to charge down the road, and were held up by machine-gun fire. The M.G. Squadron lost 1 man killed and 4 wounded. Lance-Corpl. A. S. Martin received the M.M. for his services.

The 1st, 3rd, 4th, 6th, 7th, and 9th M.G. Squadrons never really got into action at all after the first day (August 8), and the whole of the Cavalry were withdrawn into Army Reserve on August 12.

The 7th Squadron, on their way back, had the interesting experience of passing the scene of their April 1 fight. Indeed, the unburied bodies of some of their own men were identified, by their numerals and dark blue shoulder-straps, lying near Rifle Wood. It was some consolation to feel that never again would the Boche set foot on this ground.

It cannot truthfully be said that the Machine Gun Squadrons' experiences in this battle were really satisfactory. M.G. Officers' reports told of opportunities missed owing to lack of orders from regiments, of subsections kept back when they should have been pushed forward, of Germans

Digitized by Google

escaping unhurt who should have been dealt with by long-range Vickers gun-fire. The reports showed, in fact, that some regimental commanders did not make enough use of the M.G. subsections attached to their regiments, and among the causes of this the following may be noted :—

(1) Certain C.O.'s, while fully appreciating the value of Vickers guns in the *defence,* did not realise their value in the *attack.*

(2) In especial they did not grasp that a Vickers gun, used with a Barr & Stroud rangefinder, can make accurate shooting at 1,500 yards and over—in fact, much longer ranges than rifles or Hotchkisses.

(3) Some C.O.'s, when preparing to attack, omitted to give the M.G. officers details of the plan of attack.

(4) In such cases the M.G. officers hesitated to 'butt in' and ask a C.O. what he wished them to do, especially when he obviously had so much to think about; it must be remembered that most subsection commanders were young officers, some of them very recently commissioned; and further, they probably did not know the C.O. personally, so were naturally even more diffident.

(5) All this was because certain regiments had not practised with machine guns when training in back areas. Some regiments invariably asked for M.G. subsections to take part in any regimental or squadron schemes, but others neglected to do this. One regiment in the same brigade as the M.G. Squadron commanded by the writer systematically ignored, in tactical schemes, the machine-gun sections which it knew would be under its orders every time it went into action.*

* * * * *

About August 16, 1918, the 2nd Cavalry Division was temporarily split up, its three brigades (with the 3rd, 4th, and 5th M.G. Squadrons) being attached to different Infantry

* These considerations are certainly an argument in favour of Vickers guns being part and parcel of regiments, rather than a separate corps.

Digitized by Google

Corps, and ceasing to be under Cavalry Corps. This arrangement continued till after the Armistice.

Battles of Bapaume and the Scarpe.—There was no opportunity for mounted action in the battles of August 26 to September 3, though certain Cavalry units were moved up in readiness. On August 26, the 3rd Cavalry Brigade came under the orders of VI. Corps, and was sent to Ervillers. On the afternoon of that day the Infantry attacked the high ground north of Mory, and the 16th Lancers, with one section 3rd M.G. Squadron, tried to gallop to the crest; but they were driven back by hostile machine-gun fire and did not get another chance of advancing.

A section of the 6th M.G. Squadron was attached to Brig.-Gen. Brutinel's Independent Force for the Canadian Corps' attack on the Drocourt–Quéant line, September 2. The Independent Force assembled on the Wancourt–Guémappe road at zero hour, but Cavalry action turned out to be impossible owing to the rough ground and hostile machine guns.

On September 17, 1918, the Cavalry Corps (less 2nd Cavalry Division) took part in manœuvres, at which the Commander-in-Chief was present. A pursuing action was practised, and it proved a most instructive day for the M.G. Squadrons, who, bearing in mind the lessons of the Amiens battle, were able to improve the liaison with the regiments.

In the afternoon a conference of C.O.'s was held at Auxi-le-Chateau, where the C.-in-C. told his hearers that they would soon be pursuing the Germans in reality.

(*To be continued.*)

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

LANCE AND SWORD IN PIEDMONT, 1848.

UNIV. OF CALIFORNIA

Digitized by Google

HISTORICAL NOTES

19TH ROYAL HUSSARS

THE following extract of Government Orders was issued at Madras in 1806 on the prospective embarkation of His Majesty's 19th Light Dragoons on their return to England. It bears the most honourable testimony to the brilliant and important services of that distinguished Corps, during a period of twenty-five years in different parts of Hindostan.

'G.O.—by Government.

'Fort St George,

'*October* 11, 1806.

'On the occasion of the intended return of H.M. 19th Regiment of Light Dragoons to Europe, the Right Honourable the Governor in Council feels the greatest satisfaction in testifying in the most public manner his highest approbation of the conduct of that distinguished and valuable Corps. From the period of the arrival of H.M. 19th Dragoons in India in the year 1782 until the present time, that Regiment has shared in almost every action of difficulty and glory in which the British arms have been engaged during that long and eventful interval, and has deservedly established a degree of reputation seldom equalled and never surpassed.

'His Lordship in Council deems it unnecessary at this moment to renumerate the various instances in which H.M. 19th Dragoons have rendered the most important services to their Country; but the glory acquired by that Regiment in the field of Assaye and the many advantages which resulted from its bravery, discipline and activity on

Digitized by Google

the late memorable occasion (at Vellore), are instances which cannot be omitted and which can never be obliterated from the annals of this Country or from the memory of the British Nation.

'By Order of the Right Honourable the Governor in Council.

'(Signed) G. BUCHAN,
'Chief Secretary to the Governor.'

The Mutiny at Vellore in the Madras Presidency, to which reference is made in the above order, occurred on July 10, 1806. It was fomented and organized by Mussulmans, who, taking advantage of discontent caused by the prohibition for Hindu Sepoys to wear caste marks, and saying that the Europeans were running amok, made the Hindus fall in and surround the barracks of the 69th Regiment during the night. The neighbouring districts were in the hands of the mutineers and British rule was threatened with extinction by a wide-spread seditious plot when the 19th Light Dragoons arrived on the scene by a forced march, scaled the fortifications and, opening the gates, admitted the galloping horsemen, who destroyed the mutineers and crushed the insurrection.

SPUR MONEY

The survival of a curious custom is described in the 'European Magazine,' Vol III., 1847:

'Two or three years ago a party of Sappers and Miners were stationed at Peterborough, engaged on the trigonometrical survey, when the officer entered the Cathedral with his spurs on. He was at once beset by the choristers, who demanded money from him for treading the sacred floor with armed feet. It appears that in the time of King Henry VIII., in consequence of the interruptions to Divine Service occasioned by the ringing of spurs worn by people walking and transacting business in Cathedrals, especially in that of St. Paul's, a small

Digitized by Google

fine was imposed on them called "Spur Money," the exaction of which was committed to the beadles and singing boys. This fine was exacted in Westminster Abbey from Dr. Fisher, Bishop of Rochester, and the boys received an eighteenpenny bank token as the fine; it was likewise claimed from the Duke of Cumberland for entering the Abbey in his spurs, but His Royal Highness, who had been installed there, pleaded his right to wear spurs in that Church, inasmuch as it was the place where they were first put on him.'

We commend spur money to impoverished 'padres.'

The Order of the Bath

King Richard II. (1377–1399), when on the point of visiting Ireland, created four knights, which he designated 'Knights of the Bath,' as they were obliged to bathe themselves before they could receive the Golden Spurs.*

His successor, King Henry IV., instituted the Order on the occasion of his coronation in 1399 and established it as a military order, when he created 46 knights. They wore an embroidered shield of sky blue silk on their upper apparel, which was charged with three Crowns proper and surrounded with the motto 'Trois en un,' alluding to the three virtues Faith, Hope and Charity.

During the Wars of the Roses, under the rival Houses of York and Lancaster, the Order was allowed to decline, but in 1725 King George I. renewed and instituted the Order as it is at present constituted.

On the accession to the throne of King George III. the Order became more illustrious than at any previous period, and the names of Elliott, Nelson and Wellington were associated with this honourable body.

Foreign writers say that the origin of this Order should not be attributed to King Henry IV., asserting that it existed

* This is probably the first official record of promotion from the ranks.

Digitized by Google

long before the reign of that monarch, and that Knights of the Bath had been created both in France and Italy previous to his reign.

A Light Dragoon Recruiting Poster of about 1807

A Horse! a Horse!! my Kingdom for a Horse!!!

The 14th Light Dragoons, or Duchess of York's Own Regiment, Commanded by Lieut.-General John, Earl of Bridgewater.

Wanted a few young men of high character for this gallant Corps. You have the exclusive right of wearing the black or Imperial Eagle of Prussia; your horses are of matchless beauty; your Cloathing and accoutrements highly attractive, and smart young Britons inspired with military ardour whose noble and warlike minds are repugnant to the control of unfeeling relatives and friends, have now the glorious prospect of speedy preferment, as two additional troops are to be raised.

Application to

Sergeant Hammond,

Rose and Crown,

Whitechapel,

who belongs to this brave and invincible legion.

A liberal Bounty, and a plentiful bowl to drink His Majesty's health and the downfall of his enemies.

'N.B.—Smart young Irishmen taken.

'"God Save the King."'

A. L.

Digitized by Google

THE TANK CORPS

AT a time when reductions and disbandments are such a prominent factor in Army life, one small branch of the Service is fortunate in that it is expanding and growing. The Tank Corps is again suffering growing pains owing to the changing of personnel and the absorption of new blood.

There are many people who still look upon this mechanical arm of the Service as a wild extravagance, and yet the economy of machinery has been one of the outstanding features of development during the last four generations. During that period, at one time or another, every enterprise and commercial undertaking has been faced with the same problems.

Difficulties have arisen and the need for economy has become urgent; opinions among those responsible for directing the undertaking have been divided. One side has advocated the effecting of economies simply by cutting down and reducing, even at the sacrifice of efficiency and production, and the other side has pinned its faith on machinery, even if the economy which they hoped to achieve meant an additional initial expense.

The first is but a passive bowing to circumstances and waiting for better days, the second is a deliberate effort to overcome difficulties and to maintain and even increase efficiency at a less cost.

This crisis has occurred in every commercial undertaking at various times, and in various circumstances, but the result has always been the same. Either the firm has used machinery to carry out what it could no longer afford to do by hand, or the firm has gone under.

Digitized by Google

In commerce, economy has been achieved not so much by abolishing existing organisations, as by using machinery to reduce the numbers of the least skilled workers.

It is thought that a consideration of the commercial life of the country and its comparison with Army problems is a far more convincing argument in favour of mechanicalisation than any mass of statistics could be.

Publications of details concerning the development of the tanks have not been numerous, but from statements of the former Secretary of State for War in the House of Commons, it is clear that great progress is being made in the direction of increased speed.

Pictures in the Press showed a new type of Tank floating in the Thames estuary, with an account of how the machine, having accomplished a certain distance, ceased to float and sank to the bottom. The outstanding feature of this early effort was not that the Tank eventually sank, but that it swam at all. The above are but scraps of information, but they indicate clearly the lines along which development can now certainly take place.

Machines, however, neither make nor win war, it is the man who uses the machine who is the dominant factor. The Experimental Brigade at Aldershot has done much to prepare soldiers to use and understand the machines. The Tank Battalion forming part of this Brigade was throughout last year's training season only equipped with Tanks made at the end of the War. Experiments could not, therefore, be carried far into the future, but at a time when so many soldiers have had little or no opportunity of either co-operating in battle or training in peace with Tanks, simple training schemes with even wartime Tanks are of greatest value in producing a wider military understanding.

Digitized by Google

POSITION-FINDING BY AIRCRAFT

DIRECTION-FINDING on the cross-Channel air routes by wireless telephony is now in general use and the following description will be of interest to our readers and particularly to cavalry signallers.

Croydon and Pulham direction-finding Stations, working in conjunction, now keep a regular watch during the hours when flying is taking place on the Continental Air Routes for the purpose of providing pilots with information as to the position of their aircraft.

The establishment of this system has been decided upon as the result of a series of tests carried out during the winter months.

This important aid to navigation has proved to be capable of determining the position of aircraft with a high degree of accuracy under normal conditions.

The experience gained in the use of position-finding in good weather, when pilots are able to check the accuracy of the positions given by Wireless Telephone, adds to their confidence and proficiency in using the system when flying in bad weather.

The application of wireless telephony to contact patrol, and for inter-communication between aircraft and cavalry patrols, suggests great possibilities.

The receiver (with battery) in a machine weighs about 8-lbs. The transmitter, which in the case of a machine has an airscrew-driven generator, about 18-lbs.

In the case of a transmitter carried by a ground patrol, either a hand-driven generator, or batteries, would have to be carried; and in addition an aerial of about 100 feet would have to be erected on lances, bushes, etc.

In giving an aircraft position, reference is made to the time at which the readings were made, and it is essential that the aircraft watch should be absolutely accurate.

In order to avoid unnecessary interference and loss of time, the aircraft operator invariably 'listens in' before calling a station, to ensure that that station is not already engaged: since calling a ground station when another machine is speaking to it frequently renders both machines unreadable.

The procedure for using Radiotelephony for aircraft direction-finding is as follows:—

(1) An aircraft GEXYZ wishes to ascertain its position:—
Aircraft calls Croydon:—
'Hullo Croydon, Hullo Croydon, GEXYZ calling, GEXYZ calling, position required position required, GEXYZ changing over.'*

(2) Croydon replies:—
'Hullo GEXYZ, Hullo GEXYZ, Croydon answering, Croydon answering, Righto, Righto, please speak now for one minute.' (In the event of other aircraft talking, Croydon will order them to cease work).

* 'Changing over' means that the aircraft operator is going to change over a switch from 'send' to 'receive.'

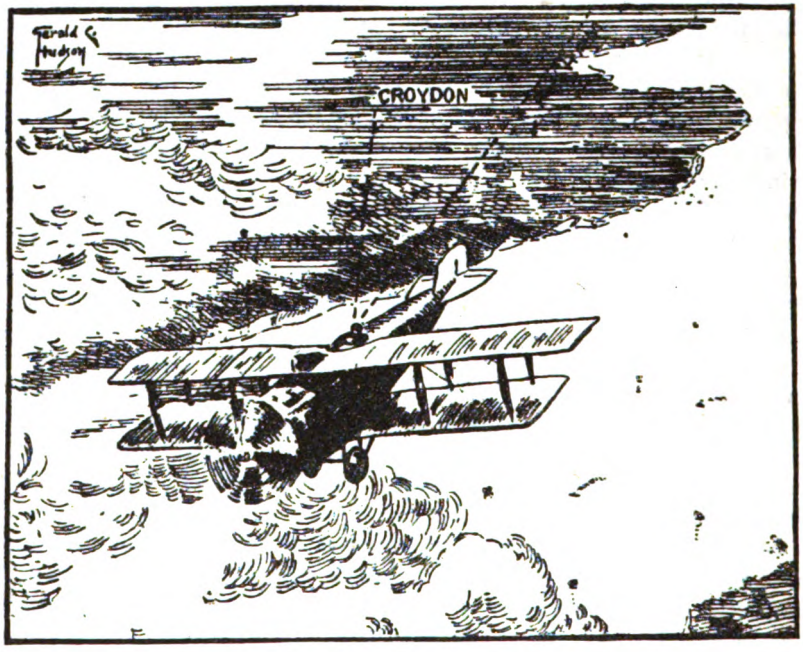
Digitized by Google

(3) The reply 'Righto' means that Croydon is ready to take the bearing. The aircraft operator then speaks for one minute, bearing in mind that Croydon is paying no attention to the actual words and would not hear if anything of importance were said.
(4) Pulham takes a bearing and passes it to Croydon.
(5) Croydon takes a bearing, plots the position of the aircraft in conjunction with Pulham's bearing, and continues :—

'Hullo GEXYZ, Hullo GEXYZ, Croydon calling, at 1509 position 10 miles south of Beachy Head, position 10 miles south of Beachy Head.'

(6) Aircraft replies :—

'Hullo Croydon, Hullo Croydon, GEXYZ answering, GEXYZ answering, at 1509 position 10 miles south of Beachy Head, At 1509 position 10 miles south of Beachy Head, GEXYZ switching off.'



SHORT SERVICE COMMISSIONS IN THE ROYAL AIR FORCE.

Vacancies exist for suitable candidates between the ages of 18 and 25 for short service commissions for flying duties in the Royal Air Force for a period of 4 or 5 years, in the rank of Pilot Officers (on probation). The probationary period is six months and service in the Reserve 4 or more years. This opportunity of joining the 'cavalry of the air' will probably appeal to many who are leaving the cavalry owing to the reduction of the Army.

All officers entered under this scheme are taught to fly and facilities are afforded when possible to specialise in certain other subjects.

Digitized by Google

RECENT PUBLICATIONS

'Life of Lieut.-General Sir Eyre Coote, K.B.' By Colonel H. C. Wylly, C.B. Oxford Univ. Press. 24*s*.

COOTE first saw service at Falkirk in 1746, and was 'broke' for joining in the flight of the Royal Army from the field. His future career teaches us not to judge a youngster too hastily, for he lived to re-enter the Army and wrest India for England from the French, fighting for the Company against the most dangerous enemy that has ever risen against British Power in that Peninsula. In the Wars with Hyder, Coote had many difficulties against which to contend and over and over again he deplores his want of CAVALRY which prevented him from consummating some of the most brilliant of his victories. Unsupported by the Madras Government, Coote secured such successes as were possible by his amazing boldness and determination, also by the high state of military efficiency to which his sympathy and understanding had raised the Indian troops which formed the main part of his armies.

The Volume is illustrated by a number of excellent portraits and several illuminating maps and plans; there are also a number of appendices of considerable interest. A. L.

'Under Ten Viceroys: The Reminiscences of a Ghurka.' By Major-General N. Woodyatt, C.B. Herbert Jenkins, Ltd. 16*s*.

THE author tells us much about the Viceroys who held high office during the time he was serving in India, but he tells us more about the very distinguished soldiers, many of them Cavalry officers, with whom in cantonments, in camp, in office, and in the field he came into contact and about each he has something fresh and interesting to tell, also many capital stories to narrate. What he has to say about Indian unrest is deserving of careful study.

Digitized by Google

From beginning to end there is no dull page in this very cheerily-written book, and it may be confidently recommended equally to the Regular soldier and to those of the Territorial Army with whom, in India, he came into close contact and of whose soldierly qualities he expresses so high an opinion.

A. L.

'Modern Cavalry.' By Major Malcolm Wheeler-Nicholson, Cavalry, United States Army. London, 1922: Macmillan, 10*s*.

An excellent little book. The writer emphasises all through its pages the importance of mobility, speed and dash, and that no modern mechanical inventions can possibly take the place of Cavalry.

There is nothing actually new in it, but it is a thoroughly practical treatise from which all young officers, of whatever branch of the Service they may be, can acquire knowledge of the use and duties of Cavalry in war.

'A Short History of the Order of St. John of Jerusalem.' By E. M. Tenison. London, 1922. The Society of SS. Peter and Paul, 32, George Street, W., 3*s*. 6*d*.

This little work, in 112 pages, covers the events connected with the Hospitallers of the Order from 1014 to the present day. 'Long-dead but ever-living heroes are the invisible leaders whose exploits, sacrifices, and achievements spur us into action,' and we are told something of the brave Countess of Tripoli, of Richard Cœur de Lion, of Saladin; La Valette's defence of Malta against the Ottoman armada of Solyman the Magnificent; the martyrdom of Trémincourt; Napoleon, the dissolution of the White Cross Knights, the reconstitution of the Order on the lines of the first foundation, its service to humanity in the wars of the 19th century; its connection with the British Red Cross Society, and H.R.H. the Prince of Wales, Grand Prior for Wales. We

Digitized by Google

consider that, as this is the only concise naval and military history of the Order, it should be in every military library. We would like to see more illustrations in the next edition, and a map or panorama of Malta, similar to the painting in the style of Canaletto in the Wallace Collection.

'The Sussex Yeomanry and 16th (Sussex Yeomanry) Battalion Royal Sussex Regiment.' By Lieut.-Colonel H. I. Powell-Edwards, D.S.O. Illustrations and Maps. 8vo. London, 1922. Andrew Melrose, Ltd., 10*s.* 6*d.*

THIS is an excellent history, not only of the Sussex Yeomanry during the late war, but of the life and conditions of the British Expeditionary Force on the various fronts. The Sussex Yeomanry, as part of the 74th (Yeomanry) Division, saw service in Gallipoli, Egypt, Palestine and France.

Many of the writer's comments will be fully appreciated by those who suffered in a similar manner during the war by conversion to Infantry. The chapters on the fighting in Palestine and the many difficulties with which the British Force had to contend are especially instructive. The book is well illustrated from photographs and has excellent maps.

H. G. P.

'With the Cavalry in the West.' By Aquila. Published by John Lane, The Bodley Head, Ltd., 6*s.* net.

THIS book gives an account of a young cavalry officer's experiences from the date of joining Sandhurst to the end of the war on the Western Front.

To those who were through the war, it will recall many pleasant and also unpleasant days; and to those who did not participate in the war it will give a general idea of the daily life and duties of the young cavalry officer during the war. The writer relates many amusing tales of the doings of both the senior and junior ranks. The illustrations are sketchy.

Digitized by Google

SPORTING NOTES

H.R.H. THE PRINCE OF WALES, during his tour, has taken part in every branch of sport, and we are certain that what he is proudest of is winning the Hog Hunters' Cup in Central India. The country where this event takes place is a far more difficult and dangerous country to ride over than where the Kadir Cup is held. General Baden-Powell's picture, which he kindly drew for the *Journal*, gives a good idea of the traps that are often encountered, and a very clever horse accustomed to the country is wanted. It was a great performance for a beginner at the game to pull off this important event.

We are able to give some interesting details of the shooting which His Royal Highness the Prince of Wales enjoyed as the guest of His Highness the Maharajah of Bikanir. Shooting was arranged for large parties on three days, December 3, 5 and 6, the guns being posted, in the case of the crane and duck shoots, round the different lakes or tanks, and the birds flighting from one to the other. On December 3, in the morning, the shoot was at Kodamdesar, and His Royal Highness, with a party of fourteen other guns, shot 145 duck. The total for the day was 39 demoiselle crane, 305 duck and 9 sand grouse.

On December 5, His Royal Highness accounted for 65, the total morning bag being 1,061 imperial sand grouse, 324 sand grouse, 5 duck—in all 1,390 head.

On December 6 the shoot was again at Sugansagar and Gujmer. At Sugansagar His Royal Highness was one of a party of 22 guns, including H. H. the Maharajah of Bikanir. The party killed a total for the morning of 886 imperial sand grouse, 29 sand grouse, and 2 duck—in all, 916 head.

Digitized by Google

THE HOG-HUNTERS' CUP: INDIA.

Won by the Prince of Wales in 1922.

Of this race it has been said (for reasons like above) that 'falls are the rule rather than the exception.'

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

On December 6 the Prince killed 2 blackbuck and a chinkara, and Lord Louis Mountbatten killed 4 chinkara and a bustard. Sir Lionel Halsey the previous day had shot a blackbuck and a chinkara, and these, added to the other bags, made the grand total of the three days—3 blackbuck, 6 chinkara, 1 bustard, 39 demoiselle crane, 312 duck, 1,946 imperial sand grouse, and 362 sand grouse—total 2,660 head.

Those who are unfamiliar with Indian shooting may be interested to know that the demoiselle crane, *koonj* or *koolan*, affords fine sport comparable to that obtained with grey-lag geese. The birds fly high and fast, and are very wary and cunning. They have often been mistaken, even by experienced guns, for geese, as they fly in skeins. Not only are they difficult to shoot, but they are excellent eating.

Congratulations to the four disbanded Cavalry Regiments on being again reinstated in a minor way.

There is a Club that the vast majority of Cavalry officers look on as their home when they are in London—the Cavalry Club. Now that the numbers of Cavalry officers are being so greatly reduced it will make it very difficult for the Club to keep up the requisite number of members to make both ends meet. During the war the Cavalry Club was not hit as badly as a good many other Clubs. Nearly every regiment quartered abroad was ordered to France. This meant that most, if not all, of the officers got leave to England and so had to pay the home subscription, instead of the £1 1*s.* 0*d.* for members abroad. This made a great difference to the Club and enabled them to carry on.

We are afraid that in a few years it will be very difficult, and we hope that every Cavalry officer, if not already a

Digitized by Google

member, will make a point of joining. It is one of the most comfortable and best run clubs in London.

To hark back to the amalgamation of two regiments into one, we had a very difficult job during the latter part of the South African War. It was decided to form Provisional Regiments out of two reserve squadrons. At that time a reserve squadron was usually over 1,000 strong and were up several times to over 1,500.

Most officers know that there are certain regiments that have a feud with other regiments. No one knows how they originally started and the regiments may not have met for years, but still the feud goes on. One morning we received orders to join another reserve squadron and form a Provisional Regiment. This happened to belong to a regiment with which there was a bitter feud of long standing. We expected trouble and friction and got it. Nothing went right. Each crowd thought the Colonel favoured the other lot, and there were any amount of complaints. The Colonel, who was one of the best and fairest men we ever met, decided to hold sports and the programme was drawn out. On the day when the entries closed our crowd did not send in a single entry. We sent for the Sergeant Majors and asked the reason. The senior Sergeant Major saluted and said 'the regiment did not care to compete against the other one. . .' Then we think we saw red, and let go. We told them they were acting like blank blank babies, and if they wanted to do the other lot down they should enter all their best men and beat them in every event, and we expected the entries that afternoon. They arrived, and on the day of the sports 14 out of 17 events were won. Then we remarked to the Sergeant Major: 'Now you have scored and not acted like a blank baby.' After that things went fairly well.

We hope the new regiments will not have the same experiences.

Digitized by Google

Racing

By kind permission of H.R.H. Prince Henry we publish a picture in this number of his point-to-point horse 'Rathgarogue.' He is by D'Arenberg—Miss Orontes, and is a wonderful little hunter. This year he has won the Bicester Hunt point-to-point and also the King's Cup for past and present members of the King's Royal Rifle Corps, which was run at the Crawley and Horsham Meeting. Last year he won the Infantry Cup at the 1st Cavalry Brigade point-to-point Races. He has several times run into a place and has always been ridden by his owner.

A pleasing feature of this season's flat racing has been the return to form of the Egerton House establishment, run by Lord Marcus Beresford and Marsh. They have succeeded in winning several races for H.M. The King. They have even persuaded 'Joss House' to win a race: this horse has run an extraordinary number of seconds, and since winning has again run second.

We have not heard that anything has, so far, been decided about the National Stud at Tully in Ireland. Stock bred there have done very well on the racecourse this year, and we believe that, since it was started as a National Stud on presentation to the nation by Lord Wavertree, a sum of nearly £100,000 has been paid into the Treasury, after all expenses, &c. being paid.

We hope the anti-sport and kill-joy element in Parliament will note this. We also hope the Stud will be allowed to carry on in Ireland.

A beautiful bred mare, called 'Montem,' by 'Ladas,' holds a curious record. She is now 21 years old and has had thirteen foals, but not one single colt out of the lot.

Digitized by Google

A fine sportsman has just passed over at the age of 81 years, Mr. Arthur Yates. In his time he rode 700 winners, mostly over a country. He broke nearly every bone at different times, but still lived to this great age. He trained many winners, including 'Cloister,' who won the Grand National in 1893. One horse he owned ran in 101 races and won 45 of them, a horse called 'Crawler.'

Arthur Yates was a great friend to young men, especially soldiers who wished to ride winners. He would put them up in gallops and go out of his way to encourage them and give them good advice, and no man was in a position to give better advice on riding races. We remember the first winner we rode in England was trained by him.

The Derby

THE DERBY STAKES of 50 sovs each, h. ft., or 5 sovs only if dec., with 3,000 added; breeder of winner 500 sovs, owner of second 400 sovs, owner of third 200. About one mile and a half.

CAPTAIN CUTTLE, ch c by Hurry On—Bellavista (Lord Woolavington), 9 st. S. Donoghue 1

TAMAR, b c by Tracery—Hamoaze (Lord Astor), 9 st.....F. Bullock 2

CRAIGANGOWER, ch c by Polymelus—Fortuna (Mr. A. B. Walker), 9st. M. Beary 3

(Winner trained by F. Darling, Beckhampton.)

Betting—4 to 1 agst St. Louis, 11 to 2 agst Pondoland, 10 to 1 each agst CAPTAIN CUTTLE and Tamar, 100 to 9 agst Re-echo, 100 to 7 agst Psychology, 20 to 1 each agst North End and Craigangower, 25 to 1 agst Bucks Hussar, 33 to 1 each agst Lord of Burghley, Scamp, and Simon Pure, 40 to 1 each agst Dry Toast and Great Star, 50 to 1 each agst Villars and Diligence, 66 to 1 agst Irish Battle, and 100 to 1 agst any other.

Place Betting—5 to 4 agst St. Louis; others proportionate.

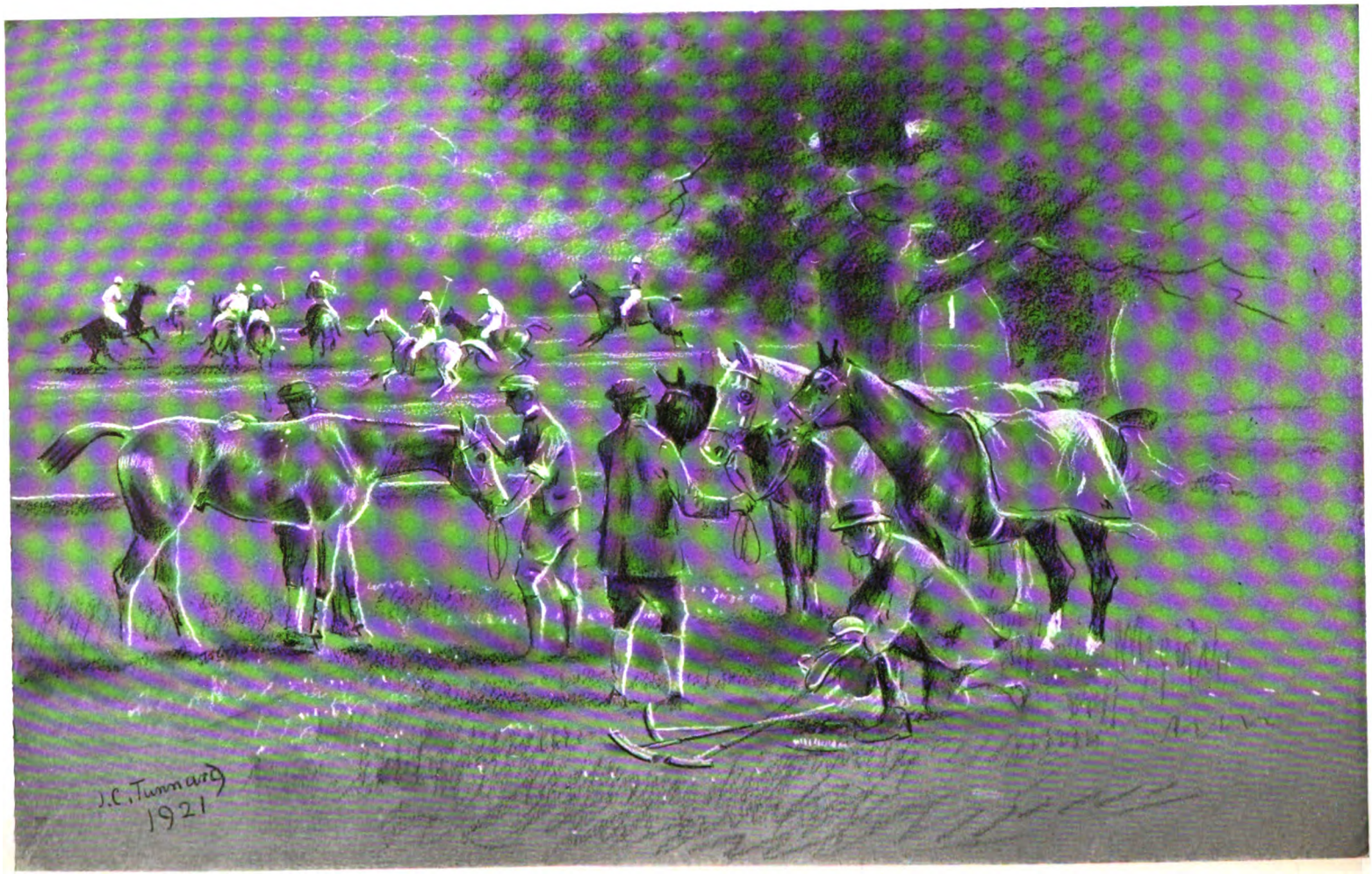
Tamar, Craigangower, Moyode, Bucks Hussar, and Re-echo were fractious, Tamar and St. Louis breaking the tapes, while Moyode kicked Lord of Burghley. Eventually the barrier ascended to a fair start, but Moyode, Re-echo, North End, and Double First failed to strike off on terms with the others. Jacquot on the inside showed the way to Psychology in the centre, with Captain Cuttle, Scamp, Irish Battle, and St. Louis on the right, and Craigangower on the left, Simon Pure, Bucks Hussar, Silpho, Lord Bilberry, and Satelles, Tamar heading the others, who were whipped in by Double First. After going six furlongs Jacquot was followed by Psychology and Scamp, in close company with Captain Cuttle just clear of St. Louis, Lord Bilberry, Silpho, Craigangower, Bucks Hussar, Simon Pure, Tamar, Villars, Pondoland, and Re-echo. Rounding Tattenham Corner Scamp was beaten, as also were Psychology, Lord Bilberry, Silpho, and St. Louis. Entering the straight Captain Cuttle closed with Jacquot, and quickly taking command, Lord Woolavington's colt drew right away from Tamar and Craigangower, and gained a popular victory by four lengths. St. Louis was officially placed fourth.

Digitized by Google

Copyright. G. Stirling-Brown, 82, Lea Road, Northampton.

H.R.H. PRINCE HENRY'S RATHGAROGUE

Digitized by Google



Digitized by Google

Hunting

There is not much to write about hunting at this time of year. The hound sales at Rugby have just been completed and were remarkable for the drop in the price of hounds. They were almost pre-war prices. A good many hounds were bought for India and we hope to hear of all pre-war packs in that country being started again. Several have not been able, so far, to do so owing to the impossibility of buying hounds, the last few years, at a reasonable price.

We are sorry to hear, but not surprised, that another case of rabies has been reported from Southampton. A fifteen-mile radius for muzzling has been ordered. The dog in question was not imported or smuggled, so it is a case of the dog taking months to develop the disease. Cases have been known after seven months from the time they were bitten, and we believe it is a fact that it may take longer.

We see two Cheltenham 'ladies' have just been fined £10 each for trying to smuggle a dog. For this offence there ought to be no fine, only imprisonment; it is the only way to stop it.

Polo

Last year we had the Americans, this year a strong team from the Argentine. From all accounts the latter are a very useful, well-mounted team, and will put up a good fight against the home players.

Aldershot is itself again and the 1st Cavalry Brigade have the regiments forming it back from Ireland. The other two Brigades are also complete. This means there will be a lot of Polo played this summer; any way, until so many regiments

Digitized by Google

are reduced to one squadron. We look forward to a more interesting Regimental Tournament than last year when, owing to being sent to Ireland, so many regiments had to scratch.

It may interest Polo players to hear the financial result to Hurlingham of the Test Matches last year. Just over £4,000 was expended on Polo ponies and a loss of about £200 was made when they were sold. On the saddlery, clothing, etc., there was a loss of about £1,000. The seats for the Test Matches produced a sum of over £67,500. The Entertainment Tax, which had to be paid, amounted to £7,134 2*s.* 0*d.* The Stands were most expensive to erect and cost over £32,000, and, when sold, only fetched £1,025. The entire receipts amounted to nearly £77,000, but owing to the heavy expenses, only £12,855 remained after everything was paid.

Regimental Point-to-Point Races

Royal Artillery and 15*th Hussars.*

The Royal Artillery meeting was held at Penton, near Andover, over the property of Mr. F. A. Sutton, the 15th Hussars race being also included in the programme. Winners were :—

Royal Artillery Light-weight.—Major S. R. Mason's Ripplet. *Royal Artillery Welter.*—Mr. P. V. Williams's Karind. *The* 15*th Hussars' Regimental Race.*—Sir H. R. K. Floyd's Peter. *Royal Artillery Chargers' Race.*—Mr. E. H. Gage's Connartary. *The Subalterns' Cup.*—Mr. J. Williamson's Rufus.

Carabiniers and 13*th Hussars*

A successful joint meeting was held by the Carabiniers and 13th Hussars at Wokingham, near Reading, both the management and the racing being excellent. Major L. A. Jackson, Master of the Garth Hunt, was judge. The various events were won as follows :—

Carabiniers' Subalterns' Cup.—Mr. H. J. Nicholson's Emerald (owner). *Carabiniers Heavy-weight Race.*—Captain E. R. Chanter's Banco (Captain J. Paton). 13*th Hussars' Subalterns' Cup.*—Mr. D. A. Stirling's Romsey. *The Carabiniers*

Digitized by Google

Light-weight Cup.—Captain J. Paton's Pax Vobis. *13th Hussars' Regimental Cup.*—Mr. J. D. E. Norton's Meltonian. *Nomination Race.*—Confined to Officers of the Aldershot Command, Colonel-Commandant Harman's Warrior.

Royal Dragoons

The regimental point-to-point races of the Royal Dragoons were run over a course near Greenford Green. The following were the winners :—

Regimental Light-weight Race.—Captain D'A. Harris's Spring Grove. *Past and Present Race.*—Lieutenant-Colonel H. A. Tomkinson's Bucknell II. *Regimental Heavy-weight Race.*—Major R. Houstoun's Marcham. *Warrant Officers' and Sergeants' Race.*—Sergeant Campbell's Toe-ack. *Farmers' Race.*—Mr. S. O. Thurston's Shady Night, 1; Mr. W. Bramley's J.W.B., 2; Mr. Richmond Watson's Fizz Gig, 3.

The Inniskilling Dragoons

This meeting was held near Easingwold on April 8 :—

Subalterns' Race.—Mr. R. C. M. Shelton's Banshee (Mr. T. Hilder). *Regimental Light-Weight Race.*—Capt. L. R. Kettle's Acetyline Light (Owner). *Farmers' Race.*—Mr. C. Clemenson's Dincum (York and Ainsty) (Mr. W. H. Welburn). *Inniskilling Castle Race.*—Capt. H. Whitworth's Fluid Magnesia (York and Ainsty) (Capt. Wickham Boynton). *Regimental Heavy-Weight Race.*—Mr. E. O. Bleakley's Applejack (Owner).

The King's Dragoon Guards held their point-to-point races at Oatridge in conjunction with the Linlithgow Hunt :—

King's Dragoon Guards' Light-Weight Race (12 st. 7 lb. and over); 3¼ m.—Capt. A. B. Richardson's Foxtoi (Owner). *King's Dragoon Guards' Heavy-Weight Race* (14 st. and over); 3¼ m.—Mr. J. L. Wagett's Castle Rock (Owner).

The Royal Mews

A short time ago we paid a visit to the Royal Stables at Buckingham Palace. The number of horses kept there have been greatly reduced owing to the use of motors. There are only about 75 now, where there used to be nearly 200. The cream coloured horses that used to drag the State coach have been disposed of owing to their German origin. The black horses that replaced them have also gone. Now there are nothing but bays and browns and one chestnut charger.

Years ago all the carriage horses used to be Cleveland bays, bred in Yorkshire; but now, owing to so few really big horses being bred in England, a good many come from France.

Digitized by Google

At one time not a horse was bought that had a white hair anywhere. Now we saw white fetlocks on some of them.

The most interesting horse is one called 'Delhi,' and was given to His Majesty the King when he was in India and ridden by him at the Durbar. He is a beautiful black horse, bred in India, and has, we should think, got some Arab blood in him.

The one chestnut horse we alluded to is called 'Anzac,' and is one of the King's favourite chargers. He is a very nice-looking horse, with perfect manners.

The State coaches and harness are well worth a close inspection, and it is a pleasure to see everything in such perfect order.

The Stables are open from two to four usually two days a week, but a card has to be obtained through the Master of the Horse or from the Hon. C. Fitzwilliam, who has a house adjoining the Mews.

India.

We regret to record that Major Ashe Windham, M.C., formerly of the Inniskilling Dragoons, son of Lieut.-Colonel C. J. Windham, the Resident in Kashmir, has died at Baroda from injuries received by accidentally impaling himself on his own spear while pig-sticking.

Saugor Horse Show

The Cavalry School held their Annual Horse Show on the 9th and 11th March at Saugor, and, thanks to the efforts of everybody concerned, it was a most satisfactory show from all points of view and well up to the standard of previous years.

The jumping events, the marking of which was, as at Olympia, with a time-limit of two minutes, were productive of some really high standard jumping, over a course of eight regulation jumps ending with a level crossing, the jumps

Digitized by Google

averaging four feet seven inches in height. The most noteworthy performance was that of Capt. R. N. Nunn, Royal Deccan Horse, whose horse Buster Brown succeeded in negotiating the course with the loss of only one point; while the Inter-Ride Competition for the Challenge Cup presented by General Sir M. F. Rimington for the best team of three Second Year Remounts, not only produced some very fine horsemanship, but also furnished a most exciting finish, 'B' Ride defeating 'D' Ride (both British Officer Rides) by the narrow margin of one point.

In the Horse classes the stamp was good, and Captain H. D. Whittick, 28th Light Cavalry, is to be congratulated on winning the Cup presented by Col.-Com. P. B. Sangster, C.M.G., D.S.O., with his charger Lady Constance.

The Polo Pony classes produced some really good ponies, and in the class for ponies likely to make Polo ponies there was quite a good muster of promising material, the first prize being awarded to Lieut.-Colonel D. Robertson's, 11th Lancers, Balooch.

The Cup presented by General Sir John Shea for the best horse in the show was deservedly awarded to Lieutenant Sir Digby Warren's, 7th Hussars, Sammy; while that presented by General Sir William Marshall for the best pony in the Show was equally well won by Captain Cox of the Central India Horse, with his pony Myra.

The prize for Ladies' Hacks went to Captain D. S. Davison's, 2nd Lancers, Bobby, ridden by Miss Bucknell. This proved itself a pony of versatile characteristics, winning also the Cup presented by H.E. Sir Frank Sly, Governor of the Central Provinces and Berar, for the Heavy-weight Polo Pony Class.

The Cavalry School, Saugor, Point-to-Point Meeting

The Cavalry School held their annual Point-to-Point Meeting on the 3rd and 5th April, 1922, under perfect conditions, the

Digitized by Google

going being extremely good and the weather ideal, with just enough wind to blow the dust clear of the jumps. The School has nothing to complain of in the way of facilities and *terrain* from the point of view of Point-to-Points, as there is within 4 miles of the School a natural amphitheatre, providing both very good going over cultivated land interspersed with nullahs for the riders, and a perfect vantage point for the spectators from the surrounding crests. In fact, the competitors are only lost to sight once during the 3½ miles, and then only for a minute.

As regards the Meeting itself, all the events filled very well and the 'fields' were good. The riding was uniformly keen and good throughout, and, as an outsider, one could not but be impressed with the uniform standard of schooling, riding and fitness of both horses and riders exhibited during the Meeting, a fact that in itself not only promises well for the future efficiency of the Cavalry, but also is a splendid advertisement of the value of the Saugor Cavalry School methods. The singularly few falls that occurred were not only a pleasing return for the care and foresight with which the Commandant and the Committee had laid out a course which, without being dangerous, was, at the same time, a good test of the stamina of both horse and jockey; but also they proved that the riders were imbued with the correct spirit in that they remounted whenever possible and finished the course. Unlike most Indian Station Meetings, in which the financial side is usually so predominant, betting at Saugor is particularly non-existent, nor does the single Totalisator, which dispenses tickets for the large sum of two rupees, lend itself to the art of 'money-grubbing.'

There were several good finishes, but the most exciting of them all was undoubtedly that of the Inter-Ride Relay Race, in which 'C' Ride beat 'F' Ride by a short head.

The first day commenced with an Open Race over a course of 3½ miles, for horses the property of members of the I.C.S.,

Digitized by Google

Police or Officers of the Army on full pay. The field mustered sixteen and, after a very good race, Captain Pilkington, 16th Lancers, won by two lengths on his horse Craig-an-Eran in 11 minutes 50 seconds (catch weights, 11–7).

The second race, the Hambro Cup, for horses regularly ridden by British W.O.s and N.C.O.s during this course, resulted in a win for Sergeant Taylor's, 18th Q.M.O. Hussars, Fancy Man, by one length. There were ten starters and the distance was 2½ miles. R. S. M. Heffernan's Unlucky Number, which was doing very well, acted up to its name by falling 4 furlongs from home, accompanied by two others. The time taken was 7 minutes (catch weights, 12–0).

The third race, for the keenly contested Netheravon Cup, produced ten starters and was won easily by Captain Davison's, 2nd Lancers, Signet, Captain Humfrey, Royal Deccan Horse, acting as jockey. The time taken to cover the distance of 3½ miles was 10 minutes 3 seconds (catch weights, 11–7).

The fourth race, the 2nd Lancers Cup, for horses regularly ridden by Indian Officers at the Cavalry School during the course, was won by Jemadar Mazhar Ali Shah's, 5th Cavalry, Syed, in 8 minutes 26 seconds, by 2 lengths. There were six starters (catch weights, 11–0). Distance, 2½ miles.

The first day closed with the 24th Punjabi Cup, for ponies 14–3 and under, the property or regimental property of Officers at the Cavalry School, and was won by 6 lengths by Major Paterson's, 19th Lancers, Puritan (Owner up), in 8 minutes 16 seconds, over the 2½-mile course. Puritan is a well-known old C. B. Pony who has survived service during the war in France and Palestine. There were seven starters. (Catch weights, 11–0).

The opening event on the second day was the Inter-Ride Relay Race, open to teams of five 2nd Year Remounts from each ride, each horse to run about two miles across unknown country. The total distance covered was 13 miles and the time taken was 43 minutes 50 seconds. 'C' Ride beat

Digitized by Google

'F' Ride (Indian Officer Ride) by a short head after a terrific fight in the last 100 yards.

The 'C' Ride team was as follows :—

Captain Lyons, 1/3rd Cavalry.
Captain Marshall, 37th Lancers.
Captain Benzie, 19th Lancers.
Lieutenant Smith, 26th Light Cavalry.
Lieutenant Ayscough, 18th Q.M.O. Hussars.

The next race was the Poona Horse Cup, for horses regularly ridden by Indian Other Ranks at the Cavalry School during the course, and was won by 4 lengths by Dafadar Sundar Singh's, 31st Lancers, Tich, in 8 minutes 20 seconds over the 2½ mile course. There were nine starters. The winner rode a good race and finished well. (Catch weights, 11–0.)

The final event was the Norman Cup, for teams of four 1st or 2nd regularly ridden chargers from British Officer Rides, the teams carrying 45 stone between them. This was easily won by 'D' Ride, who came in first, second, fourth and eighth. The distance was 3½ miles and the time taken was 10 minutes 26 seconds. The 'D' Ride team was as follows :—

Captain M. Cox, Central India Horse.
Captain Prioleau, Guides Cavalry.
Captain Pilkington, 16th Lancers.
2/Lieutenant Fosdick, 7th Hussars.

At the close of the second day, the presentation of the Cups ended a Race Meeting admirable from all points of view.

A Conversation

(Within the last week or so of the Course, the Cavalry School, Saugor, holds its Point-to-Point Meeting, and as there are one or two events for the Second Year Remounts only, the even tenor of their existence is somewhat disturbed by

Digitized by Google

trial runs, etc., while during the Races themselves, the obstacles confronting them and the pace at which they are expected to take them, gives the 2nd Years a great deal of food for thought, as the following conversation, overheard by the Orderly Dog on April 1st, 1922, goes to prove) :—

'I say,' said the Bay to his neighbour the Roan,
'I've been reading the National Review,
And they say the trouble the Bolshies have sown
Is spreading as fast as the Flu.'
'Well,' said the Roan 'I should like to suggest
That the reason why just this last week
There appear to be signs of sporadic unrest
Is obviously not far to seek.'
'Ah!' said the Bay, 'now you surely recall
The occasion a short time ago,
When our Master, Old Moore, for no reason at all
At a Student did really let go.'
'You mean,' said the Roan, 'when he halted the Ride
And galloped hard into that Boy
With the mouse-coloured hair, who had tickled my side
With his whip—a ridiculous toy.'
'That's the time,' said the Bay, 'and it makes it more strange
The manner they're treating us now,
To-day at the canter I wanted to change
And started a furious Row.'
'Ah, yes!' said the Roan, 'and you must have, perforce,
Heard the curious thing that he said,
"My God, don't you dare do that on the Course
Or you'll land yourself bang on your head."'
'Yes,' said the Bay, 'but a stranger thing still,
When my rider hit me with his whip
The Master but smiled and said "Give him a pill,
That's it—let the bally thing rip."
So I galloped like steam and I fairly took charge,
And you know I go faster than most,
And when I had finished he smiled broad and large
And said "Go like that past the Post."'
'And,' said the Roan, 'there's another thing too,
On some days we work as before
And on others, it's strange, but there's nothing to do
But fill up our tummies and snore.'
'Yes,' said the Bay, 'but what rouses my ire
Are the days when we go out at three
And are hustled at jumps that grow larger and higher—
The whole thing's a mystery to me.'
'Again,' said the Roan, 'take the numerous flags
That are dotted all over the show
And the places they take us up, crannies and crags—
It's really chaotic, you know!'
'And,' said the Bay, 'you have noticed I guess,
When they've blithered all over the place
They make for the thing like an old reddish dress
And stopping say "What a good Race!"'
'Let me think,' said the Roan. 'Aren't the Bolshevists "Reds"?
'You've got it in one' said the Bay,

Digitized by Google

'Our humans have gone slightly wrong in their heads,
And have started with Lenin to play.'
'Which explains,' said the Roan 'such a number of things,
And the way we've been galloped about.
Revolution is rotten! I'm all out for Kings!!
So God Save the King, let us shout!!!'

The Inter-Regimental Polo Tournament, 1922

The Inter-Regimental Polo Tournament commenced at Meerut on March 1, the following teams competing:—7th Hussars, 11th Hussars, 4th Hussars, 11th/12th Cavalry, P.A.V.O. Cavalry, Central India Horse, 17th/37th Cavalry and the Seaforth Highlanders.

The teams were:—

4th Hussars.—Mr. P. Dollar, Captain Heyman, Lieut.-Colonel Neilson, Captain A. Hayhurst-France (4).

7th Hussars.—Captain D. Creagh, Major T. Thornton, Mr. G. Fielden, Major A. Breitmeyer (4).

11th Hussars.—Mr. R. Verelst, Captain G. Younghusband, Captain Tremayne, Lieut.-Colonel W. Lockett (4).

11th/12th Cavalry.—Mr. C. Birdwood, Captain J. Davison, Captain Taylor, Major Anderson (4).

P.A.V.O. Cavalry.—Major J. Gannon, Captain J. Dening, Captain G. Carr-White, Major C. Kirwood (4).

Central India Horse.—Captain R. George, Captain A. Williams, Captain B. Dalrymple-Hay, Mr. A. Alexander (4).

17th/37th Cavalry.—Captain Cochrane, Captain Griffiths, Captain Atkinson, Captain Anderson (4).

Seaforth Highlanders.—Mr. J. Mackintosh-Walker, Captain R. Allanby, Major F. Anderson, Mr. E. Stevenson (4).

1st Round.

7th Hussars beat 11th/12th Cavalry by 4 goals to 3.
P.A.V.O. Cavalry beat 11th Hussars by 7 goals to 6.
Central India Horse beat 4th Hussars by 6 goals to 4.
17th/37th Cavalry beat Seaforth Highlanders by 5 gaols to 2.

2nd Round (Semi-Finals).

P.A.V.O. Cavalry beat 7th Hussars by 6 goals to 2.
Central India Horse beat 17th/37th Cavalry by 6 goals to 3.

The final game was played on March 7, before a large gathering of spectators, the Central India Horse beating the

Digitized by Google

P.A.V.O. Cavalry by 5 goals to 2. The teams were very evenly matched and it was not until the 4th Chukker that the Central India Horse really got going. The result of the chukkers in detail is as follows :

1st Chukker.—Neither side was able to claim any advantage, nor was either goal ever in serious danger.

2nd Chukker.—The Cavalry assumed the offensive but failed to score. The Central India Horse then got going and both Dalrymple-Hay and Williams made unsuccessful shots at goal. The Cavalry then retaliated, Gannon getting away and after a fast run down the field, passing to Dening who, however, hit wide.

3rd Chukker.—This Chukker opened at mid-field, the Central India Horse breaking away at once, Williams scoring in the first minute, the C.I.H. continued to press, Dalrymple-Hay very nearly scoring; his attempt being cleverly saved by Kirkwood.

4th Chukker.—The Central India Horse had matters all their own way, Dalrymple-Hay adding three goals to their account.

5th Chukker.—The Central India Horse continued the offensive, increasing their lead by one goal.

6th Chukker.—The Cavalry made a belated effort, and were again seen to advantage; Gannon getting away after an unsuccessful attempt on the part of Williams to score from a free hit, and scoring with a long high shot. Gannon again got away from the restart, scoring at short range. The Cavalry continued to attack until the end, but failed to increase their score. Major Farran and Captain Atkinson acted as Umpires.

On the completion of the game, His Excellency Sir Harcourt Butler presented the cup to the winners.

Boxing at Mhow

March 23, 24 and 25, 1922.

During the Mhow Sporting Week, a Central Provinces District Open Boxing Tournament was held.

Entries were received from 7th Q.O. Hussars, 43rd and 100th Batteries R.F.A., 3/60th K.R.R.C., the South Wales Borderers, the Beds and Herts and the Manchester Regiment, and a most successful tournament was held.

The 7th Q.O. Hussars won three of the weights, Lance-Corporal Goddard winning the Bantam Weights, Private Fryer the Feather Weights, and Private Blake the Middle Weights.

This success was most creditable to the 7th Q.O. Hussars, as they were competing against the K.R.R.C., winners of the All India Team Championship, 1921, and the Beds and Herts, the winners of the same championship, 1922.

Digitized by Google

CONSTANTINOPLE

3rd Hussars and XIXth Brigade R.F.A., Point-to-Point Races.

Held at Pavlo on the Bagdad Railway, in Anatolia, on April 29, before 500 spectators brought by special train from Constantinople.

The course was about 4 miles in the Anatolian Hunt country and included about 38 natural obstacles, chiefly banks and ditches.

The following were the winners :—

3rd Hussars' Subalterns' Challenge Cup.—Mr. W. G. Petherick's Thomas (Owner). *XIXth Bde. R.F.A., Subalterns' Challenge Cup.*—Mr. W. B. Constable's Um-al-Barur (Owner) in a field of 12. *Open Light Weight Race.*—Capt. E. S. W. Peatt's Silver Tag (Owner) in a field of 12. *3rd Hussars' Regimental Challenge Cup.*—Capt. J. C. Petherick's Haidar Pacha (Major R. R. Grubb) in a field of 9. *Open Heavy Weight Race.*—Mr. J. Y. Ormsby's George (Owner) in a field of 11.

In this race the 3rd Hussars' runners were competing for the 3rd Hussars' Foxhunters' Plate; this was won by Captain J. H. Eliot, the first of the 3rd Hussars to finish.

3rd Hussars and XIXth Brigade R.F.A., W.O.s and N.C.O.s Team Race.

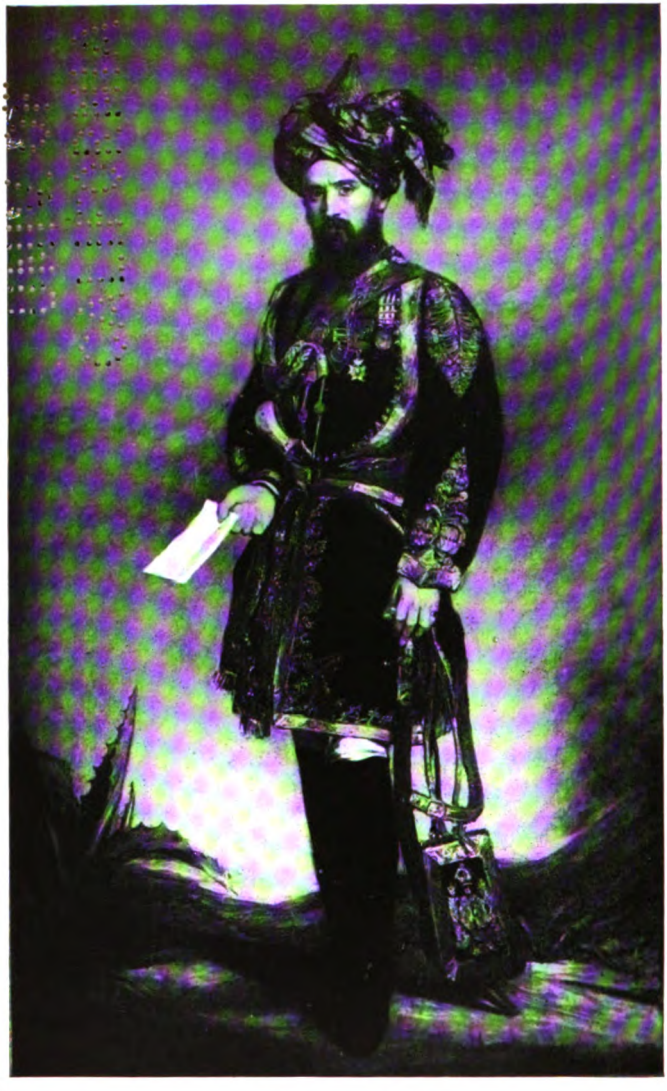
For a team of 8 W.O.s or N.C.O.s from each Unit. A Cup presented by Lieut-Colonel P. J. V. Kelly, C.M.G., D.S.O., Commanding 3rd Hussars, to the winning team. A Cup presented by Lieut.-Colonel J. A. Ballard, D.S.O., Commanding XIXth Brigade R.F.A., to the winning rider.

Winning team : 3rd *Hussars.*—Winning rider, R. S. M. Calton, 3rd Hussars; 2, Bdr. Roffey, R.F.A.; 3, Bdr. Bell, R.F.A. *Placings :* 3rd *Hussars.*—1st, 4th, 5th, 8th, 10th, 11th, 12th, 13th. Points: 64. *Placings :* 19th Bde. R.F.A.: 2nd, 3rd, 6th, 7th, 9th, 14th, 15th, 16th. Points: 72. Totalisator: Evens: R. S. M. Calton, 3rd Hussars.

Printed by EYRE and SPOTTISWOODE, LTD., His Majesty's Printers, East Harding Street, E.C. 4.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google



S. M. Fiske. Col
"Probyn's Horse."
1866.

THE SENIOR LIVING RECIPIENT OF THE VICTORIA CROSS.

Digitized by Google

THE

CAVALRY JOURNAL

OCTOBER 1922

THE SENIOR LIVING RECIPIENT OF THE VICTORIA CROSS

GENERAL SIR DIGHTON PROBYN, V.C., G.C.B., G.C.S.I., G.C.V.O., Eq.

GENERAL SIR HOPE GRANT, in his despatch dated January 10, 1858, said of Captain Dighton MacNaghten Probyn, 2nd Punjab Cavalry, 'he has been distinguished for gallantry and daring throughout the campaign.' During the charge of his squadron upon the rebel infantry, at the Battle of Agra, he became separated from his men and surrounded by five or six sepoys, who attacked him; but he defended himself from the many cuts made at him, and by the time his men had joined him had killed two of his assailants.

At another time, in fighting with a Sepoy, his horse was wounded, and he received a severe cut on the wrist from the bayonet, but after a desperate encounter he cut the rebel down. Later on the same day he singled out a standard-bearer, and, in face of a number of the enemy, killed him and captured the colours. These are only a few of the many deeds recorded of Probyn of Probyn's Horse.

Sir Dighton Probyn was born on January 21, 1833; his father was the late Captain G. Probyn. He entered the Army in 1849, was engaged in Indian Frontier fighting 1852–7, became Captain 1857, served in the Indian Mutiny at Delhi in the actions at Boolundshuhur, Allyghur, and Agra, mentioned in despatches four times. Battle of Kanouje and Relief of Lucknow under Sir Colin Campbell; Cawnpore, Kalle Nuddee

Digitized by Google

and the storming of Lucknow in March, 1858; twice mentioned in despatches, received the thanks of the Governor-General (Lord Canning) and was awarded the Victoria Cross, the two-hundredth in numerical order since the inception of the decoration, the announcement appearing in the 'London Gazette' of June 18 (Waterloo Day), 1858.

In the same year he was promoted Major; served in the China War, 1860; promoted Lieut.-Colonel, 1861; served in the Umbeyla campaign, 1863; became Colonel, 1866; Major-General, 1870; Lieut.-General, 1877; General, 1888.

Sir Dighton has been Comptroller of the Royal Household; Keeper of the Privy Purse, Member of the Council of the Duchy of Cornwall and also of Lancaster, Equerry to His Majesty the King and is Comptroller to Her Majesty Queen Alexandra.

CAVALRY WHO GAINED THE VICTORIA CROSS IN THE INDIAN MUTINY.

2nd Dragoon Guards, Queen's Bays.

Lieut. R. Blair, C. Anderson, Trumpeter T. Monaghan.

7th Queen's Own Hussars.

Lieut. W. G. H. Bankes, Major C. C. Fraser.

8th King's Royal Irish Hussars.

Sergt.-Major J. Champion, Capt. C. Walker-Heneage, Jno. Pearson, Farrier G. Hollis, Sergt. J. Ward.

9th Queen's Royal Lancers.

Lieut. A. S. Jones, Sergt. H. Hartigan, T. Hancock, J. Purcell, P. Donohoe, L.-Corpl. R. Kells, J. R. Roberts, J. Freeman, Troop Sergt.-Major D. Spence, Corpl. W. Goat, Troop Sergt.-Major D. Rushe, R. Newell.

14th King's Hussars.

Lieut. J. Leith.

17th (D.C.O.) Lancers.

Lieut. H. Evelyn Wood.

1st Bengal European Light Cavalry.

Lieut. H. H. Gough (attached Hodson's Horse).

5th Bengal European Cavalry.

Major C. J. S. Gough.

1st Punjab Cavalry.

Lieut. J. Watson.

2nd Punjab Cavalry.

Capt. D. M. Probyn.

2nd Bombay Light Cavalry.

Capt. J. Blair.

Digitized by Google

THE INDIAN CAVALRY MAN—PAST AND PRESENT

By Lt.-Colonel L. E. Dening, *late Commandant 1st (D.Y.O.) Lancers, and President Indian Cavalry Conversion Committee.*

Most innovations in this world have to struggle before birth not only against those vested interests which desire no change, but also against that natural caution, implanted in all mankind, which warns us that change may be for the worse, as well as for the better. The recent schemes for the re-organisation of the numbers, classes and terms of service of Indian Cavalry have naturally proved no exception, but have borne their fair share of criticism. The reader, if patient, may perhaps later form his own opinion as to the advisability or otherwise of the radical alterations effected in Indian Cavalry during 1921–22; time alone, however, can pronounce the final verdict.

Many years ago, in the old bad times, shortly after the advent of a super War Lord—now, alas, no more!—a witty Northerner, on his way to office at a certain summer capital in the hills, was overheard profanely humming a well-known hymn, the opening verse of which states, 'Change and decay in all around we see.'

And yet, K. did much for India before he left. The suspicious, however, will say that those were the golden days—alas, now past!—when reforms were not unduly hampered by financial considerations. The military expert of that period was only asked to combine efficiency with reasonable economy; not, as would seem now to be desired by some, to practise saving, with or without efficiency, or even compass

Digitized by Google

that worst form of economy which necessitates eventual reckless expenditure.

Though this article deals mainly with the causes leading up to, and changes effected by, the conversion of Indian Cavalry from Silladar to non-Silladar terms of service, a scheme on whose behalf its sponsors claim increased efficiency rather than economy, yet one can hardly leave without a reference the practically simultaneous process of reduction of regiments to almost half their pre-war strength, which no doubt was prompted, in part, by financial considerations.

Whilst it is neither the writer's desire nor sphere in this short sketch of the evolution of the Indian trooper to criticise matters with which he has no concern, as an old cavalryman he may, perhaps, be forgiven for expressing here a regret that either financial exigencies or the advent of improved mechanics, aircraft and other scientific inventions should tend in our own, as in other armies, to so largely replace the horse soldier, who in India is the embodiment of loyalty and the main pillar of the State, and to necessitate, at any rate for the present, the merging and loss of separate identity of so many regiments with splendid traditions.

He also realises that the introduction of the 'conversion' scheme itself may be viewed by some with sorrow, as the passing of a system which, with all its faults, by its multiplicity of interests necessarily fostered an unusual breadth of outlook amongst its officers and a spirit of co-operation amongst all ranks. On behalf of this class, it is hoped later to impartially state their case, and reproduce for the judgment of the reader the arguments which claim that many of the notorious defects of the Silladar system might have been obviated by a modification of that system, whilst maintaining its essential principle, namely, ownership by the *sowar* of his horse and kit. This principle, whilst it had many disadvantages, especially in overseas campaigns, yet no doubt had compensating advantages which also will be given their

Digitized by Google

full due when alluding to the reasons which finally led to the non-Silladar system being introduced. At first, it is, however, necessary to detail what modifications have been made in Indian Cavalry Service in the last twelve months.

Indian Cavalry, in addition to the fate, common to all mounted branches everywhere, of reduction, has also recently undergone other changes. The mere fact of amalgamation and reduction of thirty-nine pre-war regiments to their present number of twenty-one, necessitated a re-casting of the various classes and castes from which they had to be formed. It would be idle to pretend that individual hardships have not been experienced by the practically compulsory discharge of large numbers of certain classes of almost hereditary soldiers, connected for many years, and in some cases generations, with particular units, for whom recruitment of their class has wholly or partially ceased under the new *régime*. Such cases are, however, unavoidable under any reduction scheme, though rendered more pathetic by the fact that a century's recruitment, from father to son, of a yeoman class had tended, in some instances, to form a caste whose primary occupation was soldiering; their holdings of land only contributing to their maintenance in so far as it enabled them to eke out a none too large pay or eventual pension. As an old soldier, quoting his case as typical of his particular class, once stated, his private property did little else than meet his clothing expenses; his food, like that of his father and grandfather, was got by service with the *Sirkar*. Government's scheme for compensation to men compulsorily discharged took the form of enhanced and early pensions and bonuses, these being framed as generously as could under the circumstances be expected. Other employment was also sought for men wishing to accept it. Some of these openings proved uncongenial, at any rate as long as the men's leave pay and bonuses lasted. The Indian peasant, like his brother in other lands, is very conservative.

Digitized by Google

In view of their universal 'land hunger' and the *izzat* or prestige which a land grant confers, it is possible an opportunity might have been, or still may be, taken of settling small colonies of loyal ex-soldier cultivators on some of the farm lands recently surrendered by regiments under the conversion scheme. The 'conversion' of the Indian Cavalryman from the status of a Silladar to a non-Silladar, or from an irregular to a regular, with its essential differences in pay, remounting and equipment, is another and most radical change in the terms of service of the Indian *sowar* or cavalryman since the Great War.

To fully grasp all the arguments for and against the alteration, it will be necessary to go back some hundred years or more and explain what is meant by the Silladar system, or original manner of recruiting and maintaining Indian Cavalry, its gradual evolution up to pre-war times, and the present-day new conditions of non-Silladar service. About the end of the eighteenth century, in addition to the regular or *Pagah* Cavalry of the various armies and States into which India was then divided, there existed bodies of irregular cavalry not dissimilar to the 'Free Companions' of mediæval Europe. The men forming these bands were a collection of free lances, bringing their own arms and horses, and hence known as *Khudaspa* (horse owners) or *Sillahdar*, the latter term being of Persian origin and composed of the two words *Sillah* (a weapon) and *Dar* (a bearer). These bands, in the frequent wars between the different Indian States, sold their swords to the highest bidder, and were even utilised by the Honourable East India Company in the early days of their territorial aggrandisement. Subsequently, the Company raised its own *Pagah*, or regular cavalry regiments; but in addition, in 1809, Skinner and Gardiner, both even then well-known Indian Cavalry leaders, were deputed by it to raise two corps of Silladar Cavalry, these troops eventually forming the 1st, 2nd and 3rd Bengal Cavalry. From these beginnings

Digitized by Google

and on similar lines, though under varying circumstances, sprang our present Indian Cavalry, with the exception of the old 1st, 2nd and 3rd Madras Cavalry, which since their original enrolment have been organised on a non-Silladar basis.

The Silladar system of 1914 differed little in its main principles from that of a century previous, inasmuch as both implied a contract by which the services of a fighting man of yeoman type were obtained, who, in return for a certain rate of payment, mounted, clothed, armed (with the exception of his rifle and ammunition) and equipped himself. In addition he was responsible for the feeding of both his horse and himself. Each two troopers also owned a pony or mule, as baggage animal and for grass operations. This animal had to be purchased by them, fed, and provided with an attendant, out of their pay.

Until about 1906 a *sowar* in Indian Cavalry contracted all the above liabilities in return for a monthly rate of pay of Rs. 31, or, roughly, 1*s.* 4*d.* per diem, which cannot be considered an extravagant sum. Where, however, the total cost of feeding a horse and half a mule, on the standard ration, swallowed up more than Rs. 13/8/– out of the Rs. 31, Government guaranteed to make good the balance. In spite of this latter concession and the subsequent raising of the *sowars'* monthly pay to Rs. 34, followed still later by a grant of free rations to all Indian ranks, Silladar Cavalry remained probably one of the cheapest non-conscript mounted forces in the world.

Yet before the war few regiments found difficulty in getting recruits, as long as they were able and willing to grant certain financial concessions, which will be explained later, to men on joining. Service in the Army still was a profession of 'izzat'; there were many openings for a young man, as all promotions to non-commissioned and Indian commissioned ranks, with their correspondingly increased pay and pension, were made from the ranks; whilst a system,

Digitized by Google

now to be explained, which allowed a man after eighteen years' service to return home with a round sum of money, in addition to a pension, tended to encourage recruiting. The original Silladar brought and took away his own animals and equipment, or on leaving sold both to the man taking his place. Later, the desirability of regimental standardisation produced a system by which animals and kit were bought regimentally, both, as before, however, remaining the property of the *sowar*, who on leaving the regiment had the purchase money of both repaid him by his successor, or by regimental funds acting as an intermediary. His horse, half-share of baggage animal, uniform, saddlery, arms and equipment, also share of tent, was known as his *assami*. At first, the value of these *assamis* was not fixed. They were even occasionally, in the old days, put up to auction and fetched prices varying according to the age, condition or marked value of the property, or even length of purse of incomer. When, however, regiments took over the purchasing of animals and kit, a system of *Chandas* (Urdu, *subscriptions*) was evolved, by means of which the value of horses (also of kit where Equipment Chandas were maintained) was kept at a fixed and constant price. These Chandas were a form of insurance. For example, the serviceable working life, for actuary purposes, of a troop horse was taken as ten years, or from a five to a fifteen years old. The *sowars* were charged small monthly subscriptions to the Horse Chanda, sufficient in ten years to cover the then average purchase money of a remount. This enabled a man, who on joining had paid the average purchase price for a five-year old, on leaving ten years later, still to obtain from his successor this average price for his fifteen years' old horse, as the Horse Chanda Fund was responsible for providing the incomer with a remount when necessary. This Horse Fund was also augmented by profits on sale of casters or other horses. In regiments with Equipment and Kit Chandas, the same principle also

Digitized by Google

maintained an article of saddlery, clothing, etc., at a fixed value. Where no Equipment Chandas were kept up, the outgoer's kit was valued by a Regimental Committee and taken over at that price by the incomer. All regiments, however, had Horse Chandas, and practically all subsequently started Mule Chandas.

This scheme *in peace time* worked quite successfully so long as, firstly, sufficient recruits were forthcoming who themselves, or through their relations, could afford to put down the money (roughly, some £40) sufficient to buy the *assami* of the man whose place they were taking, and, *secondly*, as long as the Chanda Funds were themselves maintained in a solvent condition. Unfortunately, all regiments were not able to fulfil these requirements. Certain classes of virile fighting men tended to become more and more impoverished in times of peace, whilst the moneyed cultivator saw quicker openings for an educated son in civil life. Prices also rose, but Chanda subscriptions were kept at the old rate. The Horse Chanda, as fixed by Government, at Rs. 2/8/– a month, was sufficient indeed to replace in ten years a horse costing, in the old days, some Rs. 300—a price, however, at which few regiments in later times were able to obtain remounts. Certain regiments, by reason of careful buying, generous horse coping, lucky proximity to horse shipping or breeding centres, or by being stationed at places where they could get good markets for the sale of their old casters, were able to keep their Horse Funds solvent, whilst Government grants of land for raising young stock also greatly assisted in this desirable object. Many regiments, however, were not so fortunate.

It might be explained here that without a detailed examination of the age and condition of all horses in a regiment, it would have been impossible at any particular time to tell the real condition of their Horse Fund. A regiment mounted entirely on serviceable five-year olds needed little or no credit

Digitized by Google

balance. If, however, all horses were aged fifteen or over, there should, theoretically at any rate, have been almost two lakhs of rupees in the fund, *i.e.*, sufficient to remount the entire regiment.

It can be understood that under these conditions there was sometimes an obvious temptation for a Commanding Officer to inflate his Horse Chanda by keeping on old and unserviceable animals.

Similarly, if Equipment Chandas were maintained, the replacement of unserviceable articles was limited to funds available, whilst where no Kit Chandas were kept up, a Squadron Commander, with a sympathetic knowledge of certain men's financial indebtedness, was liable to occasionally overlook deficiencies in condition of kit which he would not have passed under a more regular system.

The raising of Chanda subscriptions, on the other hand, would almost certainly have caused an outcry for higher pay; whilst by thus increasing the value of *assamis*, the difficulties in the recruitment of certain impoverished classes would have been still further augmented.

As detailed above, in theory, the recruit purchased his horse and kit direct from the man leaving on discharge; in practice, however, these credits and debits were adjusted by passing them through the regimental accounts.

Regiments with large cash balances in Horse, Store or other Funds were able to pay the man leaving his full *assami*, whilst accepting from a good but impoverished recruit a partial payment, the balance advanced by the regimental funds on his behalf being cut after enlistment, by monthly instalments, with interest, from his pay, the man's horse and kit forming a perfectly good security for his loan.

Here, again, all regiments were not able to make these financial concessions, and Government had to come to their assistance to enable them to carry on.

These then, roughly, were the peace conditions under

Digitized by Google

which the Silladar system was being worked, up to August 4, 1914.

Although, previously, Silladar Cavalry had fought overseas—as, for example, with the two expeditionary forces in China—yet, until the Great War of 1914, there had been no similar occasion of simultaneous mobilisation, for service abroad, of so large a number of these Indian Cavalry regiments.

In spite of certain modifications, necessitated by the special conditions of the Great War, the general principle ruling the utilisation of Silladar Cavalry overseas was that, instead of *sowars* paying their Chanda and other subscriptions regimentally, these sums were paid direct to Government, who in return accepted full responsibility for remounting, equipping and clothing the men. For the first time, on a colossal scale, the grave disadvantages, already foreseen, but not corrected, of regiments going to war with equipment, saddlery and clothing differing not only from that stored by Ordnance, but even from one another, was forcibly realised. The loss of a clip on a most estimable, but non-Government pattern, equipment, necessitated the entire re-equipment of the man in that particular line.

Rightly or wrongly, complaints were made that on landing in France, some Silladar regiments had not only to be re-equipped, but also very largely re-horsed.

The Silladar system, in peace time one of the cheapest in the world, undoubtedly under war conditions became very expensive.

It was the experience of the Great War that forced into prominence, and necessitated some early decision being made on, the long-drawn discussion as to the advantages and disadvantages of the Silladar system. The advocates of the old system held that, if the recent concessions of increased pay and free rations were not considered sufficient to justify raising the Chanda subscriptions, some slight additional increments might be granted, whilst the advancing of loans at

Digitized by Google

low rates of interest to recruits to enable them to purchase *Assamis* might be made as profitable to Government as this system had, under similar circumstances, been to regiments. Whilst maintaining the advantageous principle of ownership by *sowar* of horse and kit, the necessary quality of the former might be ensured by buying through, or from, the Government Remount Department, whilst both uniformity and quality of latter might be guaranteed by purchase from either Ordnance or some authorised private firm of repute. In addition, a more thorough and detailed examination by Inspecting Officers ought absolutely to prevent any regiments being reported as fit for service if this is not warranted by condition of horses and equipment. In short, they considered that the Silladar system was not essentially responsible for the abuses that undoubtedly flourished under it. Purged of these, they represented its advantages of proprietary interest and thought that the reduced number of non-Silladar regiments would cost Government nearly as much as a Silladar mounted force, of almost double its strength, without sufficient compensatory advantage of extra efficiency.

These opinions were, however, outvoted and Government, after careful consideration, determined to convert all the thirty-six Silladar regiments to non-Silladar, prior to eventual amalgamation and reduction of Indian Cavalry to twenty-one regiments. Conversion of the regiments was started in May, 1921, and, with the exception of one Cavalry regiment overseas, was completed early in the following May.

The cost to Government in hard cash up to date has only amounted to about £33,000. For this comparatively small sum all the proprietary rights of thirty-five regiments in both live and dead stock have been acquired. These consist of regimental horses and mules, young stock and buildings on farms, also barracks and stores of clothing and equipment. The actual cost of conversion has been considerably reduced by certain regiments having large liquid assets and cash

Digitized by Google

balances in Chanda and Farm Funds which have been taken over by Government. Most regiments have still been left with private funds averaging at least £5,000, in some regiments considerably more. This sum being doubled on amalgamation, the interest on its investment should provide the new units with ample funds for regimental purposes, even after generous provision for old soldiers and pensioners.

It is hoped that this article has stated as impartially as possible the advantages and disadvantages of the Silladar service as they affect more particularly the *sowar*. As regards the British ranks, a commanding officer under the old system needed many of the qualities of an Admirable Crichton. Whilst nursing his funds, he had to be careful not to neglect the all-important war training of his regiment, and probably in these strenuous times it is as well that he and his second-in-command should be relieved of the additional duties connected with grass operations, horse-breeding farms, grain and remount purchase, to mention only some of numerous business and financial transactions connected with a Silladar unit. Yet, to some, these extraneous occupations afforded invaluable experience, besides lending an added interest to peace-time soldiering.

There need be no fear, however, that the new conditions will not produce officers, both senior and junior, as experienced, full of initiative and interest in their men as hitherto; or that there will be any break in the splendid century-old traditions of the Indian Cavalry.

Digitized by Google

OPERATIONS OF THE MOUNTED TROOPS OF THE EGYPTIAN EXPEDITIONARY FORCE (continued)

By Lieut.-Colonel Rex Osborne, D.S.O., M.C.,*
13th Hussars

Chapter XXII. Phase V.

Consideration, in July 1918, *of Offensive Operations on a grand scale.*

(Ref. Map C.)

Throughout the first half of 1918 Lord Allenby had kept in view the possibility of offensive action on a grand scale, and had steadily prepared for it.

When, in the main theatre, after months of great trial, the tide began to turn in our favour, the question arose of a counter-offensive on all the fronts of the world-wide battle line.

In July Lord Allenby informed the C.I.G.S. that, when the time came for him to attack, he hoped to break through and secure the line Nablus–Tulkeram–Mouth of the Nahr Iskanderuneh; he stated that he hoped for decisive success, which suggests that success in securing the objective named, although only an advance of fifteen miles, was expected to lead to bigger things.

The General Plan, in its main strategical outlines, may be regarded as a reversal of the plan of the third Battle of Gaza; then, the C.-in-C. had turned (enveloped) the enemy's

* The writer is greatly indebted to Lt.-Col. the Hon. R. M. P. Preston, D.S.O., for Map C., which is reproduced from his book 'The Desert Mounted Corps.'

Digitized by Google

left flank, after having convinced him that the main blow would fall on the coast at Gaza; now, his intention was to break through on the coast, having already induced Liman von Sanders to believe that it was his left flank which was the danger point.

To mystify, mislead and surprise twice running is a very remarkable achievement in the art of generalship.

Reasons for selection of the Maritime Plain as the Front of Decisive Attack.

The two main instruments of offence on the ground at the disposal of the C.-in-C. may be termed (*a*) Hitting-power; (*b*) Mobility. As regards the first, his Infantry and Artillery; as regards the second, his large Cavalry force. The one, without the other, could not attain decisive results.

East of Jordan supply difficulties would throttle movement. The Turkish positions in the Judæan Mountains for ten miles east and west of the Jerusalem–Nablus road were of great natural strength; progress would be slow, not more than five miles in one day; far more rapid advance was necessary. In the Maritime Plain alone were the necessary conditions fulfilled. Here the maximum power could be developed in the Infantry and Artillery attack; the Royal Navy could co-operate, and here the ground was most suitable for rapid exploitation by the Desert Mounted Corps.

Turkish Situation early September 1918. *Strength and Disposition.*

(See Map C and Plate XIII.)

The Turkish Army was situated as follows :—

VIIIth Army; from the sea at Arsuf to Furka, 21 mile front; 10,000 rifles and 157 guns.

VIIth Army; in the mountains astride Jerusalem–Nablus road, 19 mile front; 7,000 rifles and 111 guns.

Digitized by Google

IVth Army; Jordan Valley, front of 21 miles; 6,000 rifles and 74 guns. (See Plate XIII.)

Maan Garrison and along the Hedjaz Railway to the north of Maan; 6,000 rifles and 30 guns.

General Reserve; in area Sea of Galilee (Tiberias)–Nazareth–Haifa; 3,000 rifles and 30 guns.

Totals: 32,000 rifles; 4,000 sabres; 402 guns. The ration strength is believed to have been approximately 104,000.

The British had gradually gained great air superiority over the German aviators, mainly from moral rather than material reasons; the British aviators, including many brilliant Australian officers, proved superior to the German. It is a fact, however, that, in early September 1918, the Turco-German Air Force was in considerable strength and equipped with up-to-date machines, which, if properly handled, would have been equal in performance to our Artillery machines.

Health and Morale.

The Turkish medical arrangements were inefficient; the whole force was seriously weakened by malignant malaria, and its *morale* was consequently growing lower and lower, desertions continuously increasing.

Railway Communications. (Map C.)

The Turkish railways had not been improved. The Turks were supplied from Constantinople via Aleppo, Damascus and Deraa. From Deraa, the line Semakh–Beisan–El Afule–Jenin–Messudieh supplied the VIIIth and VIIth Armies; the former by the continuation through Tul Keram to Kalkilieh; the latter by the continuation to Nablus. The sections Deraa–Semakh and Jenin–Messudieh ran through mountainous country, and had necessitated great engineering skill in building; many bridges existed in these sections

Digitized by Google

which, consequently, were exceptionally vulnerable to any hostile attack which could reach them. IVth Army, on the Jordan Valley front, was supplied by the Hedjaz railway from Deraa to Amman.

The Germans had taken over the running of the railways; but shortage of fuel and rolling stock rendered the supply of 100,000 men a precarious performance.

Road Communications.

The Turks had no compunction in impressing the entire native population for road-making, and stone was always at hand in the mountainous districts; as a result, the Turkish roads were comparatively efficient, especially in view of the primitive nature of the Turkish horsed transport. The German lorries, as also the British, proved their capacity to move over almost any track, provided the surface was not soft.

The Turkish armies relied principally on the following roads and tracks (*see* Map C and Plate XIII.):—

Behind VIIIth and VIIth Armies.

Metalled road Damascus–Bridge over Jordan at Jisr Benat Yakub–Tiberias–Nazareth–Afule.

Behind VIIIth Army.

(*a*) Metalled road Afule–Musmus Pass–Tul Keram–Kalkilieh.

(*b*) Metalled road Tul Keram–Messudieh.

(*c*) Many unmetalled tracks in the Maritime Plain; including one from Liktera over the pass at Jarak to Abu Shusheh, and one from Liktera along the coast to Haifa.

Behind VIIth Army.

(*a*) Metalled road Afule–Jenin–Messudieh–Nablus–and south along backbone of Judæan Mountains.

(*b*) Metalled road running from Nablus down the Wadi Farah to the Jordan at Jisr Ed Damie.

Digitized by Google

(*c*) Unmetalled track down the valley Tiberias–Semakh–Beisan—thence over the mountains viâ Tubas to Nablus.

Behind IVth Army. (Plate XIII. and Map C.)

(*a*) Metalled road Ghoraniyeh Bridge–Es Salt–Amman; thence unmetalled north along the plateau to Deraa. (Pilgrim route.)

(*b*) One unmetalled track west, and one east of the Jordan from Semakh southwards along the valley.

Turkish Headquarters of Formations.

G.H.Q. - - - - -	Nazareth.
VIIIth Army - - - -	Tul Keram.
VIIth Army - - - -	Nablus.
IVth Army - - - -	Es Salt.

Description of Turkish Position and Country behind. (Map C.)

(a) *Maritime Plain Sector of VIIIth Army.*

There were two main systems of trenches and a third line in rear.

1*st System:* From the foothills south of Hableh, through Jiljulie and Bir Adas, passing south of Tabsor to the sea just north of Arsuf. These defences were 2,000 to 3,000 yards deep, practically continuous and wired, but weakly; there were many dug-outs and some very strong points, particularly at Jiljulie and covering the approaches to Tabsor.

2*nd System:* From Et Tireh to the coast, along the north bank of the Nahr Falik; these defences were formidable, but believed to be unwired.

3*rd Line:* A partially dug, unwired and unoccupied line close behind the Nahr Iskanderuneh.

In this Maritime Plain sector of VIIIth Army the main topographical features were:—

The *Nahr Falik:* A marsh, forming a considerable obstacle, bridged in two places and passable at the mouth on the sand of the sea shore.

Digitized by Google

The *Nahr Iskanderuneh:* A considerable obstacle which contains deep water pools throughout the year.

Hills of Samaria: From Messudieh these hills run north-west, separating the Maritime Plain from the Plain of Esdraelon and ending in an abrupt cliff at the west end Mount Carmel; though lower than the Judæan Mountains south of Nablus, they were of considerable military importance; the road over the Musmus Pass was the only one fit for wheels north of the Tul Keram–Messudieh–Jenin road, and it and the track viâ Jarak and Abu Shusheh (*see* Map C) could be easily defended. These hills, therefore, by nature and location, were suitable as a defensive position supporting the Turkish right, and covering the railway communications back to Deraa.

(b) *Foothill Sector of VIIIth Army and VIIth Army.*

The foothill country north of the Turkish line from Hable to Furka was very difficult; the valley running in from Tul Keram to Messudieh and Nablus, and thence north to Jenin, was about 1,000 yards broad and the most suitable line of operations into the mountains from the west.

At Jenin the road enters the Plain of Esdraelon, which is almost entirely flat and without obstacles to movement.

The Plain of Jezreel, approximately 2 miles broad, runs from Esdraelon down to Beisan in the Jordan Valley.

British Situation, early September, 1918 (approximately shown on the German Intelligence Map, Plate XIV.)

(*See also* Map C.)

The Army was situated as follows:—

XXIst Corps (four Divisions): From the sea at Arsuf to Furka (Furcha), 21 mile front. (11 miles open plain; 10 miles of lower slopes.)

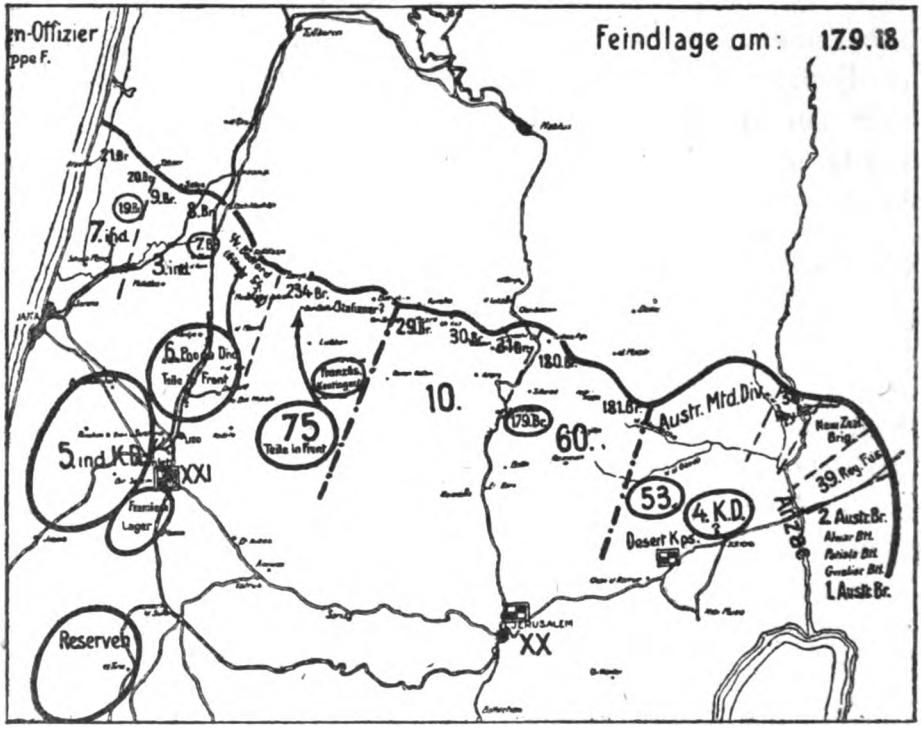
XXth Corps (three Divisions): Extending across the mountains to the cliffs overhanging Jordan; 15 mile

Digitized by Google

front. The last 5 miles at the east end of this line was lightly held, being impassable for formed bodies.

Descorps (four Cavalry Divisions): 22 mile front. (On the north front, 7 miles of plain; on the east front, 15 miles of river, with three bridgeheads.)

NOTE.—One or two Cavalry Divisions were always out of the valley resting; usually one near the sea, and one on the top of the mountains near Jerusalem.



BRITISH DISPOSITIONS AS SHOWN BY ENEMY INTELLIGENCE SERVICE.

Plate XIV.

Strength.

7 Divisions, 4 Cavalry Divisions, 1 Indian Infantry Brigade, 1 French Infantry Brigade.

Total rifle strength, 57,000; sabre strength, 12,000; heavy and siege guns, 94; mountain guns, 42; total guns, 512 (approx.).

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

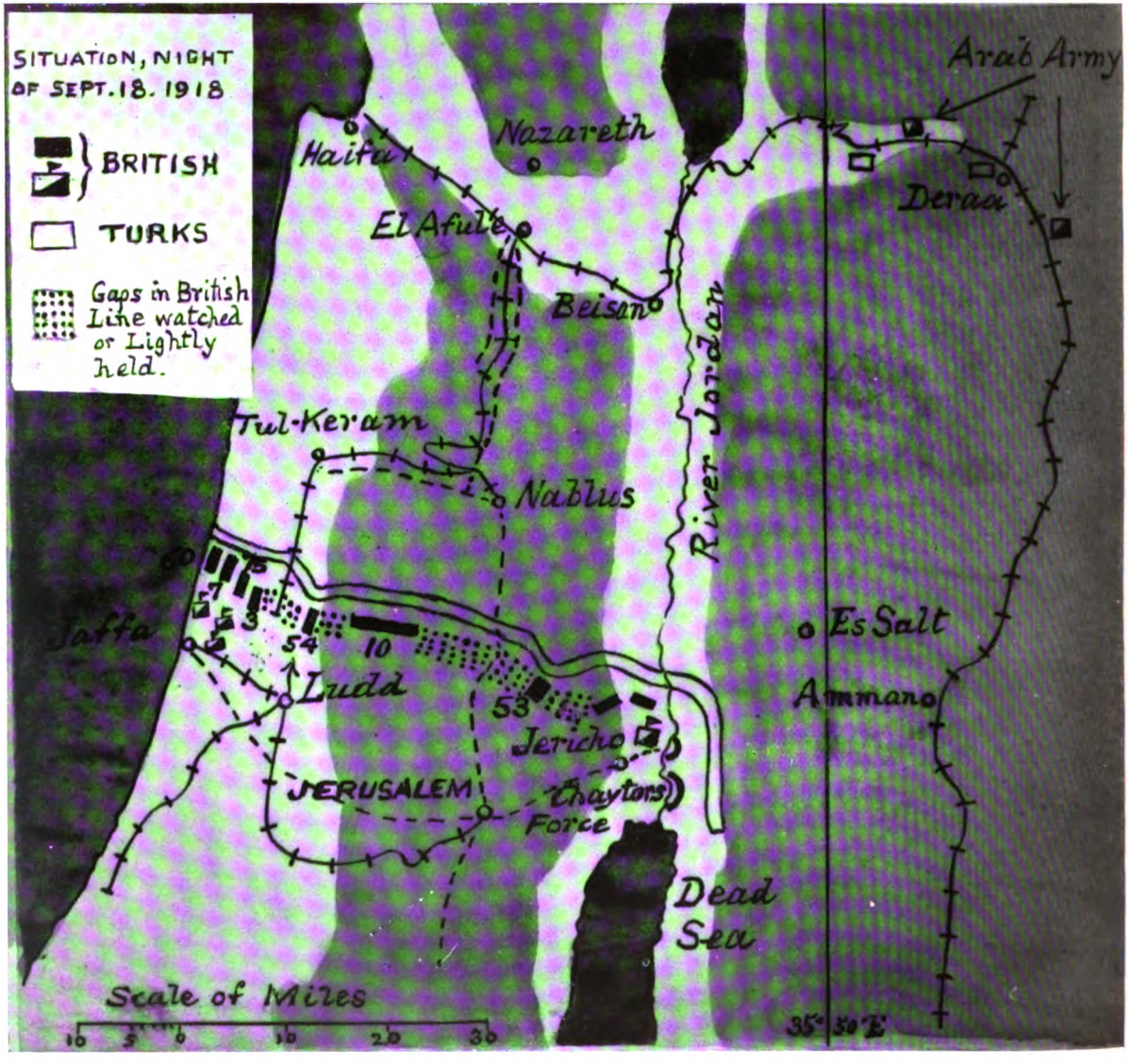


Plate XV.

Digitized by Google

Health.

XXIst Corps was in a Mediterranean climate, warm but healthy, though the malaria was bad in the marshes of the Nahr El Auja.

XXth Corps lived in a splendid mountain climate, and the troops were very fit.

Descorps had spent six months in Jordan, 1,200 feet below sea level, in equatorial climate and vegetation. No white man had ever spent a summer there, and the few natives who remained during the hot weather were coal black; the dust was suffocating; malignant malaria was rampant, but was kept in check by the splendid preventive measures of the R.A.M.C. By September, however, in spite of everything that could be done, Descorps was seriously full of malaria. The horses, on the other hand, got through without serious deterioration; for, although they got no shade, the water supply was excellent and abundant.

Original G.H.Q. Plan. (*See* Plate XV. and Map C.)

The C.-in-C. timed his attack for the third week in September. The following is a statement of the original plan :—

(*a*) XXIst Corps (five Divisions) to attack and break through the enemy's defences between the foothills east of Jiljulieh and the sea.

(*b*) As soon as the enemy's resistance should be broken, three Cavalry Divisions of Descorps were to pass through the Infantry and take Tul Keram, and subsequently to advance on Messudieh by the Tul Keram–Anebta road.

NOTE.—It will be seen that, in order to assemble this striking force, three Cavalry Divisions and one Division would have to move across from the east flank to the sea. (Compare Plate XIV. with Plate XV.)

(*c*) XXIst Corps then to wheel to the right; two Divisions

Digitized by Google

to fight their way through the hills to Anebta, while a third was to follow Descorps.

(*d*) XXth Corps, with two Divisions, to advance astride the Jerusalem–Nablus road after the main attack of XXIst Corps had been launched.

(*e*) Chaytor's Force, *i.e.*, Anzac Mounted Division, 25th Indian Infantry Brigade (I.S. Infantry), the Composite Infantry Brigade (two battalions Jews; two battalions W.I. Regiment), to form a defensive flank to guard the crossings over Jordan and to be prepared, on receipt of orders, to co-operate in the advance and seize the crossing at Jisr Ed Damieh.

Comparative Strengths, Frontages, etc.

If the foregoing statement of strengths are compared, it will be seen that the British preponderance consisted in :—

Cavalry	- -	a superiority of	3 to 1.
Infantry	- -	,, ,,	7 to 4.
Artillery	- -	,, ,,	11 to 8.

It is suggested that the superiority in Infantry was no greater than that of the Allies over Germany on the Western Front during the major part of 1916 and 1917; it was realised by the C.-in-C. that, if completely decisive success was to be attained, his great superiority in Cavalry would have to be the final factor in attaining it.

His first necessity, therefore, was to ensure making an effective gap through which Descorps could issue; and it appears that he considered that completely decisive success on a 5-mile front would fulfil this requirement.

On the main (XXIst Corps) front of attack extending 15 miles (actually 8½ miles attacking front) he concentrated 35,000 infantry and 383 guns, against 8,000 Turkish infantry and 130 Turkish guns; *i.e.*, a superiority of 4½ to 1 in infantry, of 3 to 1 in guns.

Digitized by Google

He skinned the remainder of the line and maintained 45 miles with 22,000 rifles and 157 guns, holding Turkish forces numbering 24,000 infantry and 270 guns.

He kept no G.H.Q. reserve; every available man was put in the fight, including Corps Cavalry, Pioneer Battalions, and details from reinforcement camps.

Measures taken to Mystify, Mislead, Conceal, and Surprise.

The greatest care was necessary to conceal the heavy concentration in the coastal sector; the C.-in-C. continuously and personally supervised the measures taken by the General Staff to secure surprise; the arrangements were most elaborate and nothing was left to chance.

In a country with few wooded areas, superiority in the air is almost essential if moves are to be concealed; and the R.A.F., during the final days of assembly, attained almost to a temporary command of the air.

Enemy agents were always able to move with impunity through certain gaps in the line or round the open eastern flank. As they could not be prevented from seeing things, the General Staff used various stratagems to make it appear that all preparations were for an attack eastwards of the Jordan sector.

The move of three Cavalry Divisions from the Jordan Valley, where they were in full view of the enemy's O.P.s in the surrounding hills, was very difficult to conceal; it was essential to conceal it, as the location of the Cavalry mass during an offensive operation is a sure indication as to the decisive point of attack.

During the first fortnight of September troops marched down from Jerusalem to the Jordan Valley, arriving after daylight, so that their arrival could be seen by the Turks; new camps were pitched in the valley; troops marching westward did so by night, leaving all camps standing.

Lastly, as the Cavalry marched out of the valley, in place of their horses they left behind them dummies made of wood

Digitized by Google

and canvas. Great numbers of these were elaborate, and would deceive at a few hundred yards (*see* Photo No. 6); but our airmen reported that stuffed sacks lying on the ground threw a deep shadow in that bright sunlight, and were quite effective enough to deceive from the air.

As a result of all the precautions taken, the heavy concentration on a 5-mile front by the sea was effected unknown to the enemy.

At the last moment the Turkish air service reported: 'No essential changes have taken place in the distribution of the British forces.'

On September 18, the day before the attack, when all our dispositions had been completed, the Turkish Intelligence Service issued a map (*see* Plate XIV.) showing three Cavalry Divisions still in the Jordan Valley on September 17, and 60th Division still in the right sector of XXth Corps. Their information was remarkably accurate as to the situation before the final concentration moves took place, but these had been successfully concealed.

Chapter XXIII.

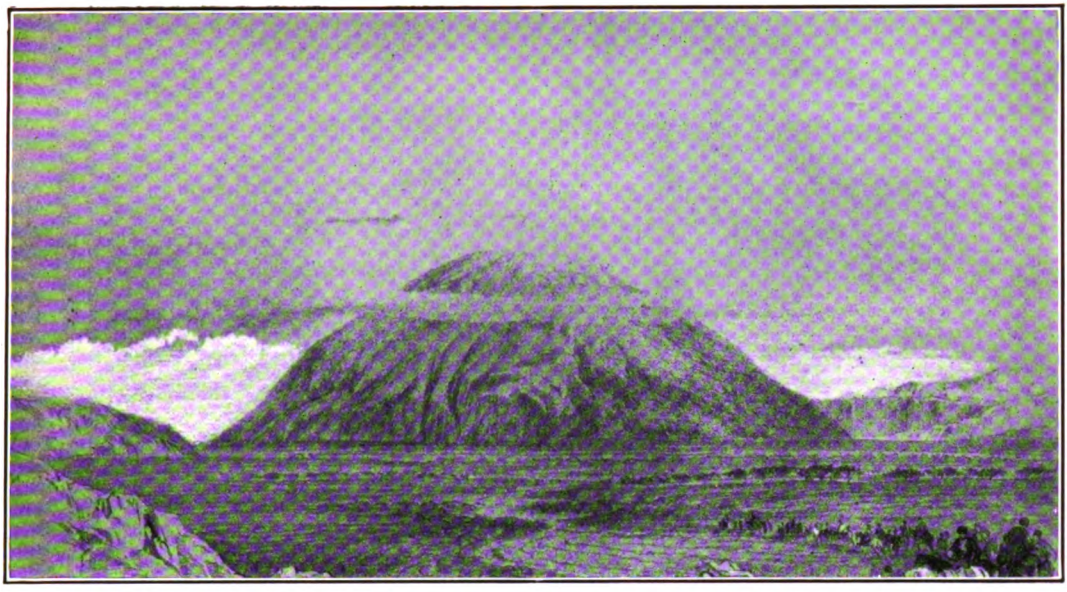
The Final Plan.

Comparatively late in the day, approximately on August 22, the C.-in-C. suddenly announced to Corps Commanders his intention to extend the scope of the forthcoming operations.

The tasks of XXIst Corps and XXth Corps remained much the same: their final objectives were respectively the high ground north of Anebta and the high ground north and north-east of Nablus; but, after reaching their objectives, they were to be prepared to pursue, XXIst Corps towards Jenin, XXth Corps towards Beisan.

The main alteration in the plan concerned Desert Mounted Corps. Its original *rôle* had been to operate on the same

Digitized by Google



MOUNT TABOR (JEBEL EL TOR), RISING 1,000 FT. ABOVE THE PLAIN OF ESDRAELON.

Photo No. 6.—DUMMY HORSES ERECTED IN LARGE NUMBERS TO CONCEAL, FROM THE GERMAN AVIATORS, THE MOVE OF CAVALRY DIVISIONS FROM THE JORDAN TO THE SEA.

Digitized by Google

From the reproduction by the Autotype Fine Art Company, Limited.

By J. B. Beadle.

EAST RIDING OF YORKSHIRE YEOMANRY IN PALESTINE, 1917.

Digitized by Google

line of advance as the left wing of XXIst Corps, and supported by it. Its task was now enormously increased; and the writer well remembers the expression of astonishment on the faces of the Cavalry Brigade and Regimental Commanders when they heard, two days before the operation, the scope of the *rôle* allotted to them. The G.H.Q. orders to Descorps were, approximately, as follows :—

'As soon as the crossings over the Naher Falik, and the marshes to the east, have been cleared of the enemy by the advance of XXIst Corps, Descorps (Fivecav., Fourcav., and Ausdiv. less 5th A.L.H. Brigade), passing round the left of XXIst Corps, will advance to El Afuleh and Beisan to cut the enemy's railways communications, and to block his retreat in a north and north-east direction. . . . First objective : the line Kakon–Jelameh–Tel El Dhruh–Hudeira (*see* Plate XIII.) . . .

'The advance of Descorps will be continued (*i.e.*, from the first objective) as soon as possible and with the utmost speed to El Afuleh by the road Kerkur–Musmus–El Lejjun, and by the road crossing by Jarak to Abu Shusheh. Every effort will be made to prevent the escape of Turkish rolling stock by cutting the railway lines from Jenin and Haifa to Afuleh at the earliest possible moment.

'The G.O.C. Descorps, retaining sufficient troops in the Afuleh–Jenin–El Lejjun area to close the Turkish lines of retreat to the north and north-west, will push on to close the roads which converge on Beisan from the Jordan Valley and Nablus.'

In amplification of the G.H.Q. Operation Order, Sir Harry Chauvel received special instructions, of which the following is an extract :—

'1. G.O.C. XXIst Corps has been entrusted with the task of breaking the enemy's resistance in the Coastal Plain and opening a way for your Corps to cross the N. Falik and Zerkiyeh Marsh (source of N. Falik. *See* Map C). In view

Digitized by Google

of the long marches which you have to make and the necessity of conserving your full strength to carry out the important *rôle* assigned to you in the enemy's rear, you must on no account allow your troops to be drawn into the infantry fight south of the N. Falik, nor, after the passage of this stream, to be diverted from your objective by the presence of hostile troops in the Tulkeram–Et Tireh area, which will be dealt with by XXIst Corps.

'The advance of your Corps from its positions of readiness will be regulated by the progress of XXIst Corps, and you will be responsible for arranging that the line Zerkiyeh Marsh–mouth of N. Falik is crossed at earliest possible moment. In your approach march, care must be taken that there is no interference with the movement of units and formations of XXIst Corps engaged in the attack; it is particularly important that the fire of the Corps Artillery should not be masked.

'2. Should any portion of the enemy's forces retreat in direction of Haifa, you will detach only sufficient troops to keep touch with it and protect your L.-of-C., as it is vital that as large a proportion of your force as possible should be available to carry out the *rôle* assigned to you, which is to place your troops about Afuleh and Beisan where the enemy's railway communications can be cut at their most vital point, and whence you will be in a position to strike his columns if they endeavour to escape in a northerly or north-easterly direction.

'The action of your troops must be characterised by the greatest vigour and rapidity, as it is essential that they should reach Afuleh and Beisan before the enemy can withdraw his rolling-stock and material or assemble troops for the defence of the railway.

'3. On arrival at El Lejjun you will detach a Brigade to block the roads and railway passing through Jenin and to gain touch with the Cavalry Brigade attached to XXIst

Digitized by Google

Corps (*i.e.*, 5th A.L.H. Brigade of Ausdiv.), which will be directed on Jenin from the south if the situation permits.

'4. From Afuleh a detachment will be sent to seize the road and railway bridges over the Jordan at Jisr Mejamie. The railway bridge should be prepared for demolition, but not destroyed so long as we are able to hold it.

'5. Demolitions on the railway should be limited to such as can easily be repaired.'

Comments on the Final Plan.

1. The Cavalry plan was astonishingly bold. It seems clear that, even to the C.-in-C. himself, the idea came as a second thought; it is probable that it originated entirely in his own head, and it is not thought likely that any appreciation and proposed plan, put up to him by his staff, contained any idea of a Cavalry task of such magnitude.

Frequently during past centuries Cavalry officers have complained that the Cavalry has suffered through being handled by Commanders who did not understand how to get the maximum out of the arm (*e.g.*, *see* Lord Haig's introduction to his book, 'Cavalry Studies'). Is it probable that any C.-in-C., other than a Cavalry officer, would have conceived a Cavalry plan of such magnitude? The writer personally thinks that very few would have done so.

General Ludendorff now appears to agree with Lord Haig that, at the end of March 1918, he himself had much the same opportunity to launch a Cavalry mass in front of Amiens; but, great General though he was, he completely failed to seize it, because he had not prepared for it.

It is not contended for one moment that every Cavalry Commander would have conceived such a plan possible. Lord Allenby's opponent, Liman von Sanders, himself a Cavalry soldier, certainly did not; and, as stated earlier, many of the best informed of Lord Allenby's subordinate Cavalry Commanders could hardly believe their ears when

Digitized by Google

they heard the scope of their task. The fact remains, however, that the cavalries of all nations in future will say that this, the greatest Cavalry achievement for at least a century, was mainly due to the fact that the C.-in-C. happened to be a Cavalry soldier.

The Cavalry, unfortunately, is comparatively an isolated arm. In peace it is organised and trains in formations of its own, which makes it a thing apart. In war, the eyes of the entire Army are levelled at close range at the slow-moving formations; but the work of the mobile forces is usually comparatively far afield, is seldom seen in detail by the other arms, and remains a mystery to them. For these reasons the Cavalry know more about the other arms, than the latter know of them.

There is a moral. If an officer of any of the slower-moving arms aspires to command a force of all arms; and if he hopes to be capable, when the time comes, of conceiving such a plan as that conceived by Lord Allenby—then he must go out of his normal way to make a very special study of the handling of mobile forces.

Final Assembly of Descorps.

The concentration of Descorps (less Anzac Division), by night-marching, behind, and in, XXIst Corps area, was successfully hidden, not only from the enemy but also from the inhabitants. It was completed by September 17, when the Corps was disposed as follows :—

Fivecav., in orange groves north-west of Sarona (8 miles behind the line).

Fourcav., in orange groves east of Sarona (10 miles behind the line).

Ausdiv., in olive groves about Ludd (17 miles behind the line).

Adv. Descorps H.Q., in close touch with XXIst Corps H.Q., north of Sarona.

Digitized by Google

It had originally been intended that, during the night of September 18–19 (XXIst Corps' zero hour being 0430 hours September 19), Fivecav. should move across the River Auja and be articulated in depth and superimposed upon the area of the 60th Division on the coast; and Fourcav. articulated in depth and superimposed upon the area of 7th (Ind.) Division (*see* Plate XIII.).

It was later decided however, that, in the final assembly, no part of either of the two leading Cavalry Divisions should be farther forward than a line (called Brown line) which demarkated the southern boundary of XXIst Corps gun positions.

The bombardment of XXIst Corps began at 0430 hours, September 19, and the Infantry attack was launched at 0445 hours.

The two leading Divisions of Descorps were timed to complete their final assembly in the early morning of September 19, as follows :—

(a) *Fivecav.*, at 0400 hours, in rear of and in close *liaison* with 60th Division; disposed in depth with head west of Jelil (approximately 3 miles behind front line).

(b) *Fourcav.*, at 0730 hours, in rear of and in close *liaison* with 7th (Ind.) Division; disposed in depth with head at Cromarty Hill (*i.e.*, about 2 miles East of Fivecav.).

Ausdiv. marched during night from Ludd to Sarona, with orders to be prepared to cross River Auja at 0700 hours.

Plan of Descorps (as stated in Descorps official report) :—

'The *rôle* assigned to Descorps was, as soon as the way had been cleared by the Infantry assault, and the 60th Division had swung to the east towards Tul Keram, to move at greatest possible pace and cut in on the enemy's communications well behind the enemy divisions and reserves from the River Jordan at Beisan to the coast, thus blocking all possible chances of the Turkish Army west of the Jordan being able to escape northwards from the pressure of XXth and XXIst Corps' attacks.

Digitized by Google

'With this in view, *Fivecav.* was assigned the task of reaching Nazareth with all possible speed, moving on its first objective, the line Tel El Dhrur–Liktera–to sea; thence viâ . . . . and Jarak on Nazareth. It was hoped that the German C.-in-C. would be captured in Nazareth.

'*Fourcav.* was assigned the task of moving inside Fivecav. viâ the Musmus Pass on Afuleh, with the final objective Beisan, linking up with Fivecav. on the first objective, from Kakon to Tel El Dhrur.

'*Ausdiv.* was to follow Fourcav., in Corps reserve.

'Adv. Corps H.Q. to move with Ausdiv.'

Comments on Final Assembly of Descorps.

This Cavalry problem of passing large Cavalry formations through Infantry and Artillery, after the success of the latter in a deliberate attack, had been continuously studied in France since the battle of Neuve Chapelle, early in 1915.

No real success had been achieved until the attack in front of Amiens, August 8, 1918; but most definite lessons had been learnt.

The main lesson learnt is that the opportunity for Cavalry to pass through is usually a fleeting one, and that it will be missed unless the responsibility for the selection of the 'moment' is delegated to the most forward Cavalry Commanders, working in close conjunction with the most forward Infantry Commanders; further, that those Cavalry Commanders and their advanced troops must be very far forward —in fact, in close touch with the forward fighting infantry.

There may be various methods of applying this rule; but usually every forward Cavalry formation should have an advance guard maintaining closest touch with the attacking Infantry—even to the extent of dismounted patrols in the Infantry trenches at zero hour, and going forward dismounted with them.

The Commanders of these advanced guards are best placed

Digitized by Google

for bearing the responsibility of choosing the moment to pass through the Infantry; and they have the troops immediately at hand for making the initial effort.

Sir Harry Chauvel strongly urged some such arrangements, but the G.O.C. XXIst Corps was afraid that Cavalry in such large numbers might interfere with the Infantry attack and, in particular, might mask the fire of the guns; and he strongly urged that no Cavalry should be allowed, until he himself gave permission, in front of a line which demarkated the southern boundary of XXIst Corps' gun positions.

It is believed that the C.-in-C. himself supported the view that a forward assembly of Cavalry advanced guards was most desirable; but he was probably quite confident that the operation, in this particular case, would be successfully carried through whether the forward Cavalry lined up behind the guns or close behind the attacking Infantry; and as the G.O.C. XXIst Corps was the individual most responsible for the success of the final assembly and the initial breakthrough, the C.-in-C. must have been most anxious to allay his anxieties as far as possible.

As a result, the Cavalry had no option but to submit to staff arrangements which a long and bitter Cavalry experience had proved to be unsound.

The orders of Fourcav. read as follows :—

'Fourcav. (plus 11th L.A.M. Batt. and No. 1 Light Car Patrol) will be assembled on Zday (*Note:* approximately at 0730 hours) in a position of Readiness in Column of Brigade Masses, in a position in rear of the 7th Division, and will be prepared to move forward directly the front is cleared. The order to move will come from the Division. (*Note: i.e.*, from Cavalry Division H.Q.) . . . . No mounted man is to pass north of the Brown line (*i.e.*, the line which demarkated the southern boundary of XXIst Corps' gun positions), shown on the attached plan, on any account, without permission from Divisional Headquarters.'

Digitized by Google

The great emphasis laid on the last sentence suggests that the Divisional Commander, in view of his orders, was forced to deliberately forbid his leading troops from doing what they knew was the correct procedure, *i.e.*, to keep close up behind and in touch with the attacking Infantry.

It should be noted that :—

(*a*) The order to move forward was to come from the Divisional Commander; and it is known that he himself had first to obtain permission from the G.O.C. 7th (Ind.) Division.

(*b*) Some of the Heavy Artillery of XXIst Corps, in front of which no mounted cavalryman might pass, was in position quite 5,000 yards behind the line.

In the opinion of the writer, all Cavalry experience had proved such arrangements unsound from a Cavalry point of view; and if, in the sequel, the Cavalry opportunity had been a fleeting one, it would have been lost. As a fact, the Cavalry Divisional Commander actually went ahead himself to Headquarters 7th (Ind.) Division, at Tabsor beyond the enemy's front line, and met the G.O.C. 7th (Ind.) Division there at 0840 hours. It was then decided that the Cavalry could pass through. G.O.C. Fourcav. then went back to meet the head of his Division, which had then arrived within one hundred yards of the gap made for it in our own front line wire.

The fact that such arrangements were successful constitutes a positive danger for the future. The future generation of Cavalry soldiers, in studying the staff arrangements of this successful movement of Cavalry through Infantry, in exploiting the success of the latter in a deliberate battle, will probably copy these arrangements, which would be a tragedy.

The writer suggests that the Cavalry should take steps, as soon as possible, at staff rides, manœuvres, etc., to demonstrate to the Commanders of other arms, that Cavalry

Digitized by Google

formations can guarantee to make every arrangement they wish to, in such an operation, without in any way interfering with the Infantry or masking the guns; that a Cavalry Division, without interfering, can assemble at zero hour, superimposed upon the area of the Division with which it is co-operating; with advanced elements, dismounted if necessary, accompanying the attacking Infantry.

The secret of success seems to lie in detailing one Infantry formation and one Cavalry formation (neither ever larger than a Division) to work together in co-operation; leaving them to work out together the details of their joint plan.

The writer has strongly emphasised his point that the tactical disposition of the Cavalry in assembly was faulty, as he considers it so important. The difficulties, which arose from it, were greatly lessened by the exceptional sympathy and assistance given to Descorps by the Commander and B.G.G.S. of XXIst Corps—an assistance very necessary for Cavalry when attempting this peculiarly difficult operation

The Morale of the Cavalry.

It has been stated previously that Descorps was full of malaria; and it was only to be expected that, consequently, the *morale* of the Corps would be lowered.

On September 17, the C.-in-C. came to see all the unit commanders in Descorps. He staggered them by his optimism; he stated his confidence that we should have a success of great magnitude. His bearing had a magnetic effect upon all.

All Cavalry Divisions were fortunate in their Commanders, and the training which they pumped into their Divisions just prior to the operation was of a high order; it dealt principally with the conduct of attack and pursuit. Fourcav. and Fivecav. had always been armed with swords or lances, as well as rifle and bayonet; Ausdiv. had just been issued with the sword.

Digitized by Google

In the training, the *arme blanche* weapon was not forgotten; Ausdiv. had two weeks' intense training in its use. Previous experience in Palestine had proved that, in pursuit, it is the weapon *par excellence.*

The G.O.C., Fourcav., Sir George Barrow, issued a paper entitled 'Fighting Instructions' to his Division just before the attack. It shows the spirit which animated Descorps throughout, a wonderful spirit in which to go into battle after four years of war. It is not contended for one moment that others could have produced anything so inspiring or so full of knowledge. It is a wonderful example of the art of command.

The paper is based upon the experience of four years' war. It was issued by Sir George Barrow to his Division immediately prior to the great final effort. Any reader will see that the General believed that what he said was true; it carried conviction to his troops; and the sequel proved him right. The paper is reproduced in full below; it should prove a great inspiration to all Cavalry soldiers who read it, in particular to those called to fight in the Middle East.

Fighting Instructions.

4th Cavalry Division.

I. *Introduction.*

The principles of war are unchanging, but the manner in which these principles are applied varies according to the nature of the warfare in which we are engaged, the character of the enemy and his armaments, the climate, the lie and lift of the ground, and above all, the respective moral of the opposing forces. For this reason, the Divisional Commander considers it desirable to issue Fighting Instructions, which are largely based on experiences gained during recent Operations against the Turk in Palestine.

Digitized by Google

II. *The Nature of the Country and its Influence on Movement and Manœuvre.*

The country affords nearly every facility for the movement and manœuvre of large bodies of Cavalry. It invites mounted action, whether the scene be set on the Maritime Plain of Sharon or whether it be on the table-land of Amman and Es Salt. While the undulations, the low hills of 200 feet to 300 feet high, the patches of cultivation and trees favour cover and concealment, there is little to impede movement. The only obstacles are the wadis and plantations, which break up formations without constituting barriers to mounted men. Direction and command are simplified by the numerous points of observation which are to be found on the low hills and from which an extensive view can often be obtained; and by the clear definition of the villages and plantations. The wadis present the only surprises, as they are often difficult to see until one is 'on the top of them.' At the same time, when sufficiently broad and deep, they are valuable for purposes of concealment and covered movement. The 'going' is sound and good, except after rain.

From the foregoing brief description, it is evident that the country is singularly suited to that articulate formation which is the most favourable for Cavalry, and which it is safe to adopt owing to the Cavalry's mobility. An articulate formation implies one in which the various parts of a force have room to move, and in which, although all the parts are well linked together, the joints are perfectly supple; each part of the force has room in front and rear and on the flanks to move freely and take advantage of ground and to deploy rapidly. The limiting factor is co-operation. All the component parts of a unit moving in an articulate formation must be in a position to participate in any action in which its unit engages.

Regiments and Brigades should constantly practise this formation and the rapid concentration therefrom for action.

Digitized by Google

Although the theory is simple, it can only be efficiently worked when all ranks are accustomed to it and when the system of intercommunication is in thorough order.

III. *Mounted Action.*

The country being, as we have seen, favourable for Mounted Action, are the other factors equally favourable? What are these other factors?

They are :—

(*a*) Our own ability to carry out a mounted attack when opportunity offers.

(*b*) The degree of efficiency of the Turkish soldier.

(*c*) Moral.

As regards—

(*a*) Training, tradition and inclination are on our side. Leaders and men have been constantly trained in the drill and technique of the mounted attack against hostile infantry, cavalry and guns; the traditions of ages culminating in the experiences of the present war give us the necessary confidence; the natural inclination is strong. The ability therefore exists.

(*b*) The Turk has the reputation of being a stubborn fighter behind trenches. But in open warfare his efficiency is seriously impaired by his indifferent marksmanship. He rarely hits anything that he aims at, even at close ranges. Our recent experiences in the Jordan Valley are all in support of this assertion. And since fire effect is the only effect which the mounted attack has to fear, we are able to gallop the Turkish Infantry with a light heart on occasions when we might hesitate in the face of a better shooting enemy.

The Turkish Artillery is to be respected. It is often taken up accurately and effectively. But, in open warfare, the enemy is not in a position to bring very great weight of metal against us. In ninety-nine cases

Digitized by Google

out of a hundred, there is nothing in his artillery or rifle and machine-gun fire to stop a determined charge.

(*c*) We have established a great moral superiority over the Turk. He has suffered severe defeat, and has been constantly forced to retire. He has been defeated in every mounted attack which we have undertaken and in frequent patrol encounters. He dislikes our cold steel, and the sight of it makes his fire erratic. He cannot stop us from reaching him, and when once we reach him his fate is sealed.

Every factor, therefore, when the tactical situation permits, is in favour of the attack mounted. And it must be borne in mind that not only does a mounted attack bring about a decision much more quickly than a prolonged fire fight, but its results are more decisive and the after-effects are more far-reaching and much more lasting.

Troops who have fought a fire action, even when forced to retire, are generally prepared to fight again next day or even earlier; troops who have once been ridden over by Cavalry will rarely face a second charge throughout the course of the same campaign.

In the element of surprise, rapidity of action is the complement of concealment. Especially is this so when dealing with the Turks. A sudden and rapid attack, carried through with determination, will always be more effective than wide turning movements and elaborate tactics, once we have arrived within striking distance.

To sum up—

(*a*) Whenever there is a choice between mounted and dismounted action, it is the mounted attack which should be adopted, because—

(i) All the factors requisite for a successful charge are present.

(ii) The results are more quickly attained, more decisive and more lasting.

Digitized by Google

(*b*) The attack should be based on a simple plan, put into execution as rapidly as is consistent with proper preparation.

IV. *Preparatory Formations.*

Although it is not out of the question that we may be called upon to meet Turkish Cavalry, it is Infantry that we shall generally be up against.

The procedure for the attack against Infantry and Artillery is laid down in Section 208 of Cavalry Training. The most suitable formations from which to launch the successive lines of attack should be considered and practised by Regiments and Brigades, so that there may be no delay or confusion when the time for action arrives. These formations may vary according to the time available for preparation, the frontage, the plan and other circumstances; but the variations must be simple and few and known to all, in order that the one selected by the Commander at the time may be adopted readily and without risk of misunderstanding.

V. *Hotchkiss Rifles.*

A mounted attack must be assisted by all the fire power available. (The question of the employment of artillery and machine guns is dealt with later.)

When the mounted attack is decided upon, Hotchkiss rifles must fall out automatically and be grouped under squadron and regimental arrangements in charge of officers previously detailed for the purpose.

Their duties will then be—

(*a*) To look out for and deal with flank attacks;

(*b*) Make good a captured position;

(*c*) Cover a retirement.

For (*a*) and (*c*) they must be prepared to occupy tactical points and come into action with great rapidity. And their

Digitized by Google

skilful handling will demand, on the part of the officers who are commanding them, alertness and quick decision.

VI. *Ground Scouts.*

In front of the attacking line, when once it has deployed, ground scouts are of very little use. Their information arrives too late, and in any case the time is past for modifying one's dispositions. In the majority of instances, a certain period elapses before the launching of the attack from the preparatory position, during which the Commander explains his plan and the preliminary dispositions are being made. This period should be utilised to send forward officers for the purpose of reconnoitring the ground over which the advance will take place. These officers should work in pairs. If the number of available officers does not permit of this, each officer should be accompanied by a N.C.O., who can bring back information in the event of his officer becoming a casualty and to meet the case of an accident to a horse. This precaution is all the more necessary in this country, where small wadis are frequent and cannot be seen even at a distance of a few yards.

VII. *Dismounted Attack.*

Dismounted action will only be resorted to when a mounted attack is out of the question.

The rules for dismounted action are to be found in pages 283 to 298 of 'Cavalry Training,' and it only remains to consider the question of the employment of Hotchkiss rifles, with which the Cavalry has been armed since the commencement of the war.

Hotchkiss rifles are an addition, and, in the case of the comparatively weak rifle strength of a Cavalry force, a very important addition to our fire power. We obtain a valuable clue as to their *rôle* and proper method of employment in the 'Notes on Recent Fighting,' issued by the General Staff, April 1918, and from which the following is extracted, sub-

Digitized by Google

stituting 'Hotchkiss' for Lewis gun and 'dismounted' for infantry attack :—

> 'The Hotchkiss rifles form, owing to their great mobility and concentrated fire power, the framework of the dismounted attack. They can carry on the fire fight, if necessary, without any groups of riflemen. If the fighting strengths do not permit of special groups of riflemen being formed, the Hotchkiss groups can be correspondingly strengthened.'

We cannot do better than base our experience on these latest experiences. The result of the fire fight depends on the volume and accuracy of the fire and not on the numbers of men engaged. And although the Hotchkiss rifles cannot replace bayonets in the final charge, they can supply the necessary volume of fire to enable the bayonets to get forward to within charging distance and with the minimum number of casualties.

Situations will occur when the fire zone can be crossed at the gallop, although the position itself must be assaulted with the bayonet. When this is the case, it will be the quickest and least costly method of approach. The only proviso of a 'mounted approach' is cover for the act of dismounting and the led horses. The moral effect on the enemy bears a distinct ratio to the pace at which the attack advances. If the time in which the attackers can succeed in arriving at assaulting distance becomes a matter of minutes instead of hours, the moral effect on the enemy will be such that he will rarely stand to face the bayonet assault.

Given, therefore, the conditions which we may expect to find at any time in Palestine, viz. :—

> (i) A position from which it is necessary to drive the enemy and which cannot be galloped.
>
> (ii) The approach to the position leading over ground favourable to the rapid movement of mounted men.

Digitized by Google

(iii) Shelter of some sort in the vicinity of the position, or dead ground at its foot,

the approach should be made extended at the gallop. A painful and prolonged fire fight will thus be avoided.

VIII. *Artillery.*

As to the artillery, there is nothing in the local conditions to call for any modifications in the instructions given in pages 297–303 of 'Cavalry Training,' and pages 265–276 'Field Artillery Training.' These instructions can be accepted in full.

Normally, when the Division is working in the field, batteries will group with the Brigades to which they are affiliated. They must always be prepared, however, to be brigaded at any time under the direct command of the C.R.A.

There is one thing which the experience of this war has brought out, and that is the importance of close association between the Artillery and the arm which it supports. An exchange of *liaison* officers between the Cavalry and the Artillery for the period of operations is not sufficient. What is required is personal touch between regimental and battery officers. It is too much to expect good co-operation between strangers. It becomes a duty, therefore, for regimental and battery officers of a brigade group to get to know each other well before coming into the presence of the enemy.

IX. *Machine Guns.*

At the commencement of the war, machine guns were integral parts of the squadron and company. The tendency has since been to organise them into independent formations, and now we have the Machine Gun Company and the Machine Gun Battalion, and at last the machine gun has come to be recognised as 'an intermediate weapon with tactics of its own.' This being so, the Machine Gun Squadron, like the regiments and battalions of a Brigade Group, is disposed of

Digitized by Google

directly by the Brigade Commander. He gives to it its own place in his operation orders. He will aim at keeping its fire value in his own hands. In other words, the temptation to break up the Machine Gun Squadron by allotting sections and subsections to regiments and squadrons must be resisted. It is not meant by this that guns are never to be detached from the Machine Gun Squadron. It will often be necessary and advisable to do this, for protective and for special purposes, in the same manner as a section of guns is often detached from a battery of Artillery. But such detachment should be looked on as a temporary measure, and the guns should return to their squadron immediately on completion of their special task. Only in this way will their great fire-power be directed towards the attainment of big results.

In a mounted attack the machine guns will normally be massed on a flank of the Artillery.

In dismounted action their duties will be :—

(*a*) In attack to concentrate their fire on the part of the line against which our main attack is directed.

(*b*) In defence, to concentrate on whatever hostile bodies of attacking troops are at the moment most threatening or dangerous; and to cover a counter-attack.

(*c*) In both attack and defence, to provide overhead fire for the support of the rifle and Hotchkiss groups.

(*d*) To protect the flanks against outflanking movements and counter-attacks.

For these purposes, the machine guns should not be disposed in one line, but be distributed in depth; by which they can make better use of the ground, offer a much more difficult target to the enemy, and are much better able to meet the contingencies referred to in (*d*).

It is concentration of effort, as opposed to dispersion, which wins battles, and this rule applies to the machine-gun, as much as to any of the other arms.

Digitized by Google

X. *Security.*

Allusion has been made to the inferior moral of the Turks. This does not justify the slightest relaxation in the measures we must take for our security. Contempt for the enemy, bringing with it carelessness in the matter of protection, has been a constant source of disaster throughout the history of war. We must be as careful in face of the Turk as we should be if opposed to the most skilful and enterprising foe.

Protective dispositions must not be contracted, and patrols must be sent out to a distance of 4 to 5 miles at least from the main body. And when once touch with the enemy has been gained, he must be piquetted.

Massed formations on the march must be avoided. Death loves a crowd. By making every possible use of cover, and by the adoption of suitable formations, the opportunities for hostile artillery and aircraft will be reduced to a minimum.

XI. *The Pursuit.*

'All pursuing troops should act with great boldness, and be prepared to accept risks which would not be justifiable at other times' (F.S.R., I., sec. 112, 4). When the enemy is beaten and we are on his heels, a methodical progression, as is adopted in the approach march, is out of place. Reconnaissance and protective bodies must still be employed, but we cannot afford to wait too long on their movements. The only objective to be given at this time should be the enemy. Everyone should be animated with the desire to get forward as fast as possible, to kill and take prisoners and to capture guns. By these means, the enemy's demoralisation will be increased, and he will fall an easy prey. The pursuit, carried on in this fashion, will entail a good deal of dispersal of units, and it is here that good discipline, good training and a good system of communication and command will come in. If the men 'see red,' so much the better; but the leaders must keep their heads and constantly endeavour to maintain touch

Digitized by Google

with neighbouring units and with the formation to which they belong. Every formation must endeavour to keep a reserve in hand to meet unforeseen contingencies, and on which the leaders of the pursuing troops must rally on every occasion after they have dealt with the enemy in their own immediate sphere of action.

XII. *Moral.*

'The moral is to the physical as three is to one.'

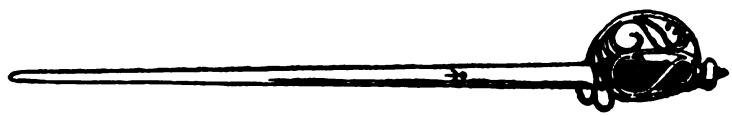
No military maxim has been more often quoted; none so little understood.

The sight of a determined mounted advance and the fear of cold steel have far greater and more lasting effect than many bullets. The terror inspired by a Cavalry charge extends far and wide, and is not confined to the troops immediately attacked.

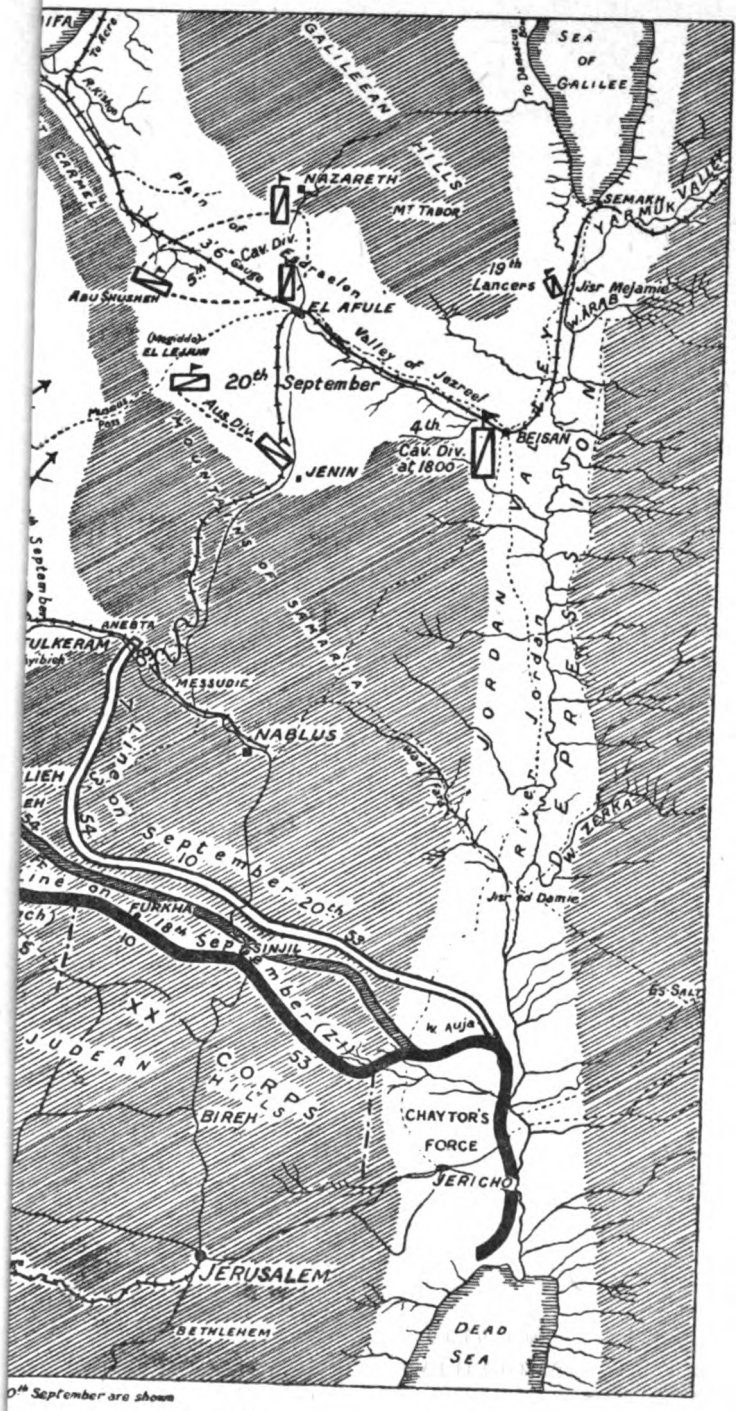
Officers should try and realise that *morale* is something more than an abstract quality. For you it is a tangible asset. If you have confidence in your men, and they have confidence in you; if they are well trained and, above all, leavened through and through with discipline of the right sort, and if you yourselves have the tactical knowledge and insight to manœuvre your men into suitable positions for dealing with the enemy—then one of your troops becomes the equivalent of three troops, one squadron the equivalent of three squadrons, and one regiment the equivalent of three regiments.

Then you can venture much and greatly dare.

(To be continued.)



Digitized by Google

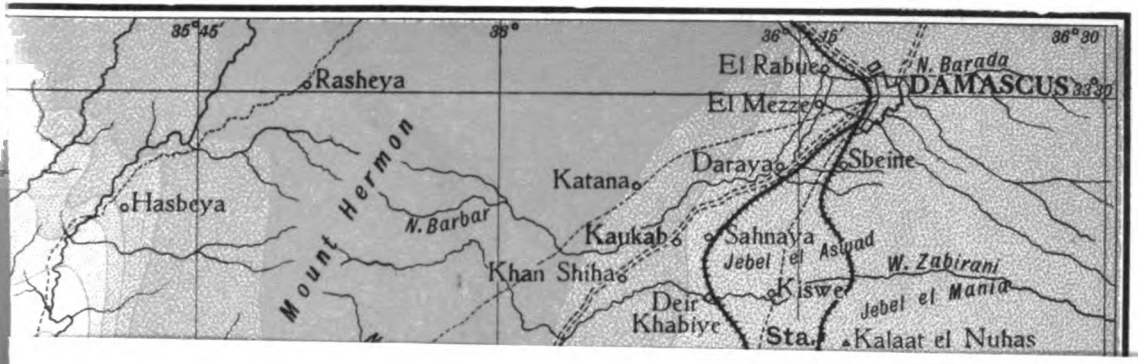


0th September are shown

Plate XIII.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google



Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

THE FRENCH IN EGYPT, 1791

OUR humorous illustration of French drill instructors, presumably training the Egyptian Army of 1791, is from a coloured drawing assigned to Carl Vernet. The subject is probably founded on fact, though the date, April, 1791, was seven years before Napoleon's invasion of Egypt, which was undertaken with the ostensible object of assisting the Porte by overthrowing the power of the Mamelukes, which had been increasing since 1750, when Turkish authority began to wane. But while Egypt was dominated by this depraved and unscrupulous oligarchy, French influence was at work in the cause of order and civilisation. Count de Volney was a French traveller remarkable for his intelligence, energy and initiative, who, in the year 1783, after secluding himself in a 'convent,' so it is recorded, in Egypt, in order to acquire the Arabic language, travelled in Syria and afterwards published an account of his wanderings.

He compares the difference there would be if Egypt was in the hands of 'une nation amie des beaux arts;' and he foretells, 'C'est à ce temps, *moins éloigné peut-être qu'on ne pense*, qu'il faut remettre nos souhaits et notre espoir, c'est alors qu'on pourra fouiller de toutes partes la terre du Nil, et les sables de Lybye.'

Volney had made Napoleon's acquaintance when he was yet an artillery officer. To what extent was the count responsible for the policy of France in Egypt?

Digitized by Google

THE ROMANCE OF THE DRUM BANNER

By Edward Fraser.

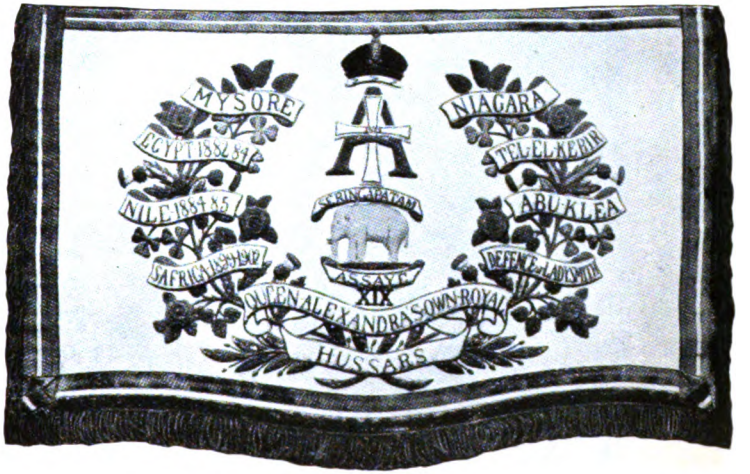
III.

The Royal United Service Institution Museum, as was said at the close of the last article, possesses the Drum Banners of the formerly famous London and Westminster Light Horse, on the model of which corps, as a curious fact, our original old Yeomanry Regiments were formed. As also said, the Drum Banners in question are the oldest existing, as far as is known, of any British Drum Banners. They are in an excellent state of preservation, and are apparently one of the original pairs, presented in 1779 and 1780, on the raising of the regiment. King George III. presented one of the three pairs the regiment possessed, and the City of London, the two other pairs; one pair being presented to each of the three troops, together with its guidon. Which pair of these last is now at the Royal United Service Institution Museum is not clear. The Drum Banners and Guidons were ceremoniously deposited in the Tower at the Peace of 1783; ceremoniously received back on Tower Hill when the war with France broke out in 1793. They were again laid up at the Peace of Amiens in 1802, and resumed with ceremonial honours on Tower Hill in 1803 on the outbreak of the Napoleonic war. Deposited again in 1814, and again later resumed, they were finally deposited in the Tower on the last disbandment of the London and Westminster Light Horse in 1829. Each Banner, vertically divided, bears in its right half the arms of the City of London, the white shield bearing a red St. George's cross and the red dagger, or sword, in the upper left-hand quarter;

Digitized by Google

THE FRENCH IN EGYPT, 1791.

Digitized by Google



DRUM BANNERS.

Royal Horse Guards.
17th Lancers.

3rd Dragoon Guards.
19th Royal Hussars.

Digitized by Google

and on the left half, the arms of the City of Westminster, the golden portcullis on blue on the lower two-thirds of the shield and on the upper third; also, on blue ground, Edward the Confessor's gold cross with four golden 'martlets,' or heraldic legless swallows, flanked by two double red and white roses. Above the coat-of-arms shield are the words 'London and Westminster,' and below, the motto 'Forward,' with, under that, 'Light Horse Volunteers.' The ground-colour of the Drum Banners is blue, and the shield is surrounded with a wreath of roses and thistles, proving it to be older than the Union with Ireland in 1801, when shamrocks were added to similar wreaths on all drum banners. The City gave the 1st troop its Drum Banners, which were crimson; the King gave the 2nd troop blue Banners; and blue was also the colour of the 3rd troop's Banners which the City, again, were the donors of.

Our oldest existing Drum Banner of all is a Royal Artillery Drum Banner, crimson and gold, which is, or at any rate was until quite recently, to be seen in the hall of the Ordnance Office at the Royal Arsenal, Woolwich. As far back as 1689 William III., copying the foreign Dutch and German fashion, introduced a pair of kettledrums, mounted on a sort of chariot, drawn by white horses, as part of the establishment of the Artillery Train, to lead the long line of guns and waggons on the march. The Kettledrums had, it is stated, richly decorated Drum Banners bearing the arms of the Master General of the Ordnance. The Artillery Kettledrums were taken into the field all through King William's war and Marlborough's, and also in George II.'s time, down to a short time before the beginning of the Seven Years' War (1756–1763), when the Artillery Train ceased to exist, the guns being distributed and divided into battalions and companies, and, later, into batteries, instead of being kept, as heretofore, massed as one long column on the march. The Irish Royal Artillery, which existed down to 1801, when its establishment was merged

Digitized by Google

in the British establishment, had its own Kettledrums and Chariot and Drum Banners, which made a display at all parades near Dublin whenever the Lord Lieutenant was present. Those Drum Banners were once lodged and on view at Kilmainham; where they are now there is, apparently, no means of knowing.

Of Cavalry present-day Drum Banners, one of the most interesting pairs, if not the most interesting of all, is the pair which H.M. Queen Alexandra personally presented to the 19th (Queen Alexandra's Own Royal) Hussars on parade at Hownslow on June 18, 1913. Field-Marshal the Earl of Ypres, Colonel of the Regiment, took part in the ceremony. First the Queen, with the Empress Marie of Russia, drove along the front of the line. Then the drummer, accompanied by the two officers appointed to receive the banners from the Queen, advanced to the royal pavilion, before which the regiment was drawn up. Sir John French, as the Field-Marshal then was, presented the officers to the Queen, who handed a Banner to each. The Banners were forthwith strapped on to the drums and were paraded along the front of the line, after which the drummer took post and a Royal Salute was given. The former Drum Banners of the 19th Hussars had borne, embroidered with the regimental badge, a Crown over the regimental title as 'Alexandra Princess of Wales's Own Hussars.' The new pair were similar in general appearance, but had the words 'Queen Alexandra's' substituted for the former titular designation. These were the first Drum Banners ever presented by the Sovereign's Consort, or indeed by any Royalty, to a British Cavalry regiment. Silver Kettledrums had been before presented to regiments of the Household Cavalry, but there is no record of a previous Drum Banner royal presentation. Nor has there been any since.

There are several instances on record, in Cavalry regimental histories and books of reminiscences by old officers, of private

Digitized by Google

presentations of Drum Banners. In 1864, for instance, on July 26, the records of the Carabiniers note that 'A pair of white satin gold-embroidered Drum Banners' were presented to the regiment by Major C. W. Bruce, with the words 'Sebastopol' and 'Delhi.' Again, at the regimental dinner of the Carabiniers on June 1, 1893, held at Limmer's hotel, a pair of Kettledrum Banners were presented to the regiment by Colonel N. B. Hamilton, who had served with the Carabiniers from 1864 to 1886. These last Drum Banners, it is stated, were specially designed by Sir A. Woods, Garter King-at-Arms, and the design comprised the Union Wreath with the Battle Honours, surmounted by the Crown and the regimental title and badge, all richly embroidered in gold on white. The Carabiniers seem to have been peculiarly favoured. They were, it is also stated, in 1865, presented by one of their officers, Cornet H. Burley, with a pair of Kettledrums; and, twelve years later, in 1877, by Sir Carne Rasch, a former lieutenant of the regiment, with 'a magnificent pair of silver Kettledrums,' for the gift of which the donor was specially thanked in regimental orders (January 2, 1877).

To refer at random to another regiment. The 13th Hussars have in existence two sets of Drum Banners. One pair, which were in use in Queen Victoria's reign, displaying the Royal monogram and wreath, with the Battle Honours, on retirement, or replacement, found its resting place of honour in the officers' mess. The second pair had King Edward's monogram 'E.R.,' with crown, wreath and battle honours.

In like manner some of our older Yeomanry Cavalry regiments have had Drum Banners presented to them at various times, usually in connection with some special occasion. A newspaper of 1851, for example, records the presentation to the Montgomeryshire Yeomanry, during their annual training, of 'a pair of gorgeous red velvet Kettledrum standards,' presented on parade by Viscountess Sydenham, the donor,

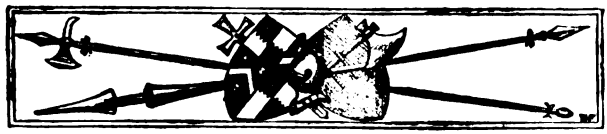
Digitized by Google

in connection with a family celebration. In 1835, the Hon. Lady Rolle, wife of the Hon. Mark Rolle, Colonel of the regiment, presented the North Devon Yeomanry with 'four standards and Kettledrum Banners.' A number of other Yeomanry Drum Banners, presented in similar circumstances, are still in existence; in some cases kept in country houses as treasured family relics and heirlooms.

At this point, perhaps, it may be as well to call a halt.

The Curator of the R.U.S.I. Museum is most desirous to obtain the Drum-banners of those Regiments which have been reduced to one Squadron, on the understanding that, if they are again raised to a complete unit, the same will be returned to them. The following Regiments have sent theirs:— 19th Hussars, 20th Hussars, 21st Lancers, also those of the 21st Hussars. Every care will be taken of them and they will be suitably displayed.

A. L.



Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

A JUNGLE SCENE.

Digitized by Google

BIG GAME SHOOTING AT NIGHT

MANY of our readers will be vividly reminded of lonely vigils in the forest by our illustration of a jungle scene at dawn, in which a dead elephant has attracted the alligators from a pool.

A solitary watch in the hushed hours requires the exercise of a sportsman's utmost vigilance and patience. He may have to outwit that occasional scourge of the East, a man-eating tiger, or perhaps await the return to its kill of a cunning predatory panther.

Opinions differ as to the legitimacy of sitting up at night for other game, but it is the only possible method when the jungle is too thick for stalking, too dry for tracking, or too continuous for drives.

Some lion-hunters in Africa have used an electric lamp for night-shooting, so fastened to the hat that in taking aim the light can be projected along the sights on to the quarry. The apparatus has its objections, but should obviate bungled shots.

A remarkable performance in shooting from a *mechan* was accomplished a few years ago by the Nawab of Bhopal who, by the light of a full moon, shot five tigers in succession one night, at an ideal tigerish spot—the junction of precipitous chasms.

Where there is a favourable prospect of organising a tiger beat a sportsman will deny himself a shot at night, in order to share the luck of the chase next day with others; but he must be unsparing to such vermin as the elusive leopard, the destructive wild hunting-dog or the dreaded man-eater.

Digitized by Google

SOME HORSEBREAKING TIPS

By 'The Toad Beneath the Harrow.'

There are many fine horsemen who buy ponies raw, with the idea of training them to polo. A large proportion of these find the pony, at various periods of its training, developing some trick which it is found difficult to overcome. Others, again, may take over a real rogue and try to break him in. The number of tricks that a horse or pony can find are too numerous to describe for the space of this article.

Our endeavour is to illustrate a few simple devices for overcoming the more general defects than to write a treatise on horsemanship as a whole.

One of the most difficult and annoying tricks to overcome is jibbing — an absolute refusal to enter a horse-box, to negotiate a fence, etc. The most usual method of overcoming this is to pass a rope round the quarters above the hocks and pull. We have seen valuable polo ponies and horses so cut from the pressure and slipping of the rope, especially if the horse kicks, as to render him too lame to take part in the event for which he is being boxed.

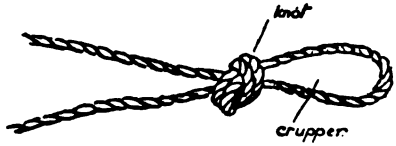
Few realise what a terrific power can be put on to a horse by the judicious use of his tail.

The beauty of bringing force to bear on the tail is, firstly, no horse has yet been known to go lame in his tail; secondly, if a horse is extraordinarily stubborn, the subsequent soreness of his tail helps as a useful reminder should he again shortly try on any tricks of a similar nature.

The tackle required is a length of rope the thickness of an ordinary head rope, about 30 feet in length.

Digitized by Google

The 'modus operandi' is to double the rope in half, and at the centre tie an ordinary thumb knot, leaving a loose end loop to form a crupper.



Place the crupper under the tail, taking care that it is pushed well up to the root of the tail.

Lead the two loose ends through the headstall or rings of the snaffle. A couple of men, or as many as required, take the long ends of the rope and pull.

I have stated a couple of men, or as many as required, as our experience has shown that one man is sufficient for certain animals, whereas others require a fatigue party of a dozen.

In the former case, an Arab racing pony that we owned invariably gave trouble entering a horse-box, to our anxiety and annoyance. We tried the crupper dodge—one pull was quite sufficient and our gentleman walked in like a lamb. Evidently the treatment sored his tail a bit, for on the return journey, after a minute of playing up, master produced a rope with the necessary knot—a mere look at it was enough, the Arab was not taking any, and walked in like a little gentleman.

On the other hand we experienced a real rogue of an Australian in a remount depot. His pet trick was an absolute refusal to go over any jump mounted, though dismounted he could clear a house.

We put the crupper on him and the fun began. Kick, plunge, buck—every game he could think of. Eventually he sat down on his tail and planted his forelegs. At length, with six men on each rope, he had to give way. Having jumped once, at the next try two men, one on each rope, were sufficient. The next try, one man held both ends and the horse followed him over the jump. The following day he refused once. We

Digitized by Google

immediately put on the crupper, with the result that the jump was negotiated without trouble. After that our friend never refused again.

Many horses are naturally ill-balanced; others have got into the habit from consistently being ridden on a loose rein with no leg. To cure this by properly riding the animal is a very long, patient process, to which many of us have not the time to devote.

The late Eustace Crawley, of the 12th Lancers, taught us this trick, which he called the 'straight waistcoat.' It consists of—

(1) An overhead or check rein.
(2) A running rein fixed to the saddle.
(3) A standing martingale.
(4) A saddle, preferably a parade saddle.

(1) is to bring an upward pressure to get the animal's head up. (2) is to correctly bend him at the pole. (3) to counteract No. (1) getting the head too high, and also to prevent the animal easing the strain of bending at the pole by 'star gazing.' No. (4) to fix the tackle on the horse.

No. (1) These reins may be any old ones which we have in the saddle room.

To fix these reins, two flat leather runners must be sewn on the brow band.

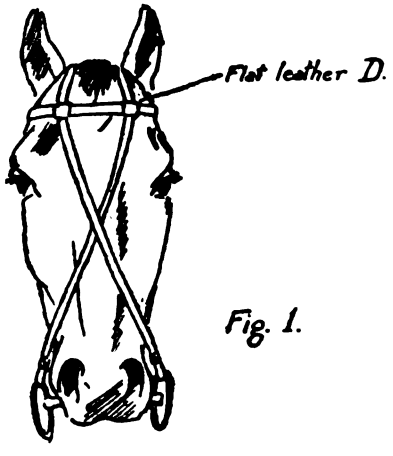


Fig. 1.

Digitized by Google

The distance apart of these runners depends on the shape of the head, but a trial will easily decide that.

Fasten the rein to the snaffle, and cross them over the forehead between the eyes. Pass them through the runners, then over the pole between the ears (Fig. 1) and fix with a knot to the front 'Ds' of the saddle.

Find out by experiment the exact amount of tightness required to keep the horse's head in the correct position.

No. (2). The usual running rein is used, the only point about it being the length, which varies according to the size of the animal.

Fasten the standing end of the rein as high up on to the girth as possible, pass each rein through the snaffle ring. Pass the loose end of the reins over the cantle of the saddle. It is as well to have a buckle on one end of one rein and about a dozen holes punched in the end of the other, so as to alter the length of rein according to the amount of pressure required.

Fix all the reins until the horse carries him as illustrated in Cavalry Training, Plate III., page 138.

The amount of flex at the pole should be very slightly exaggerated.

Finally fix the martingale so that the animal cannot get his head up too high.

Having seen that all is correctly fixed, the horse may be left standing for from half an hour as a commencement, up to three hours daily.

He can go out for his walking exercises led by his syce or attendant.

He can be long-reined with the tackle on.

All the time the tackle is forcing him to balance himself and get correct head carriage. After ten days of this treatment the animal may in addition be ridden with the tackle on.

Some animals, polo ponies in particular, develop a trick of putting their head round one side when asked to turn.

Digitized by Google

The usual cure is a fresh course of riding school and almost complete retraining.

We have found a running rein fastened to a crupper on the opposite side to which the animal turns his head invariably efficacious. The use of this tackle has the great advantage of saving time, and does not necessitate taking the pony out of the game.

The articles required for this are—

(1) A crupper with a buckle on it, to which to fix the end of the running rein.

(2) A piece of string.

(3) A metal D on the back of the saddle.

(4) Any sized curtain ring.

(5) A running rein.

Place the crupper under the tail; fix it to the back of the saddle with a piece of string. This is to keep the crupper in place when the running rein is not in use.

Sew the curtain ring on to the girth just below the saddle flap. This is to pass the rein through to get it out of the way of the rider.

Fix the running rein to the crupper and pass it through the curtain ring; thence through the snaffle to the rider's hand.

This tackle, if used on both sides of the horse, is also a very fine cure for pulling.

We have known ponies with cut mouths, and inveterate pullers as a result, play polo on a snaffle with this tackle.

Jibbing in harness is a nuisance. The only permanent cure we know of, is to picket the horse in harness between the shafts when he jibs, and leave him there for 24 hours without food or water. For this all that is required is to carry picketing pegs in the cart, and warn the syce to bring his bedding and cook pots. We have never known this treatment to fail.

Digitized by Google

NOTES ON THE WORK OF THE INDEPENDENT AIR FORCE DURING THE WAR

FOREWORD.

The author of this paper is indebted to Group Captain C. L. N. Newall, C.M.G., C.B.E., A.M., who commanded the VIIIth Brigade, Royal Air Force, and to Wing Commander L. A. Pattinson, D.S.O., M.C., D.F.C., who commanded 99 Squadron and later the 41st Wing of the Independent Air Force, for the statistics and much of the general information contained therein.

THE Independent Air Force was created as a separate command in June 1918; it was designed to serve a definite military purpose, quite apart from any question of retaliation for bomb raids carried out by hostile aircraft. That purpose was to weaken the power of the enemy both directly and indirectly: directly, by interrupting his production, transport and organisation; indirectly, by producing discontent and alarm amongst the industrial population. It was destined, moreover, to achieve an additional result, which was to force the enemy to draw back his fighting aeroplanes to deal with the threat to his own territory.

Although the importance of bombing the enemy in his own country was recognised early in the war, all available personnel and material were at first required to satisfy the needs of the air service at the Front; and it would, moreover, have been useless to attempt the bombing of Germany on a large scale before the air forces at the disposal of the Allies were strong enough to hold and defeat any formation of aircraft that the enemy could send into the air—in other words, a measure of superiority in the air had to be gained before the war could be carried far into the enemy's country.

Digitized by Google

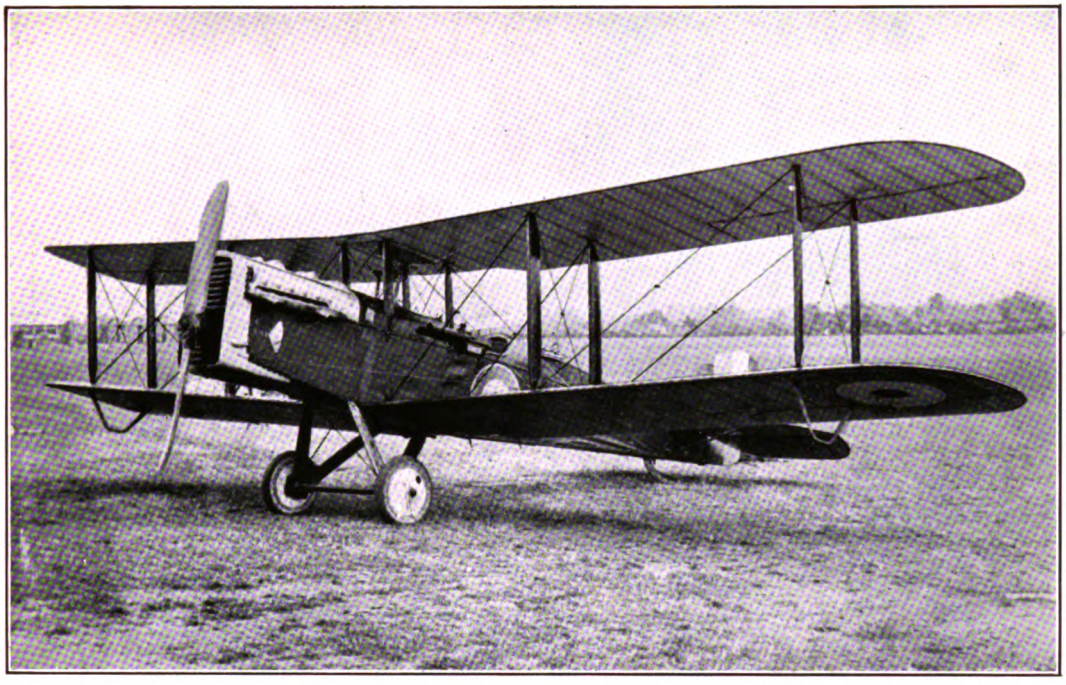
It should be borne in mind that the bombing of Germany presented far greater difficulties to the Allied air service than were encountered by the enemy in attempting to carry out corresponding operations; since, in order to reach Germany, our bombing squadrons were forced to fly over a wide tract of territory, Belgian or French, occupied by hostile troops. Thus, towns such as Nancy, Amiens, Dunkerque and many others were situated within what might be called the zone of active operations and were within easy reach of German aerodromes located in occupied territory. Towns similarly situated on the enemy's side of the lines were all either in Belgium, Alsace-Lorraine or France, and did not, therefore, form suitable targets.

Long-distance bombing necessitated the employment of forces possessing special qualities. In the first place, aircraft used for this purpose had to have a large 'radius of action'; secondly, they had to be capable of carrying a heavy weight and of climbing to a considerable altitude in spite of the weight; and thirdly, they had (especially in the case of day bombing squadrons) to be fitted out to fight so as to be able to beat off attack. Unfortunately, it was not till the latter part of 1917 that aeroplanes fulfilling these requirements were available in any quantity, though isolated raids were carried out as early as 1914.

In the spring of 1916 the Admiralty dispatched a Wing of the Royal Naval Air Service to Luxeuil-les-Bains for the special purpose of long-distance bombing, and this unit was the first to be organised for this special purpose; it continued to operate for some time when it was disbanded, and was superseded later by the 8th Brigade of the Royal Flying Corps, the units of which eventually formed the nucleus of the Independent Air Force.

The aeroplanes employed for long-distance day bombing were at first mainly D.H. 4s, and D.H. 9s, which were replaced, towards the end of the war, by D.H. 9As. For night

Digitized by Google



DE HAVILLAND 9A. TYPE OF BOMBING AEROPLANE USED BY SEVERAL SQUADRONS OF THE INDEPENDENT AIR FORCE. LOAD OF BOMBS: TWO 230-LB. BOMBS.

HANDLEY-PAGE TWIN ENGINED-BOMBER.

Digitized by Google

PHOTOGRAPH OF BOMB RAID ON LUDWIGSHAFEN. A TRAIN CARRYING PETROL TANKS WHICH HAS BEEN STRUCK BY A BOMB IS SHOWN IN THE FOREGROUND.

PHOTOGRAPH OF A FACTORY STRUCK BY A 1,650-LB. BOMB IN OCTOBER, 1918.

Digitized by Google

bombing; which did not entail formation flying, F.E. 2Bs, F.E. 2Cs and Handley Pages were used.

The armament of the daylight 'bombers' consisted generally of a fixed Vickers gun, firing forward, for the use of the pilot, and one or more Lewis guns, manipulated by the gunner, who was stationed behind the pilot.

The Independent Force, upon its creation, was placed under the command of Major-General* Sir H. Trenchard, who was given a free hand with regard to operations. It consisted at first of three squadrons of 'day bombers' and two squadrons of 'night-bombers'; but so remarkable were the results obtained by this small force that it was speedily reinforced and, at the date of the Armistice, numbered nine bombing and one fighting squadrons.

In selecting objectives for bombing attacks, the industrial centres of Germany within range of Independent Air Force aerodromes were classified as follows:—

(*a*) Iron and coal mines.

(*b*) Iron ore 'bassins' (where most of the blast furnaces were to be found).

(*c*) Chemical works.

(*d*) Munition factories.

(*e*) Miscellaneous works producing railway material, rolling stock, aircraft engines, submarine parts, magnetoes, etc.

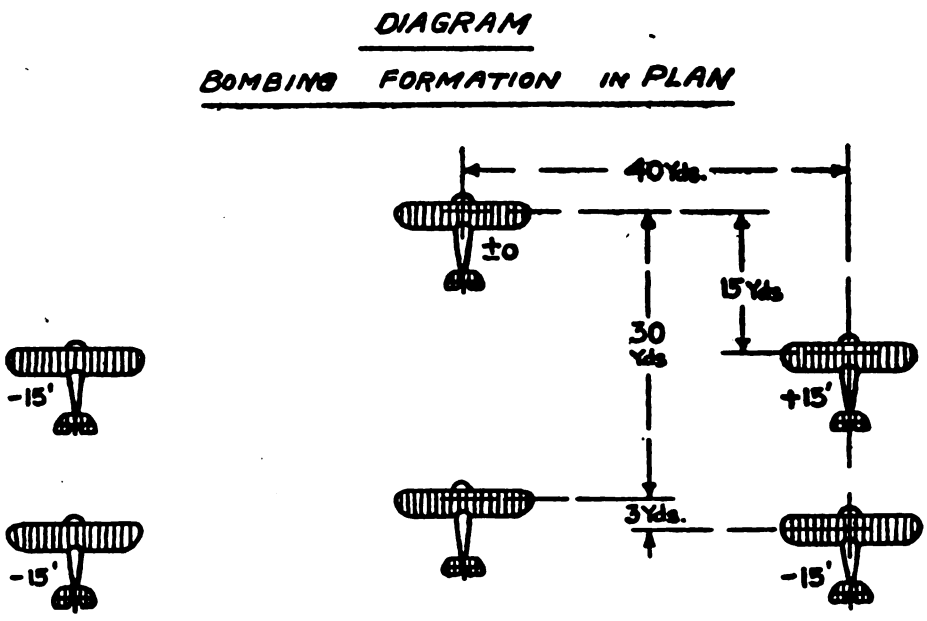
As may well be imagined, the activities of the Independent Air Force soon attracted the attention of the enemy, with the result that an increasing number of fighting squadrons were concentrated in the area over which our bombing units usually operated. Hostile aerodromes and aviation parks were, therefore, included as objectives for bomb raids in order that, whenever possible, the enemy's air forces might be crippled when still on the ground.

In attacking our bombers, the enemy were at a great

* Now Air Chief Marshal Sir H. M. Trenchard, Bart., K.C.B., D.S.O., A.D.C.

Digitized by Google

advantage: they fought over friendly territory; they possessed the initiative and could attack or break off the combat whenever it suited them; they were able to concentrate forces with the object of attacking our formations on their return journey; and, lastly, those of their aeroplanes which were



FORMATION ADOPTED BY A D.H. 9 SQUADRON DURING BOMBING OPERATIONS SHOWING DISTANCES AND DIFFERENCES IN ALTITUDE MAINTAINED BETWEEN AEROPLANES.*

forced to land owing to engine failure or minor casualties did not fall into the hands of an enemy.

Day and night bomb raids were, of course, carried out in a different manner. By night, aeroplanes were despatched singly, since their greatest danger lay in being brought down by anti-aircraft fire, and the Germans never developed the attack of night bombers by means of single-seater fighting

* This illustration is reproduced from 'The History of 99 Squadron,' by permission of the author, Squadron-Leader L. A. Pattinson, D.S.O., M.C., D.F.C.

Digitized by Google

aeroplanes to any great extent. By day, the success of bomb raids depended, very largely, on the organisation of units taking part in them and on their efficiency in formation flying. It was found by experience that the enemy rarely attacked a well-drilled concentration of our aeroplanes at decisive ranges, when the latter were so organised as to benefit by each other's covering fire. The difficulty was that a formation was liable to lose cohesion after it had bombed the target, or when some of its members became casualties owing to engine failure or stray shots; and the enemy would then seize the opportunity in order to dive down and destroy the bombers in detail.

It is not possible, in these pages, to describe the various types of formation adopted by units of the Independent Air Force during their flights over Germany; since the respective positions maintained by pilots in relation to their leader and to each other depended on the type of aeroplane being used. As a general rule, pilots flew as close together as possible with the object of affording each other mutual support, so that the guns of at least two aeroplanes could be concentrated against any attack from whatever direction it might be delivered.

Bombing formations differed from fighting formations in that they had to be organised mainly for the defence; because, owing to the long distances which they were forced to fly and their limited fuel supply, they were not usually afforded the time to manœuvre when attacked, but were forced to rely on combined fire effect to beat off the enemy.

The tactics adopted by the enemy in attacking varied considerably. If the bombers were numerous and kept good formation, the enemy as a rule would not come to close quarters, but would open fire at ranges of 300 to 500 yards in the hope of bringing off a 'lucky shot.'

At these long and indecisive ranges they were at an advantage, because they fired through fixed forward guns which

Digitized by Google

were able to develop greater accuracy than the hand-held Lewis guns of the defenders. As soon as a bombing aeroplane commenced to lag behind, it was pounced upon and destroyed.

These tactics could never attain decisive results and, by employing them, the enemy never succeeded in preventing our bombing units from executing their mission; but they caused us many casualties, and if ever a formation became disorganised during a change of direction, or owing to casualties, the enemy would dive down and attempt to break it up.

On one or two occasions the German air force attacked our bombers in a really determined manner from several directions at the same time, with the result that we were subjected to severe losses. An instance of this occurred on July 31, 1918, when a bombing formation of nine D.H. 9s of 99 Squadron were attacked by a force of forty hostile single-seater fighters in the vicinity of Saarburg and lost seven aeroplanes, only two regaining their aerodrome in safety. On this occasion, the enemy detached part of their force, which kept above the bombers, while the remainder attacked from below, two or three of the enemy concentrating on one of ours at a time. Whenever our formation became disorganised, the enemy would dive down from above.

A similar occasion occurred on September 26, when a bombing formation of the same squadron consisting of seven aeroplanes was attacked simultaneously by two formations of the enemy, with the result that only one of our aeroplanes, carrying the wounded pilot and the dead body of his observer, succeeded in flying back to the aerodrome, although a second pilot who had been wounded managed to land on our side of the lines.

The success of a bombing formation depended very largely upon the skill and moral of its leader; and the enemy, knowing this, often concentrated fire on the leading machine. The leader had an extremely responsible position. He selected

Digitized by Google

the course; he regulated the speed; he determined the action to be taken when attacked, and he was responsible for deciding whether to abandon a raid owing to weather conditions.

If the leader became a casualty, his place was immediately taken by the deputy leader, who was invariably detailed before the start and generally flew near the leader.

The bombing squadrons were often attacked very soon after they had crossed the lines on the outward journey, by a hostile formation lying in wait for them. The attack was generally initiated by the hostile leader, who would dive down either from the front or rear, picking out one particular bomber; he was followed, often rather half-heartedly, by his other pilots. If one of the bombers dropped out of the fight, it would invariably be followed down by several of the enemy, so that, in a fight during the course of which we suffered several casualties, the number of our opponents would dwindle rapidly.

Before giving an account of the results obtained by our bomb-raids, it may be of interest to describe the developments which took place in the supply and design of aerial bombs during the war.

On the outbreak of war, the few aerial bombs then in use by the Naval and Military branches of the air service were supplied respectively by the Admiralty and the Directorate of Military Aeronautics; they were the Hale 20-pounder and the Naval 112-pounder used with one fuse. The Friederichshafen and Cuxhaven raids, at the end of 1914, were both carried out with 20-lb. bombs. Towards the end of 1914, high explosive bombs of R.L. design, weighing 112 lb., 20 lb. and 10 lb., were made. All these early types were unsatisfactory, and the material damage caused by them was often negligible. The result of this was that the authorities responsible for the organisation and expansion of the air services at first turned their attention to the development of fighting aircraft and of aircraft destined for co-operation with the Army and Navy; and it was only towards the end of the

Digitized by Google

war that the combatants realised into what a potent weapon of offence the aerial bomb could be turned.

There is ample evidence of the fact that this neglect to develop bombing as a means of striking at the enemy was not limited to the Allied nations.

In 'The German Air Forces,' by Neumann, appears the following paragraph :—

'The chief duties of the Air Force consisted of reconnaissance and artillery observation; bombing was compelled to take a back seat. In spite of the most urgent arguments in favour of developing bombing, brought forward by the Chief of the Air Staff again and again, and his recommendations in favour of carrying bombs even on short raids into enemy territory, this weapon was somewhat neglected during the entire war and, on the whole, its use was unpopular and left undeveloped.'

Unfortunately, lack of suitable personnel to carry out experimental work, and failure to recognise the essential differences between the aerial bomb and the shell, at first detracted from the offensive effect of bomb-raids. It should not be forgotten that the aerial bomb presented entirely new problems to the designer; it possessed great advantages over a projectile destined to be propelled from the muzzle of a gun or howitzer, in that practically the whole of its capacity could be employed for the explosive charge, power of propulsion being supplied by gravity; but it demanded, nevertheless, as much care and forethought in its construction as the shell, if satisfactory results were to be obtained.

During the later stages of the war, development in the design of bombs was rapid, and at the date of the Armistice types in use ranged from the Baby incendiary, containing thermit, weighing 6½ oz., which were dropped by hundreds at a time, to the 1,650-lbs. high-explosive bomb which was designed towards the end of the war and used during the last few bomb raids.

Digitized by Google

The following table shows how the demand for aerial bombs increased between the middle of 1915 to the middle of 1918 :—

1915.		1918.	
Monthly Output.	Reserve filled.	Weekly output.	
5,000 - 20-lb. Hale bombs.	150,000	20,000 - 20-lb.	Hale.
750 - 100-lb. Hale bombs.	50,000	2,500 - 50-lb.	,,
750 - 100-lb. R.L. bombs.	10,000	750 - 230-lb.	,,
	10,000	2,000 - 250-lb.	,,
	2,500	250 - 520-lb.	,,
	3,000	500 - 550-lb.	,,

In estimating the results obtained by bombing, General Headquarters in the field had, of course, all the usual channels of information at its disposal. In addition to this source of information, the reports of pilots and observers were collected after each raid, together with the photographs taken, whenever possible, immediately after bombs had been released; so that a considerable amount of information regarding the results obtained was generally available. It must not be forgotten, however, that the reports of officers taking part in a raid were obtained under great difficulties and were, therefore, often very limited. From a height of 12,000 to 15,000 feet, the accurate observation of results is a difficult matter, even under the most favourable conditions; and when to the difficulty of discerning an unfamiliar target are added the bursting of anti-aircraft shells and, in many cases, attack by enemy aircraft, it requires an experienced and intelligent observer to bring back a detailed account of the operation.

After the Armistice, a Commission was sent to Germany to investigate the effect of our bomb-raids, and much valuable information was collected.

This evidence confirmed the opinion formed during the war with regard to the effect produced by our bomb raids, which was that the moral effect and its resulting influence on the production of vital war industries was far greater than the actual material damage caused.

Digitized by Google

In certain centres which were frequently attacked, such as Mannheim, Thionville and Saarburg, considerable interruption in the work of factories was caused. Not only was the production considerably lessened by the damage, and by the precautions which the workmen insisted should be taken for their protection, but these places were sometimes partly deserted by the population, and this exodus meant either the complete cessation of output or at any rate such a dislocation of the organisation that it took a considerable time till work could be resumed.

Some of the principal objectives of the Independent Air Force were railways and locomotive sheds, because it was known that the Germans were extremely short of rolling stock and that their facilities for building and repairing engines were limited.

On enquiry after the war, it was found that locomotive sheds and workshops had frequently been hit; and, long after the Armistice, locomotives which had been damaged as far back as September, 1918, were discovered in an unrepaired condition.

One of the most successful bombing attacks on railway stations was the one on Thionville, carried out on July 16, 1918. In the course of this raid a munition train which was standing on No. 7 track in the centre of the station received two direct hits. Fifteen trucks at once exploded and set fire to the express goods shed and adjoining buildings, and the whole station was wrecked. In addition, about fifty trucks were completely burnt out. Figure 3 gives an idea of the damage which was caused to station and track by the raid.

Towards the end of October 1918, the Supreme War Council decided to combine the Allied long-distance bombing units under one central command, in order that full advantage might be gained from co-ordinating the air power of the Allies. The formation of an Inter-Allied Bombing Force, which was

Digitized by Google

to consist of all the available long-range bombing units of the British, French, and Italian Air Services, together with American units, when these could be formed, was therefore agreed upon.

This force was named the Inter-Allied Independent Air Force, and was destined to perform on a very much larger and more intensive scale, the work carried out up to that date by the Independent Air Force.

General Trenchard was nominated Commander-in-Chief of this force, and all preparations to carry out the plan were being pushed forward when the armistice brought an end to hostilities.

In conclusion, a few statistics of the weight of bombs dropped and the casualties sustained by the Independent Air Force during the last few months of the war may be of interest :—

	July, 1918.	August.	September.	October.	November (to 10th)
	lbs.	lbs.	lbs.	lbs.	lbs.
Total weight of bombs dropped during month	184,701	224,111	399,946	218,993	45,920
Number of raids	84	62	86	63	6
Enemy aircraft destroyed	7	20	13	7	6
Number of our aeroplanes missing	16	26	37	14	6
CASUALTIES.					
Number of pilots killed or missing	16	31	43	19	7
Number of observers killed or missing	21	48	51	19	6
Number of pilots wounded	2	5	16	6	2
Number of observers wounded	6	6	17	8	3

In comparing the enemy's casualties, shown in the above table, with our own, it should be borne in mind that the

* This column does not include enemy aircraft driven down out of control.

Digitized by Google

primary object of the Independent Air Force was bombing, whereas the whole of the enemy's efforts were directed to the destruction of our aircraft.

The writer has made an attempt, in the limited space available, to convey some idea of the work performed by the Independent Air Force during the closing stages of the Great War, and to explain some of the difficulties which had to be overcome before our late enemies could be bombed in their own country.

The operations carried out by the Independent Air Force are of more than historical interest: they foreshadow, faintly, a new feature of warfare which must surely exercise an increasing influence on military science.

Digitized by Google

THE STREAM-LINE BULLET

FOR some years there has been a divergence in the aims and objects of the Army Rifle Association and the National Rifle Association, but we understand that there is some prospect of a *rapprochement* and that, even if they do not hold a combined meeting together with the post-war Territorial Army Rifle Association at Bisley next year, it is becoming more evident that the two organisations should be in closer *liaison* and under the direction of a central authority.

At the N.R.A. Meeting which was concluded on July 22 match-riflemen, whose accomplishments at long ranges are often thought to be of doubtful practical value, demonstrated the usefulness of their sport, by shooting with great success at long ranges a new form of bullet possessing possible military advantages. This new form of bullet is known as the stream-line bullet, because it is shaped to lessen air-resistance on somewhat similar lines to the structures constructed to move rapidly in air or water without producing eddies at their rear. The stream-line bullet shot at Bisley has a tapering tail, instead of the usual abrupt, flat base. The tail does not terminate in a point but in a base of reduced area, the reduction being about 50 per cent. on the usual flat base bullet. It has been known for some years that a bullet of stream-line form has an extreme range nearly twice as great as one of equal weight and diameter having the usual flat base, when both are fired at the same muzzle velocity. This increased range was believed to follow from the reduced effects of 'yaw,' or the axis of the bullet not lying in its trajectory, when the velocity has been reduced by air-resistance to a comparatively low speed. It was not known until demonstrated by match-

Digitized by Google

riflemen that this stream-line form lessens the air-resistance of a bullet at the highest velocities obtainable with firearms. Further, it has now been established that stream-line bullets can be manufactured so as to give an accuracy of shooting quite equal to any other of military form.

The stream-line bullet used at the last Bisley Meeting was developed and manufactured by Kynoch, Limited, and the manufacturers were assisted by the experiments made by the members of the Match Rifle Experimental Committee, of which Lord Cottesloe is the Chairman, who has since written to Nobel Industries, Limited, Kynoch's parent Company, in appreciative terms, saying :—

> 'It is no mean achievement to have produced a pattern of bullet entirely new (so far as this country is concerned) and to have brought it to such perfection as to give greater accuracy and higher scoring in our long range shooting at Bisley than had been attained with the bullet otherwise similar, but having a flat base, which preceded it.'

The B.S.A., who manufactured the rifle barrels used in the trials and by the Bisley competitors, also assisted by providing experimental barrels varying in bore and rifling. The experiments carried out by these riflemen included not only elevation and accuracy tests at long ranges, but also actual measurements of striking velocities at various ranges up to and including 1,000 yards. These experiments proved, for a range of 1,100 yards, that the alteration in the shape of the base of the bullet, giving it a stream-line form, was responsible for, approximately :—

A reduction of the angle of elevation of 11 per cent.
„ „ wind allowance of 25 per cent.
„ „ height of trajectory of 14 per cent.

and at 1,000 yards range an increase in the striking velocity of 14 per cent. By demonstrating the existence of these improvements match-riflemen have made a useful addition

Digitized by Google

to the Science of Rifle-ballistics. It is understood that in collaboration with Messrs. Kynoch the experiments with stream-line bullets are to continue and next year may see a further advance. It would be remarkable indeed if at so early a stage in these experiments the best form of stream-line bullet had been developed, it is more probable that still further improvements are possible.

Match-riflemen in their efforts to make 'long strings of bulls-eyes,' at comparatively long ranges serve a useful purpose when their experiments are made to conform to military requirements as at present. There is of course the objection to a very flat trajectory that it deprives the bullet of its searching effect at medium ranges, but the undoubted advantages of greater penetration, of longer range and accuracy are attained by the stream-line bullet. How can we observe its strike at, say, 4,000 yards?

IMPORTANT

The Staff of the Journal is very limited, and it is therefore necessary for all officers who obtain the Journal direct from the Managing Editor to report any alteration of rank or address immediately, as it is quite impossible to follow up the stations of individual officers; every effort will, however, be made to trace the moves of regiments.

Digitized by Google

THE MACHINE GUN CORPS (CAVALRY) IN FRANCE, 1916–1918

By Captain T. Preston, M.C., *Yorkshire Hussars.*

X.—The Second Battle of Le Cateau.*

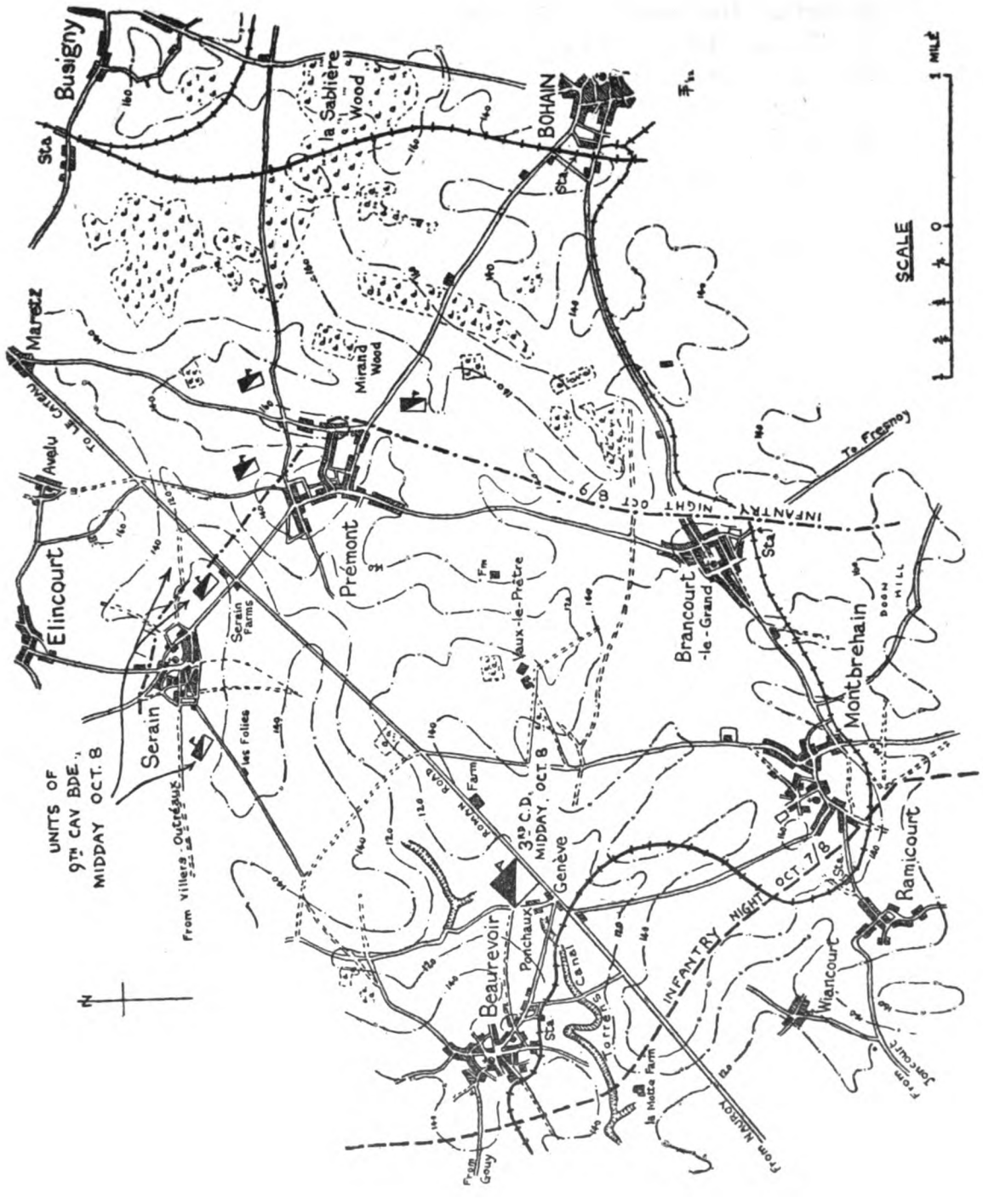
The great battles of September 27–October 5, 1918, resulting in the storming of the Hindenburg Line and the triumphant crossing of the Canal du Nord, brought our troops into comparatively open country. Cavalry action again became feasible, and the Cavalry Corps had on September 28–29 been moved up into the Fourth Army area. As already mentioned, the 2nd Cavalry Division had been split up, and the 3rd and 4th Cavalry Brigades being with the Third Army, and the 5th Cavalry Brigade with the Fourth Army—all three being under different Infantry Corps.

On October 2 and 3 the Fourth Army delivered attacks on the Beaurevoir–Fonsomme line, and on both days the 3rd Cavalry Division was moved up close behind the infantry. It was found impossible to effect a break-through, but some units of the 6th Cavalry Brigade, towards evening on October 3, got into action near Montbrehain, including some guns of the 6th Machine Gun Squadron. On the same night the 5th Machine Gun Squadron, acting with the IX Corps, sent eight guns to reinforce the infantry near La Bergère, east of Bellenglise; these guns, however, did not get any actual shooting.

October 8 was the date of a big attack by the French First Army and Fourth and Third British Armies. If the attack

* This name is used in the C.-in-C.'s Despatches.

Digitized by Google



Digitized by Google

succeeded, the Cavalry Corps was to move in the direction of Le Cateau and capture the railway junctions there and at Busigny. Then, if opportunity arose, it was to operate against the flank and rear of the enemy opposing the Third and First Armies, and try to cut his communications about Valenciennes.*

The infantry attack started well, and the cavalry were able to move up from Magny-la-Fosse to Genève, on the Nauroy–Le Cateau Roman road, the 1st Cavalry Division being in front. Very soon the 9th Cavalry Brigade was in action, the 19th Hussars endeavouring to push forward round Serain and Premont. The 9th Machine Gun Squadron sent one subsection (under 2nd Lieutenant H. C. Mount, M.C.) with C Squadron 19th Hussars; they worked partly round Serain, where enemy machine gunners were holding up our infantry, and Lieutenant Mount placed his guns so as to cover the Elincourt road and the N.E. exits of the village. Both guns immediately came under enemy machine gun fire, but luckily no one was hit. Shortly afterwards, Lieutenant Mount found that C Squadron of the 19th had been recalled to the regiment, so he established a post with a platoon of infantry. His guns fired about 1,000 rounds, which were quickly replaced under trying circumstances through the energy and foresight of Corporal Halsey. Lieutenant Mount was relieved by another subsection about midday.

In the meantime the main body of the 19th Hussars attempted to work round by Premont towards Busigny. They were greatly assisted by a subsection of the 9th Squadron under 2nd Lieutenant F. Twist, M.C., M.M., who handled his guns with great skill. During the first 15 minutes they were in action they fired 2,000 rounds and silenced two German machine guns, the crews of which were seen running away. The led horses of the subsection under Sergeant Sunderland were sent back to Premont village, but were shelled en route, losing five horses killed and five wounded.

* None of these plans turned out to be practicable.

Digitized by Google

A Squadron of the 19th Hussars made another gallant attempt to get forward to Busigny, covered by the fire of 2nd Lieutenant Twist's guns, which had been moved slightly. They fired 1,000 rounds in ten minutes, many hits being obtained, notwithstanding the fact that the men were wearing gas respirators owing to gas shelling by the enemy. (It was when charging a party of Germans at this point that Lieutenant-Colonel G. Franks, D.S.O., of the 19th, met his death). No further progress could be made here, and the 19th Hussars withdrew to a position west of Brancourt.

Meanwhile, 2nd Lieutenant H. A. Lambe's subsection had gone off at 11.20 a.m. with B Squadron 15th Hussars, and he was ordered to dislodge an enemy machine gun in a sunken road running east from Serain. One gun under Sergeant Keeble soon got into action; but the Sergeant, whilst looking for an alternative position, was wounded in the arm by a machine gun bullet. Lance-Corporal Amis then took charge of the gun and, selecting a better place for it, managed to silence the German machine gun. Amis then remained in position about two hours.

The other gun of the same subsection, escorted by a troop of the 15th Hussars, fired obliquely on to the sunken road east of Serain, compelling four enemy machine gun teams to retire hastily from it. While our gun was in action, two pack-horses were hit, one by shell fire and one by machine gun fire from a German aeroplane.

The 9th Machine Gun Squadron was finally withdrawn at 3.20 p.m. (October 8), having had twelve men wounded and twenty-one horse casualties. Throughout the day the subsections had worked in perfect co-operation with the regiments, and rendered most valuable help.

That night, as on most nights at this period, the enemy's bombing aeroplanes were very active, and some 9th Machine Gun Squadron men were, unfortunately, caught by a bomb when bicycling up to join the Squadron in bivouac; Armourer-

Digitized by Google

Sergeant Wheat and Orderly-Room-Corporal Christie were killed and Saddler-Corporal Hill wounded. Apart from the actual danger, this night-bombing meant that no fires could be lit; so the men could have nothing hot to eat or drink, either after bivouacking for the night, or before starting in the morning.

The infantry attack was renewed on the following day, October 9, and the first objective of the Cavalry Corps (Le Cateau) was the same; but to-day the 3rd Cavalry Division was in front, the 1st being in support.

The 3rd Cavalry Division was assembled by 6 a.m. about Genève on the Roman road, and, Maretz village having fallen by 7 a.m., the Canadian and 6th Cavalry Brigades soon afterwards passed through the infantry (25th Division) and began their advance, operating on left and right, respectively, of the Roman road.

The two Cavalry Brigades were now riding over absolutely open country, without a sign of trenches or wire. The villages, with their red roofs, seemed almost untouched by shell-fire, and many houses had large white cloths hung outside by the civilian inhabitants, probably to prevent their being shelled. Evidently the Germans had hardly stayed to meet the infantry attack, as very few dead bodies were seen.

The Canadian Cavalry Brigade on the left flank of the advance was handled with great dash. At 9.55 a.m. Lord Strathcona's Horse attacked Mont-aux-Villes Wood, near Clary; they were supported on the right flank by four guns of the Canadian Machine Gun Squadron under Lieutenant Pierson. These guns opened fire on enemy machine guns in the north-west corner of the wood, and effectually silenced them, although the range was 1,600 yards. As, however, the wood still held out, a further attack was made at 11.10 a.m., by the Fort Garry Horse, who sent forward one squadron plus one troop, with two subsections of machine guns under Lieutenants P. G. Griffin and E. J. Tucker. These officers placed their guns so as to

Digitized by Google

open direct overhead fire at 800 yards, and, under cover of this, the Fort Garry Horse made a combined mounted and dismounted attack on the wood. The mounted Squadron did great execution with the sword, and the wood was taken, a large number of German dead being found in it.

At 12 noon the Strathconas advanced to attack a factory and farm on the Bertry–Clary road. Lieutenant A. Pierson's guns again did excellent work, engaging retiring Germans at six hundred yards, and preventing several of them escaping on loose horses of the Strathconas which were wandering about.

At 2 p.m. the Fort Garry Horse were ordered to make an encircling attack on Reumont from the north-west, one squadron being mounted and two dismounted. Lieutenant Griffin's and Lieutenant Tucker's subsections assisted the Royal Canadian Horse Artillery to place harassing fire on the village and the Le Cateau road, which enabled the Fort Garry Horse to make good the village with trifling losses to themselves. After the capture of Reumont eight machine guns were placed, with the dismounted regiments, in an outpost line running northwards to Rambourlieux Farm, this line being held for the night.

The work of the Canadian Machine Gun Squadron on October 9 showed that the lessons of August 8 had been taken to heart. The actions of the different subsections may well be taken as 'sealed patterns' for the *rôle* of cavalry machine guns in the attack, and the officers deserve the greatest credit for their ready grasp of the tactical situation. The Squadron lost on this day Lieutenants P. G. Griffin and E. J. Tucker wounded, two other ranks killed and nineteen wounded, whilst twenty-one horses were killed and thirteen wounded.

We must now turn to the 6th Machine Gun Squadron, which was operating with its brigade on the right flank of the advance, i.e., south-east of the Roman road. Lieutenant

Digitized by Google

Neale's subsection, with the 3rd Dragoon Guards, came into action against a retiring German convoy, with good effect; and later it engaged a light field gun, which was silenced, at any rate for the time being. This subsection fired 2,000 rounds during the day.

Another subsection under Lieutenant H. N. Ellis, M.C., went with the Royals and dismounted for action, but the enemy cleared out so quickly that the guns could not get a target. One gun was knocked out by a shell, Lieutenant Ellis and three men, unfortunately, being killed beside it.

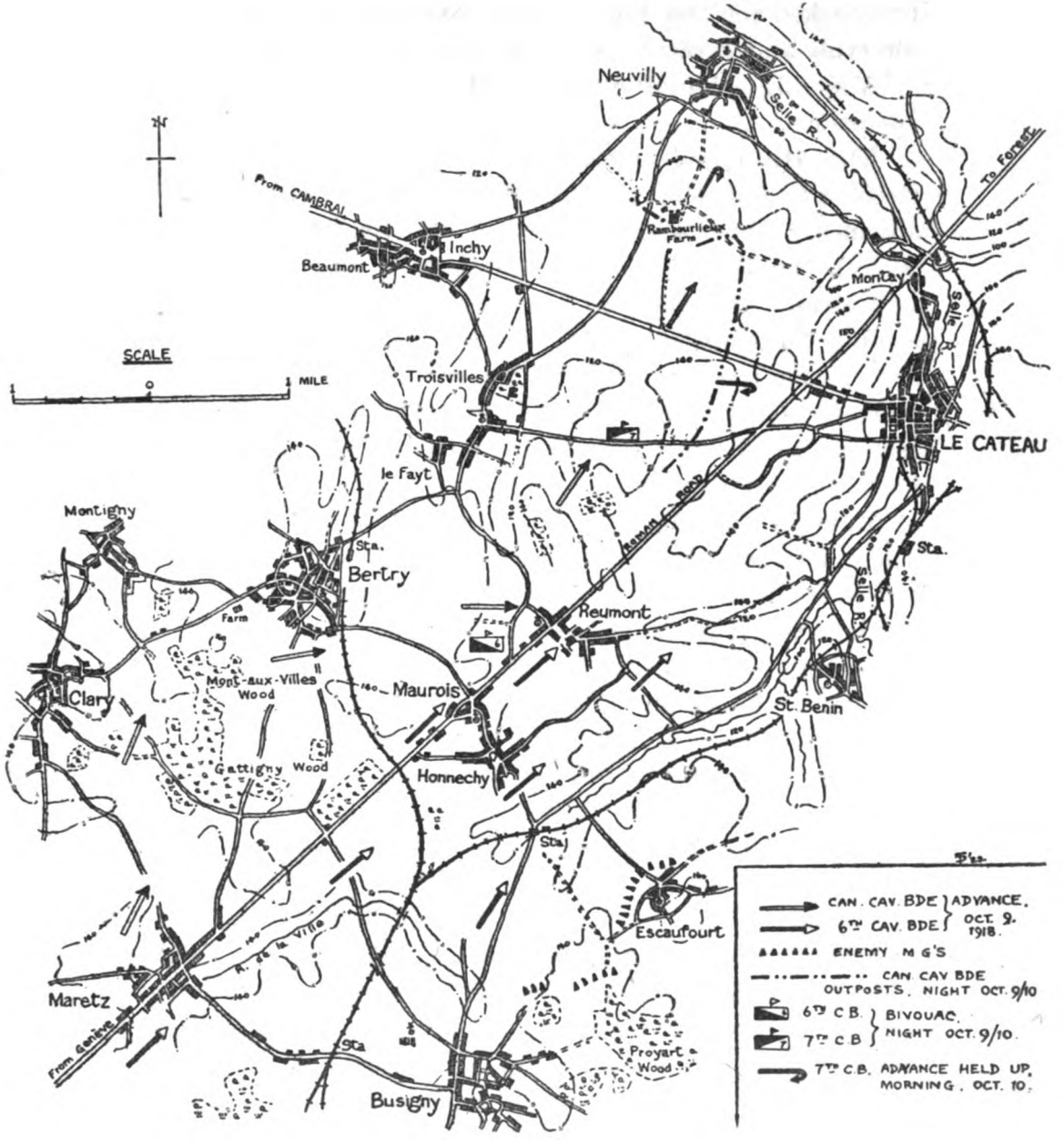
A third subsection under Lieutenant E. W. Younghusband was attached to the 10th Hussars. During the Brigade's advance on Honnechy, several German aeroplanes appeared, flying low, and began to drop bombs, one of which knocked out a troop of the 10th. Lieutenant Younghusband immediately got his guns into action against the aeroplanes, with such good effect that they were driven off.

The remainder of the 6th Machine Gun Squadron (in Brigade reserve) was also bombed and shot at by aeroplanes when moving to the east of Maretz; the Squadron at once got six machine guns to work, and the aeroplanes made off. Later, when moving towards Honnechy, the Squadron suffered several casualties to men and horses from machine gun and shell fire. 'The bursting H.E., the rattle of the machine gun fire both from the ground and from the air, the explosion of the bombs dropped from the aeroplanes—all contributed to make the noise absolutely deafening.'*

At 5 p.m. all the guns were placed in a sunken road near Honnechy, to cover the right flank of the Brigade for a further advance towards Le Cateau. This advance was cancelled, but two guns under Second Lieutenant Elliker opened fire, at a range of 1,100 yards, on enemy machine guns and infantry digging in. About 400 rounds were fired and the Germans were seen to scatter. As darkness closed in, the 6th Squadron

* History of the 6th Cavalry Brigade, by Lieut. J. B. Bickersteth, M.C.

Digitized by Google



Digitized by Google

was withdrawn from the firing line and, with its brigade, bivouacked for the night. The horse lines were shelled at intervals and several casualties were caused.

Major J. C. Humfrey got the M.C. for his share in the day's operations.

The 7th Cavalry Brigade was in Divisional reserve on October 9, and followed behind the other two brigades in their advance. About 4.30 p.m. (when between Maretz and Honnechy), the Brigadier received orders to push on at once to Le Cateau: the Germans were reported by our airmen to be leaving the town in a great hurry, their guns and transport being seen on the roads going north. Accordingly the 7th Dragoons Guards were ordered forward, and were allotted one section 7th Machine Gun Squadron under Lieutenants R. G. Faithfull and F. B. Taylor. Moving round by the west side of Maurois, the regiment got into the village of Reumont, where it was held up by shell fire, including a number of gas shells; it was soon apparent that there would not be enough daylight to get on to Le Cateau, and the 7th Cavalry Brigade accordingly bivouacked for the night in a field N.W. of Reumont. Lieutenant Taylor's subsection was in action in Reumont about 5 p.m., firing about four belts at 700 yards on some German infantry digging themselves in; several were seen to fall.

It was intended to resume the advance on the following morning, October 10, with the 7th Cavalry Brigade leading; accordingly at 6.30 a.m. the leading regiments started off, each with two subsections 7th Machine Gun Squadron. The Inniskillings were directed on Le Cateau and the 7th Dragoon Guards on Neuvilly; they soon gained touch with the enemy, who were evidently fully prepared to make a stand. The Germans had profited by the hours of darkness to bring up reinforcements and guns on to the high ground beyond Le Cateau and the little River Selle, with the result that the cavalry found themselves held up.

Digitized by Google

Lieutenant W. G. Wakefield, M.C., and 2nd Lieutenant C. P. W. Stroud, advancing with the Inniskillings towards the outskirts of Le Cateau, engaged some enemy machine guns in houses, causing them to stop firing ; this was about 8 a.m.

Meanwhile, with the 7th Dragoon Guards above Neuvilly, Lieutenant Faithfull's guns came into action against German transport across the Selle; the range was rather long, but there was reason to believe that considerable damage was done. Faithfull made every effort to get his guns forward, and was subsequently awarded the M.C. As the morning wore on, the hostile shelling got more severe; 2nd Lieutenant W. Greenstreet, M.C., whose subsection was near Rambourlieux Farm, was wounded in the leg, and also lost one of his gun teams by a direct hit, the gun being destroyed, two men killed and four wounded, as well as several horses. One of the killed was Lance-Corporal Bew, a most promising young N.C.O. and perhaps the best 'No. 1' in the 7th Squadron.

It was soon clear that the situation was not one for cavalry, and the 3rd Cavalry Division was, therefore, moved further back out of the shelled area, handing over the line to infantry of the 66th Division who had come up during the morning. The cavalry went into billets in Bertry and other villages, which, till the previous day, had been more than four years in German hands; and, as will be imagined, our men got a great reception from the inhabitants.

The 6th, 7th and Canadian Machine Gun Squadrons were not destined to be in action again.

It has already been mentioned that the 5th Machine Gun Squadron (Major E. S. D. Martin, D.S.O., M.C.) was, with its brigade, attached to the IX Corps,* Fourth Army, during these operations; thus, though not under the Cavalry Corps, it was in practically the same area. The 5th Squadron was split up amongst the regiments of the brigade from October 7 to 17,

* This was at the time the extreme right Corps of the British Army.

Digitized by Google

and remained in close touch with the infantry, though the guns did not get any actual shooting. The Squadron suffered the following casualties :—Lieutenant L. Williams wounded, eight other ranks killed, twelve wounded, and two gassed; twenty-nine horses killed and nineteen wounded. It was certainly very hard luck to lose so many men and horses without getting a chance to hit back.

(*To be concluded*).

Digitized by Google

HISTORICAL NOTES

PATRICK SARSFIELD was an officer in the Life Guards who stood by the dethroned King James in his attempt to recover the crown.

After the defeat of the Boyne in Ireland, King William said to Sarsfield, who was a subordinate General in the Irish Service and had been taken prisoner, 'I am surprised, Sir, that you should be defeated, when your numbers were so superior to ours.' 'Could we change Generals even now,' answered Sarsfield bowing to the King, 'we'd beat our enemies out of the field.' His Majesty felt the compliment, and acknowledged it, by shaking Sarsfield's hand.

Sarsfield fell fighting in the service of Louis XIV.

A Trafalgar and Waterloo Officer.

The Rev. Henry Bellairs entered the Royal Navy at the age of 13 and served on board H.M.S. 'Spartiate' as a midshipman at the battle of Trafalgar, where he was twice wounded, received the medal for the battle and a sword from the Patriotic Fund; he subsequently held a commission in the 15th Hussars and served with that regiment at Quatre Bras and Waterloo. He afterwards entered holy orders and was Rector of Bedworth, Warwickshire, and a Canon of Worcester Cathedral.

The following epitaph is in Clewer Churchyard, Windsor:—

To the memory of George Smith, of Lound, in the County of Nottingham, 10 years a farrier in the Royal Horse Guards, who died June 5, 1811, aged thirty-one.

'My Sledge and Hammer lies declin'd
My bellows too have lost their wind,
My fire's extinct, my forge decay'd
My Vice is in the dust decay'd,
My Coal is spent, my iron gone,
My Nails are drove, my work is done.'

A. L.

Digitized by Google

THE HORSE ARTILLERY IN THE SERVICE OF THE H.E.I.C.

LORD ROBERTS, in his 'Forty-one Years in India,' has told us how his heart was captured, when he first arrived in India, by the magnificent appearance of the Bengal Horse Artillery. The uniform of this branch of the Service was most effective and picturesque. The jacket was much the same as that worn at the present time by the Royal Horse Artillery. The head-dress was a brass Roman helmet covered in front with leopard skin, surmounted by a long red horsehair plume which drooped over the back. White buckskin breeches and long jack boots completed a very handsome kit.

The men were the pick of those recruited by the East India Company.

The Bengal Horse Artillery did yeoman service in various campaigns in India. A troop, consisting of 90 Europeans and four guns, fought to the last during the disastrous retreat from Cabul in 1842.

During the Mutiny, the Horse Artillery greatly distinguished themselves at Delhi and elsewhere.

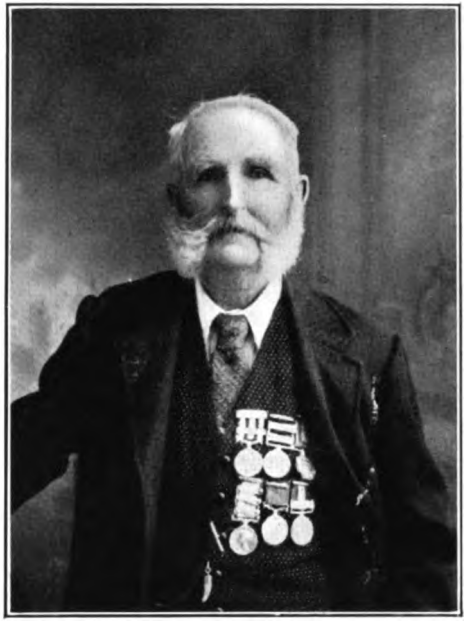
Each troop consisted of four guns, either 6 or 9 pounders, and two 12-pound howitzers.

In the Indian Horse Artillery, a gunner was mounted on every horse in the gun team. None of the members of the troop were mounted separately.

In full dress the uniform of the officers was blue with gold lace, the men wore blue with plain lace. In undress, the officers wore a shell jacket and forage cap.

In the Mutiny, a white uniform with pith helmets was adopted. The white uniform was soon stained khaki colour.

Digitized by Google



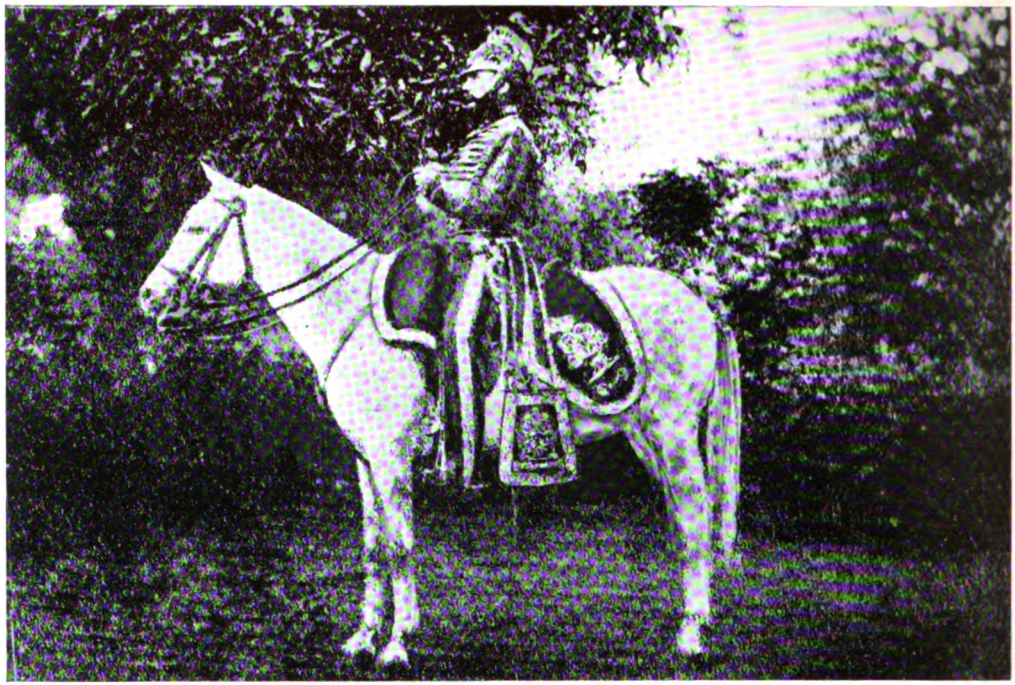
C. M. PRIVATE JAMES HEWITT

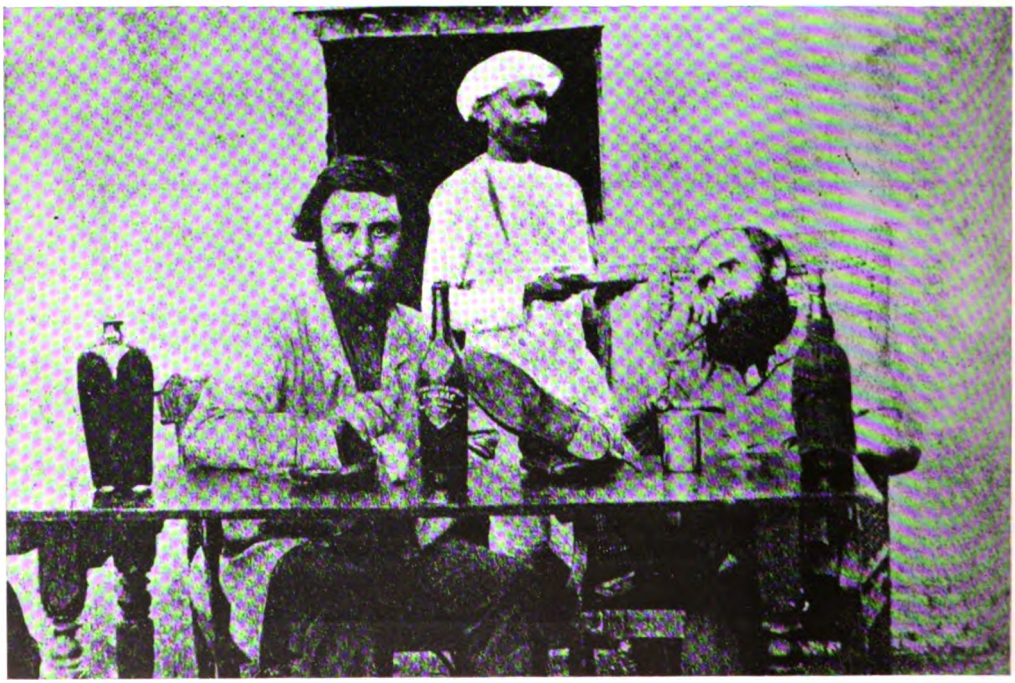
Born in Donegal, November 1831. Both his grandfathers fought at Waterloo, and are buried at Drumholme Parish, Donegal. He enlisted in the 13th Hussars and was transferred to the Inniskilling Dragoons.

He wears the following medals: Crimea, 1854-56. Inniskilling Dragoons, bars for Balaclava, Inkerman, Sebastopol; Turkish medal for Crimea; Central India, 1857-58, Rifle Brigade; Canada, 1866. Rifle Brigade; bar for Fenian Raid; Canada, 1870, bars for Red River, Fenian Raid; Canada North-West, 1885. Saskatchewan in Middleton's Scouts.

He was not in the Heavy Cavalry charge at Balaclava, but in that of the Light Brigade. He bears many honourable scars of sword and bullet wounds, and now lives at Portrush. He is probably the last of "the six hundred" living in Ireland

Digitized by Google





THE HORSE ARTILLERY OF THE HONOURABLE EAST INDIA COMPANY.
On duty and Off duty in 1850.

Digitized by Google

The Bombay Horse Artillery wore a similar uniform to the Bengal branch of the Service. The helmets, however, were black and a puggaree of cheetah skin was worn. Overalls and Wellington boots were worn in lieu of pantaloons and jack boots.

The photographs 'On and off Duty' are from originals taken in the 'fifties,' when the usual beverages of brandy pawnee and Bass's bottled beer attest the hardihood of our grandfathers

Digitized by Google

CAVALRY SCHOOL, FORT RILEY, KANSAS, U.S.A.

SOME details have been received of the Graduation Exercises held at the above school in June, 1922. The following seem to be the most interesting events :—

Junction City Cup.

For prizes presented by the Chamber of Commerce.

This was a race for Officers at night over fifty-six miles of unknown country.

The seventy-three competitors assembled on the parade ground at 9.30 p.m.

The Commandant gave to each a Field Order (including conditions and directions), a map and four orders to be delivered as directed in the field order.

He told them to imagine a state of war, all communication down and urgent need of officers carrying important messages. It was hostile country and no questions were to be asked of the inhabitants. No notes or map other than that issued were to be used.

After giving these instructions, the Commandant said 'go' and the competitors doubled off to their stables.

It was a test of map-reading as well as horsemanship and only four officers failed to report.

The following extract from a newspaper with regard to the horsemastership routine for the horses after completing the ride is interesting :—

> 'There were seventy-seven grooms on duty throughout the night and during the day. When a horse came in he was immediately taken over by a squad of men, who worked on him for two hours or until he was returned to a perfectly normal condition.

Digitized by Google

'At first he was blanketed, his head swabbed and he was walked until he began to cool off. A sponge bath in warm water was next followed by a good rub down. He was again blanketed, his legs bandaged and walked until thoroughly cooled and dry.

'Every five minutes he was allowed a few swallows of warm water. At the end of two hours he was allowed all the warm water he could drink and then given a bran mash.'

In order to win, it was necessary for the horse—by subsequent tests—to show serviceable condition.

There were apparently no cases of sorebacks and the condition of all, except two horses, is described as excellent.

The winner—Capt. Gerhardt on a half-bred horse—completed the course in five hours and three minutes.

Saber Competition.

Some details of this competition are worthy of mention.

There were twenty dummies, No. 1 to be taken at 'charge saber,' Nos. 2 and 19 at 'left front lunge' and the remainder at right or left front as desired.

Five points were allotted for each dummy, making a possible of one hundred.

Each judge marked five dummies and the following are the lines on which he had to allot his points:

Three points will be awarded if the rider pierces the dummy with the point.

The remaining two points are awarded on form only.

Vigour of the attack, maximum extension of the body, arm and blade just before the point pierces the dummy (lunge at the proper moment) will constitute the major portion of form. Other requirements for form are:

(*a*) prompt assuming of the proper guard immediately after piercing each dummy and holding same while riding between dummies;

Digitized by Google

(*b*) Correct rotation of the arm and blade in the lunge and withdrawal.

One minute and a half was allowed to complete the course. If a competitor did not do so, he was disqualified.

For every five seconds under 1·30 down to 1·20, one point was added to his score; for every two seconds under 1·20, one point was added.

Remount Championship.

Competitors rode the remounts which they had trained themselves.

The championship comprised three separate events on three successive days as follows :—

1. Individual and Collective Pistol and Saber tests. Object —to show the handiness and steadiness under arms of a well-trained military horse.

2. Long distance ride (21 miles.) Object—to show the endurance of a military horse in good condition and to show the ability to cross difficult country with obstacles at a fast pace.

3. Individual jumping in a stadium. To be eligible for this event, a total of seventy out of a possible hundred must have been obtained in the first two events. Object—to show that the horse continues to have qualities indispensable to a good military horse and is bold over fences not previously met with.

(No practice over this course was allowed.)

Digitized by Google

RECENT PUBLICATIONS

The Story of the First Life Guards.' By Captain C. W. Bell, Army Educational Corps. George Harrap & Co., London. 2*s.* 6*d.*

A POPULAR sketch in 80 pages of clear print, in which we are reminded of many inspiring deeds. In 1661 of the four Lieutenants in the King's troop one was a Major-General and another a Colonel, while the Quartermaster and four Corporals were all Colonels, so great was the prestige of the Corps. When James II. was being replaced by William III. we are told: 'The cause of James was a lost one from the outset; even Anne, his daughter, deserted him. The Life Guards on the whole remained loyal to their King, until he himself gave the order to resist William no longer. There were, of course, many desertions, for religious feeling ran high at that time. The most notable deserter was Lord Churchill. Though he had been the recipient of many favours from King James and was an officer of his Life Guards, he was one of the first to declare for William.'

The oak-leaf badge commemorates the escape in the oak-tree at Boscobel.

A UNIQUE and important illuminated manuscript book of great beauty and originality, representing the history of the Life Guards, by Alberto Sangorski, was on view at Robson & Co., 7, Hanover Street, for a short time during the summer. The first of sixteen portraits and battle scenes is a miniature of His Majesty as Colonel-in-Chief, the best portrait of this scope which we have seen. This resplendent work is decorated with illuminated initial letters, heraldic designs and decorative

Digitized by Google

borders, which enshrine the story of the glories and valour of the Life Guards; but it is no longer on view for it is the property of a fortunate individual.

'The Story of Romsey Remount Depot.' By Col. Sir H. M. Jessel, Bart., C.M.G., M.P. The Abbey Press, Westminster.

THIS book gives the reader not only an insight into the detailed working of a remount depot, but also into the tremendous growth of our Remount Services during the War.

On August 14, 1914, the British Army possessed 19,000 horses, whilst a year after the commencement of the War there were in France alone no fewer than 232,635 horses and mules serving with the British Army, and we had a still greater number of animals in the United Kingdom being prepared for Oversea Service.

The Story of the Romsey Remount Depot contains many valuable hints as regards organisation and the care of animals, and the section dealing with Finance shows how great economies can be effected by careful attention to detail.

'A Geography of Imperial Defence.' By Vaughan Cornish, D.Sc., F.R.G.S. Sifton Pread & Co. London. 1922.

MR. VAUGHAN CORNISH has written this book with the object of providing a text-book for the Army Promotion Examination in Imperial Military Geography. He begins with a sketch of the climatic and other causes which have affected the distribution of population and racial efficiency, goes on to discuss the development and constitution of the British Empire, and finally deals with the defence of maritime communications of Great Britain itself, of India, and of Britain beyond the seas.

The most interesting chapter is that dealing with the defence of maritime communications, and here the author allows himself to enter into considerable detail as to routes

Digitized by Google

and coaling stations; but the book as a whole must be considered rather as an outline, which leaves the student to fill in the details from other sources, than as a serious attempt to deal with the geographical problems of imperial defence in some 145 pages of large type.

'La Guerra y Su Preparacion,' or War and Preparedness for War, published monthly by the Central Staff, Madrid, is conducted entirely on the voluntary contribution principle, and is therefore free from the tedious penny-a-liner style, full of military and naval information, and breathes the very spirit of the noble chivalry of Spain. In the last three numbers it has a useful digest of the German Field Regulations of September last year as affecting cavalry and aviation, and an account of the air 'raid' from Lisbon to Rio de Janeiro —a brilliant example of the enterprise of the Portuguese race. The machine used was a Fairey seaplane with 360 Rolls-Royce engine. The longest stage in the flight was 1,680 miles, from the south of Cape Verd Isles to the Rocks of St. Peter and St. Paul.

Back numbers of the CAVALRY JOURNAL, from 1906 to 1914, are on sale at 2s. post free.

Annual volumes, bound in white forril cover, with red design and lettering, also covers, price 3s. 6d., ready for binding, are available on application to the CAVALRY JOURNAL, Royal United Service Institution, Whitehall, S.W. 1.

Officers on the active list writing for the Journal may be under no anxiety as to their responsibility. Articles, previous to publication, will be revised by recognized authority.

Digitized by Google

NOTES

Cavalry War Memorial

During the past summer the Committee have been in communication with H.M. Office of Works in respect of various sites in or near Hyde Park, and the position now is that they have the option of two sites :—

(*a*) Inside the Park, west of the Marble Arch, at the centre of the Railing Screen between the two entrance gates;

(*b*) Immediately inside the Park at Stanhope Gate, at the centre bay of the gates.

The architect (Sir John Burnett) and the sculptor (Captain Adrian Jones, M.V.O.) are at work on a design embodying a Mounted St. George and the Dragon, which was the symbol of the Cavalry Corps in France.

The Committee regret the disappointments and delays which have occurred, and hope that, as the sum aimed at has been approximately reached, and as they have a choice of two suitable sites, further progress will not be unduly delayed.

The following moves are likely to take place this trooping season :—

The Carabiniers, 7th Dragoon Guards and 5th Lancers (1 Squadron each), Home to India.
Royal Scots Greys, Egypt to India.
Inniskilling Dragoons (1 Squadron), York to Egypt.
18th Hussars (1 Squadron), Risalpur to Home.
10th (H) Battery, R.F.A., Iraq to Egypt.
1st and 2nd Armoured Car Companies, Iraq to India.

Digitized by Google

A Royalist Sportsman

The following extract from Dugdale's 'Warwickshire' will be of interest to those attending the School of Equitation at Weedon, as Shuckborough is one of the best meets of the Warwickshire:

'As King Charles I. marched to Edgcot near Banbury on October 22, 1642, he saw, hunting in the fields not far from Shuckborough, a very good pack of hounds, upon which it is reported that he fetched a deep sigh, and asked who the Gentleman was who hunted so merrily that morning, when he was going to fight for his crown and dignity. And being told that it was Richard Shuckborough, he was ordered to be called to him, and was by him very graciously received. Upon which Shuckborough immediately went home, armed all his tenants, and the next day attended him in the field, was present at the battle of Edghill, and was knighted on the field by His Majesty.'

Regimental Marches

Some of the finest martial airs will be heard no more at the head of the regiments which are being amalgamated with senior units, but it is to be hoped that they will be duly preserved and a careful record made of the facts connected with their composition and adoption.

A most inspiring march-past is that of the Queen's Bays, happily not threatened with supersession, which was composed by their Bandmaster Charles Cousins, who was appointed by the Commander-in-Chief, H.R.H. the Duke of Cambridge, to be the first of the military directors of the Kneller Hall School of Music, which post he occupied from 1878 till his death in 1890, when nearly seventy years old. When the Queen's Bays were in Egypt, 27 years ago, the Sirdar of the Egyptian Army (afterwards Lord Kitchener) wished to obtain the march for the Egyptian Cavalry, but the Commanding Officer objected to the proposal, and although Lieutenant

Digitized by Google

Franklin, director of music to the Khedive, was ordered to write down the piece, it was never played by an Egyptian band.

The Late Lord Wolseley

We are glad to learn that Captain Sir George Arthur, late 2nd Life Guards, is engaged upon the great work of writing a life of Field-Marshal Lord Wolseley. The Field-Marshal was very fond of classical quotations and one of his favourites was taken from Seneca :—

'Plura sunt quae nos terrent, quam quae premunt;
Et saepius opinione quam re laboramus.'

'There are more things to alarm than to afflict us,
And we suffer much oftener from apprehension than in reality.'

The R.U.S.I. Whitehall

The Committee of the Cavalry Journal desire to draw the attention of the serving officers of the British Cavalry to the very small support which is now given to the Royal United Service Institution by them.

At the present time there are only 51 British Cavalry Officers members, and during the present year only five have joined the Institution.

The Institution has opened its hospitable doors for the publication of the Cavalry Journal, and for the compilation of Cavalry Records or information; it is hoped, therefore, that more support will be forthcoming from serving officers of the British Cavalry.

This does not apply to officers of the Indian Cavalry, who are excellent supporters of this Institution.

The Equitation School

The sequel to the reduction of Cavalry regiments is to be found in the Amalgamation of the Cavalry School and the

Digitized by Google

Royal Artillery Riding Establishment under the title of The Equitation School, now domiciled at Weedon. The School consists of a Headquarters, a Cavalry Wing and an Artillery Wing. Its primary object is to produce instructors in Equitation in all its aspects for all mounted branches of the Army, and it is hoped that a uniform system of training will be gradually established throughout all mounted services, and that the Senior Officers' courses will give an opportunity not only for studying the methods employed at the School, but also for the discussion of problems arising out of the development of armaments in the late war, in which officers of the various arms of the Service can take part.

The Cavalry need feel no fear that they will suffer from the change, except by the loss of the excellent riding school and training grounds at Netheravon, as the whole of the Instructional Staff has moved *en bloc* to form the Cavalry Wing at Weedon, while the loss of the training facilities is to some extent compensated for by the opportunity of hunting in a first class country. The Machine Gun School has taken over the old quarters of the Cavalry School at Netheravon.

Nobel Industries, Limited, whose name is mentioned in the article dealing with the Stream-Line bullet, is, of course, the Company which was formed after the War by the amalgamation of Nobel's Explosives (Glasgow), Kynoch, Eley, Curtis's and Harvey and other leading firms manufacturing Explosives, Small Arms and Sporting Ammunition.

Digitized by Google

SPORTING NOTES

We received a reminder to-day from the Hon. Managing Editor to say that the printers were clamouring for the Sporting Notes for the JOURNAL. As we had nearly forgotten all about them and had not realised how time flies we were not pleased with the reminder. What with shooting, racing and various Committees to attend, a farm to run, a kennel of Labrador Retrievers and one of the local Retriever Trials to manage, it is a busy time, and to sit down to one's desk on a fine day to write Sporting Notes is rather trying. Any way, it has to be done; so here goes. We hope our readers will not be too critical.

Our sub-Sporting Editors abroad have not been kind so far, and have sent in very little sporting news. What we like is to get a long account of some thing from some one that will fill many pages of the JOURNAL and interest the readers. We are given so many pages of the JOURNAL which have to be filled and if any one else will fill them for us we take off our hat to him with many thanks.

People at home like to hear about the Sport of their old Regiments. When they were in the regiment they took part in all the sport, and still like to hear that the old regiment is carrying on the old traditions. We speak for the retired officers, who possibly only meet the present officers once a year at the Regimental dinner; but any officer who has once served in a Regiment always takes a great interest in everything connected with the old regiment. This is *esprit de corps*, which has been the backbone of the British Army, and which the Authorities, possibly owing to the Politicians and the Treasury, have done much to ruin.

Digitized by Google

Present officers live in the days of, so called, economy and have to put up with much that is disagreeable. They have to put a good face to it and realise that beggars cannot be choosers, and, although the individual officer may have a bad time and think he is very hardly treated, they have to realise that the Authorities are doing their best in the best of all worlds.

Cavalry, the *Arme blanche*, the finest service in the world, because we had to sit in trenches for a long time in the War, is under a cloud and certain people say they are no good and too expensive to keep up. They ignore what was done in Palestine and Mesopotamia. They do not grasp that in all probability there will never be another war of trenches, and that Cavalry will be as important as ever. Our big Generals who have served in the Cavalry are still convinced of the value of Cavalry; but men who know nothing about it have, what the Tommy used to call a 'down on it,' and would like to see the whole lot scrapped. My readers will say 'What the devil has this got to do with Sporting Notes?' Our reply is: 'No Cavalry, very few Sporting Notes.'

Racing

One of the Sunday papers has been publishing some most interesting articles written by three of our most famous amateur trainers—if amateur is the correct name for them—the Hon. George Lambton, Mr. Persse and Mr. P. P. Gilpin, late 5th Lancers.

Mr. Lambton was very interesting on the subject of doping horses. This practice is no longer carried on in England, but in France we are sorry to see that two trainers were lately convicted of doping horses and their licence to train withdrawn. There is no doubt that a doped horse will win races when, without a dope, he will never get his head in front. Doping ruins the constitution of horses and, it is said, makes them useless at the stud.

Mr. Persse, the trainer of The Tetrarch, gives an account

Digitized by Google

of how he tried this horse and we do not think any two-year-old ever won better trials :—

TRIALS, 1913.

April 5th, 1913. Five furlongs.

1.	THE TETRARCH (2 yrs.), 8st. 7lb.	Donoghue.
2.	CAPTAIN SYMONS (aged), 8st. 7lb.	—
3.	SOUTH PARADE (2 yrs.), 7st. 7lb.	—
4.	LILY BAKER (3 yrs.), 7st. 7lb.	—

Won, pulling up in a canter.

April 12th. Five furlongs.

1.	THE TETRARCH (2 yrs.), 9st.	Donoghue.
2.	CAPTAIN SYMONS (aged), 8st.	—
3.	LAND OF SONG (2 yrs.), 7st. 7lb.	—
4.	LLANGILDA (2 yrs.), 7st.	—

Won in a canter.

June 14th. Five furlongs.

1.	THE TETRARCH (2 yrs.), 8st. 10lb.	Donoghue.
2.	NORAMAC (6 yrs.), 8st.	—
3.	HALLATON (aged), 8st.	—

Won, easing up by ten lengths.

RACES WON.

Maiden Plate, Newmarket	£196
Woodcote Stakes, Epsom	930
Coventry Stakes, Ascot	1,890
National Breeders' Stakes, Sandown	4,357
Rouse Memorial Stakes, Goodwood	1,195
Breeders' Foal Plate, Derby	1,085
Champagne Stakes, Doncaster	1,730
Total	£11,383

All his races were won in a canter, except one, when he lost lengths at the start. It was a great pity the horse took to hitting himself and could not run as a three-year-old. He has been a great success at the stud and has already produced two winners of the St. Leger. His owner was in the 7th Hussars.

A probably unprecedented incident marked the racing at the Ostend Meeting, when the first three races resulted in dead-heats.

THE NATIONAL STUD

The National Stud, which, under the direction of Capt. J. H. Greer, has been such a success, is fairly excelling itself this year, so much so that the horses bred there look like

Digitized by Google

surpassing, not only the Stud's own record, but the best record so far marked up by those bred at any other. A friend of mine who is learned in statistical results tells me that Mr. Musker's establishment in England holds the record for number of winners, and races won by them, in any one season, viz., 22 winners of 38½ races. So far this year 21 horses bred at the National Stud have accounted for 33 races, and, with nearly two months' racing to be carried through, the probability is that a noteworthy new record is about to be achieved by the famous co. Kildare establishment.

Sceptre

A great commotion was caused in Racing circles when it was announced that this famous mare at the age of nineteen had been sold to go abroad. This sale has now been cancelled and the mare will end her days in England.

The St. Leger

This race was a very open one, owing to the chief favourites going wrong in their preparation for the race. This resulted in the largest field that has run for nearly ninety years. Lord Lonsdale and Sir A. Bailey were doubly represented, and it was curious to see their second strings come out top, Lord Lonsdale winning and Sir A. Bailey being third. This is another triumph for the National Stud, as Royal Lancer was bred there and leased to Lord Lonsdale for his racing career. The Stud take a third of the stakes, and the horse, as a St. Leger winner, will be very valuable when he retires to the stud. This is the second horse bred at Tully and leased for racing which has won a Classic Race. The late King Edward leased Minaru and won the Derby with him. Now, as taxpayers, we may all say we have had a share in a horse that has won a classic race. The crack French horse 'Ramus' was left at the post. It was not the starter's fault, as the horse refused to move when the tapes went up, and so lost many lengths.

Digitized by Google

He finished seventh, and good judges think he would have won with an equal start.

THE ST. LEGER STAKES OF 50 sovs each, with 4,000 sovs added, breeder of winner 500 sovs, owner of second 400 sovs, owner of third 200 sovs. About one mile 6 furlongs and 132 yards.

ROYAL LANCER, b c by Spearmint—Royal Favour (Lord Lonsdale) 9 st
R. Jones 1
SILURIAN, br c by Swynford—Glacier (Lord Derby), 9 st.....E. Gardner 2
CEYLONESE, br c by Willonyx—Excelita (Sir A. Bailey), 9 st.....F. Bullock 3

24 ran.

The Doncaster Yearling Sales

The Sledmere yearlings, as usual, fetched good prices. Seventeen averaged 2,200 guineas. Mr. G. Lambton gave 9,100 guineas for one presumably for H.H. the Aga Khan.

Hunting

Some interesting letters have appeared in the papers lately about the manner in which some hunts carry out their cub-hunting. Some people complain that the covert is surrounded and if a cub breaks he is headed back until killed by the hounds. If he goes to ground he is dug out. They say a cub that is bold enough to take to the open ought to be left to show sport later on and the ones that are not brave enough to make a dash ought to be the ones that are killed. There is a lot in this and no Englishman likes to see an animal not given a fair chance. On the other hand young hounds have to be educated; they have to have blood to make them keen. In September and early October many countries are unrideable. If the young hounds got away on the line of a fox and the Hunt servants cannot keep with them they may get into all manner of mischief and learn to do things it would be very difficult to stop them doing later. Another reason for the rather unsporting methods of killing cubs that are sometimes adopted is that there are too many cubs in the country and if they are not killed early they will do a lot of damage and the poultry bills will go up and the non-hunting fraternity will write to the papers and complain of the damage

Digitized by Google

done. The anti-sport people will immediately write to their Member of Parliament and demand a Bill to abolish fox hunting. We wonder what the results to England would be if hunting was done away with! In the first place, many rich people who now stay in England all winter for the hunting would go abroad and spend the money there, instead of in England. All the money that is brought and circulated in a hunting country would go elsewhere and farmers, tradesmen and other people would find a great difference. Many of the big houses would be shut and practically all the hunting boxes unlet. The local hotel people would find their rooms unlet, usually occupied by people down for the hunting season. The amount of money taken out of the country would amount to a big sum. Let us hope that hunting, the Sport of Kings, will always flourish in England.

Last, but not least, far fewer light horses would be bred in the country, and our Remount Department would find it still more difficult to buy suitable remounts for that much-abused branch of the Army, the Cavalry.

Most Hunts that we have hunted with do things in a sporting way unless there are serious reasons to do otherwise. A few of the cubs which wished to go away were allowed to do so. A Huntsman usually knows the number of cubs in a litter and a few of them would be held up to educate the young hounds.

Polo

The London Polo season was fairly successful and would have been more so if it had not been for several of the leading players having accidents which kept them out of the game for varying periods. In the last Journal we stated that the Argentine team was very useful. Their best team, Mr. Miles, Mr. Nelson, Mr. D. Miles and Mr. Lacey, were never beaten and won some of the most important Tournaments. We wish them luck in America, where they have now gone.

The Prince of Wales, the Duke of York and Prince Henry

Digitized by Google

have played a lot of Polo this season and are improving in form in every match they play in. The Prince of Wales in his Indian tour played Polo on forty-eight different days, which shows his keenness for the game. He ran a Staff team, which was successful on several occasions.

From the Cavalry point of view the Regimental Tournament was the most important event of the season. Only eleven entries were received and the 17th Lancers again won the Cup. They have had extraordinary luck to still be able to put their pre-war team in the field. Most regiments lost some of their best players during the war. A team that has played together for so many years is hard to beat until anno domini steps in to assist other younger teams.

Regimental Polo Tournament

Royal Artillery (Woolwich)	beat	*1st Life Guards.*
1. Mr. G. W. Heath.		1. Mr. W. Filmer Sankey.
2. Capt. F. Barry.		2. Marquess of Blandford.
3. Lt.-Col. H. O. Hutchinson.		3. Capt. Lord Somers.
Bk. Lt.-Col. E. Corbould-Warren.		Bk. Major L. H. Hardy.
6 goals.		4 goals.

The tie between the 17th and the 13th came off at Aldershot on June 21. The former won with the same team that had won the Inter-Regimental in 1920 and 1921.

17th Lancers	beat	*13th Hussars.*
1. Lt.-Col. T. P. Melvill.		1. Mr. W. W. N. Davies.
2. Capt. H. B. Turnor.		2. Lt.-Col. E. F. Twist.
3. Major V. N. Lockett.		3. Lt.-Col. R. H. Osborne.
Bk. Capt. D. C. Boles.		Bk. Capt. S. V. Kennedy.
13 goals.		2 goals.

In a match at Tidworth, where both regiments are stationed, the 15th beat the 12th by eight goals to one, Col. Bingham and Capt. Leaf playing extremely well for the winners. The two regiments did not take part in the tournament last year, as they were in Ireland.

15th Hussars	beat	*12th Lancers.*
1. Mr. J. G. Leaf.		1. Major C. E. Bryant.
2. Capt. N. W. Leaf.		2. Mr. R. L. McCreery.
3. Mr. G. V. Douglas.		3. Mr. J. N. Bailey.
Bk. Lt.-Col. the Hon. J. D. Y. Bingham.		Bk. Major A. B. Reynolds.
8 goals.		1 goal.

Digitized by Google

Royal Dragoons	beat	*Royal Horse Guards.*
1. Lt.-Col. H. A. Tomkinson.		1. Mr. F. G. W. Jackson.
2. Major E. W. T. Miles.		2. Mr. H. Abel Smith.
3. Capt. C. G. W. Swire.		3. Capt. Viscount Molyneux.
Bk. Mr. P. L. Wilson.		Bk. Mr. D. B. Daly.
7 goals.		2 goals.

King's Dragoon Guards a bye.

Second Ties.

2nd Life Guards.—1. Capt. D. E. Wallace. 2. Lt.-Col. H. C. S. Ashton. 3. Lt.-Col. F. Penn. Bk. Capt. K. R. Palmer.

beat

Royal Artillery 7—3 goals.

15th Hussars	beat	*Royal Dragoons.*
4 goals.		3 goals.

17th Lancers and King's Dragoon Guards byes.

Semi-Final Round.

17th Lancers	beat	*1st King's Dragoon Guards.*
		1. Major H. M. Fleming.
		2. Capt. T. H. Gladstone.
		3. Capt. H. S. Hatfield.
		Bk. Mr. R. L. Greenshields.
8 goals.		3 goals.

The King's Dragoon Guards put up an excellent struggle against their powerful opponents, who qualified for the final by a decisive margin, but were by no means runaway winners.

15th Hussars	beat	*2nd Life Guards.*
6 goals.		2 goals.

The weather was wet for this semi-final at Hurlingham on July 4. Colonel Bingham was in fine form and the Hussars always had the best of the game. Colonel Ashton did good work for the Life Guards and scored two goals.

Final.

17th Lancers	beat	*15th Lussars.*
8 goals.		5 goals.

The ground when this match was played cut up very badly. The 17th were naturally the favourite, but the 15th put up a very good fight and Colonel Bingham played a very fine game. He was beautifully mounted and could hold his own against any of the other ponies. Some of his ponies were sold at Tattersall's shortly after and fetched big prices.

Digitized by Google

It was a good game and if the same teams compete next year equally well mounted we shall back the 15th to win.

Winners of the Regimental Cup.

1878. *5th Lancers*: Mr. Julian Spicer, Mr. G. R. Tufton, Mr. A. C. Little, Mr. L. H. Jones, and Captain R. St. Lyn Moore.
1879. *5th Lancers*: Captain E. Paley, Captain J. S. Benyon, Mr. Julian Spicer, Mr. A. Cosmo Little, and Mr. L. Heywood Jones.
1880. *16th Lancers*: Mr. H. L. Howard, Captain J. M. Babington, Mr. F. G. Blair, Mr. J. G. A. Baird, and Mr. W. H. Wyndham-Quin.
1881. *16th Lancers*: Captain J. M. Babington, Mr. J. G. A. Baird, Mr. W. H. Wyndham-Quin, and Mr. W. Byron Browne.
1882. *5th Lancers*: Mr. A. Cosmo Little, Mr. L. Heywood Jones, Captain G. R. Tufton, and Captain Julian Spicer.
1883. *7th Hussars*: The Hon. R. T. Lawley, Mr. T. Hone, Major J. L. Hunt, and Captain Roper.
1884. *7th Hussars*: The Hon. R. T. Lawley, Mr. T. Hone, Major J. L. Hunt, and Captain Roper.
1885. *7th Hussars*: Major J. L. Hunt, Captain Roper, Mr. T. Hone, and Mr. Douglas Haig.
1886. *7th Hussars*: Captain T. Hone, Mr. G. A. L. Carew, Mr. Douglas Haig, and Captain the Hon. R. T. Lawley.
1887. *5th Lancers*: Captain L. Heywood Jones, Major A. Cosmo Little, Mr. B. St. J. Mundy, and Captain Julian Spicer.
1888. *10th Hussars*: Mr. A. Hughes-Onslow, Mr. E. W. Baird, Captain Greenwood, and Captain the Hon. W. T. Allsopp.
1889. *9th Lancers*: Captain W. K. Jenner, Captain Malcolm O. Little, Captain F. F. Colvin, and Captain J. H. Lamont.
1890. *9th Lancers*: Captain F. F. Colvin, Captain W. K. Jenner, Captain Malcolm O. Little, and Captain J. H. Lamont.
1891. *9th Lancers*: Captain W. K. Jenner, Captain Hon. C. H. C. Willoughby, Captain F. F. Colvin, and Major J. H. Lamont.
1892. *13th Hussars*: Captain E. W. N. Pedder, Mr. D. F. Robertson-Aikman, Mr. F. H. Wise, and Captain K. MacLaren.
1893. *10th Hussars*: Lord G. Montagu-Douglas-Scott, W. Captain C. T. McM. Kavanagh, Lord W. A. C. Bentinck, and the Hon. T. W. Brand.
1894. *13th Hussars*: Captain E. W. N. Pedder, Mr. J. F. Church, Mr. F. H. Wise, and Captain K. MacLaren.
1895. *13th Hussars*: Captain E. W. N. Pedder, Mr. J. F. Church, Mr. F. H. Wise, and Captain K. MacLaren.
1896. *9th Lancers*: Mr. D. G. M. Campbell, Mr. G. P. Ellison, Captain W. K. Jenner, and Lord Charles C. Bentinck.
1897. *6th Inniskilling Dragoons*: Mr. F. A. B. Fryer, Mr. G. K. Ansell, Mr. Neil W. Haig, and Major M. F. Rimington.
1898. *6th Inniskilling Dragoons*: Mr. C. H. Higgin, Mr. G. K. Ansell, Mr. Neil W. Haig, and Major M. F. Rimington.
1899. *7th Hussars*: Mr. John Vaughan, Captain the Hon. J. G. H. Beresford, Major G. A. L. Carew, and Major R. M. Poore.
1900, 1901, 1902. No tournament owing to the war in South Africa.
1903. *17th Lancers*: Captain R. J. W. Carden, Major W. A. Tilney, Mr. A. F. Fletcher, and Colonel Douglas Haig.
1904. *17th Lancers*: Captain R. J. W. Carden, Major W. A. Tilney, Mr. A. F. Fletcher, and Lieut.-Col. B. P. Portal.
1905. *6th Inniskilling Dragoons*: Captain T. G. Gibson. Major G. K. Ansell, Captain Ewing Paterson, and Major Neil W. Haig.

Digitized by Google

1906. *20th Hussars*: Mr. J. S. Cawley, Mr. C. McG. Dunbar, Captain H. C. Hessey, and Mr. B. A. P. Schreiber.
1907. *20th Hussars*: Mr. J. S. Cawley, Mr. B. A. P. Schreiber, Captain H. C. Hessey, and Captain H. R. Lee.
1908. *11th Hussars*: Mr. F. H. Sutton, Captain P. D. Fitzgerald, Mr. M. L. Lakin, and Captain C. L. Rome.
1909. *11th Hussars*: Major T. T. Pitman, Major P. D. Fitzgerald, Captain M. L. Lakin, and Captain F. H. Sutton.
1910. *Royal Horse Guards*: Captain G. V. S. Bowlby, Captain Lord Alastair Innes-Ker, Captain H. E. Brassey, and Mr. J. F. Harrison.
1911. *4th Dragoon Guards*: Captain A. Carton de Wiart, Captain C. B. Hornby, Major B. Mathew-Lannowe, and Captain C. F. Hunter.
1912. *Royal Horse Guards*: Captain G. V. S. Bowlby, Captain Lord Alastair Innes-Ker, Captain H. E. Brassey, and Captain J. F. Harrison.
1913. *15th Hussars*: Mr. B. Osborne, Captain the Hon. D. J. Y. Bingham, Captain F. W. Barrett, and Mr. M. A. Muir.
1914. *12th Lancers*: Mr. E. H. Leatham, Captain T. R. Badger, Mr. B. G. Nicholas, and Mr. R. S. W. R. Wyndham-Quin.
1915, 1916, 1917, 1918. No tournament owing to the war.
1919. No tournament, the MILITARY CUP being substituted. Winners: *Northamptonshire Yeomanry*: Lord Stalbridge, Lieut.-Col. Sir C. Lowther, Major P. W. Nickalls, and Captain J. G. Lowther.
1920 and 1921. *17th Lancers*: Lieut.-Col. T. P. Melvill, Captain H. B. Turner, Major V. N. Lockett, and Captain D. C. Boles.

Subalterns' Cup.

At Ranelagh in the opening ties on July 17th the 12th Lancers proved too strong for the King's Dragoon Guards:—

12th Lancers	beat	*1st King's Dragoon Guards.*
1. Mr. G. B. Clifton-Brown.		1. Mr. J. F. Pain.
2. Mr. W. S. McCreery.		2. Mr. L. G. L. Peacocke.
3. Mr. R. L. McCreery.		3. Mr. R. L. Greenshields.
Bk. Mr. J. N. Bailey.		Bk. Mr. J. L. Waggett.
9 goals.		1 goal.
Royal Horse Guards	beat	*Royal Artillery.*
1. Mr. F. G. Ward-Jackson.		1. Mr. G. W. Heath.
2. Mr. H. A. Smith.		2. Mr. R. A. Wirley-Birch.
3. Marquis of Worcester.		3. Mr. H. E. Morrison.
Bk. Mr. D. B. Daly.		Bk. Mr. J. C. Campbell.
8 goals.		3 goals.
1st Life Guards	beat	*13th Hussars.*
1. Mr. J. A. G. Emmet.		1. Mr. D. A. Stirling.
2. Marquis of Blandford.		2. Mr. J. H. Hirsch.
3. Mr. W. Filmer-Sankey.		3. Mr. W. W. N. Davies.
Bk. Mr. R. C. H. Jenkinson.		Bk. Mr. J. F. Norris.
5 goals.		3 goals.

Second Round.

15th Hussars	beat	*17th Lancers.*
1. Mr. J. G. Leaf.		1. Mr. A. F. W. Gossage.
2. Mr. W. R. N. Hurde.		2. Mr. R. E. B. Cooke.
3. Mr. G. V. Douglas.		3. Mr. H. W. Forester.
Bk. Mr. C. Cockayne Frith.		Bk. Mr. T. E. Arnott.
6 goals.		2 goals.

Digitized by Google

1st Life Guards	beat	*Royal Dragoons.*
		1. Mr. R. C. Kidd. 2. Mr. G. W. Farrand. 3. Mr. P. L. Wilson. Bk. Mr. A. C. Casey.
9 goals.		2 goals.

Semi-Finals.

12th Lancers	beat	*Royal Horse Guards.*
5 goals.		3 goals.
15th Hussars	beat	*1st Life Guards.*
5 goals.		1 goal.

In this tie the Hussars were able to administer a decisive beating to last year's winners of the cup. The Life Guards were the first to score, very soon after the initial throw-in. Subsequently, however, they were unable once to beat the Hussars' defence.

Final.

15th Hussars	beat	*12th Lancers.*
5 goals.		4 goals.

These teams were very equally matched and produced a good and exciting game. The match was rather interfered with by rain and the ground cut up badly. It was anybody's game till the last, when the Hussars won by one goal. Major-General Sir H. W. Hodgson presented the Cups.

Previous Winners of the Subaltern's Cup.

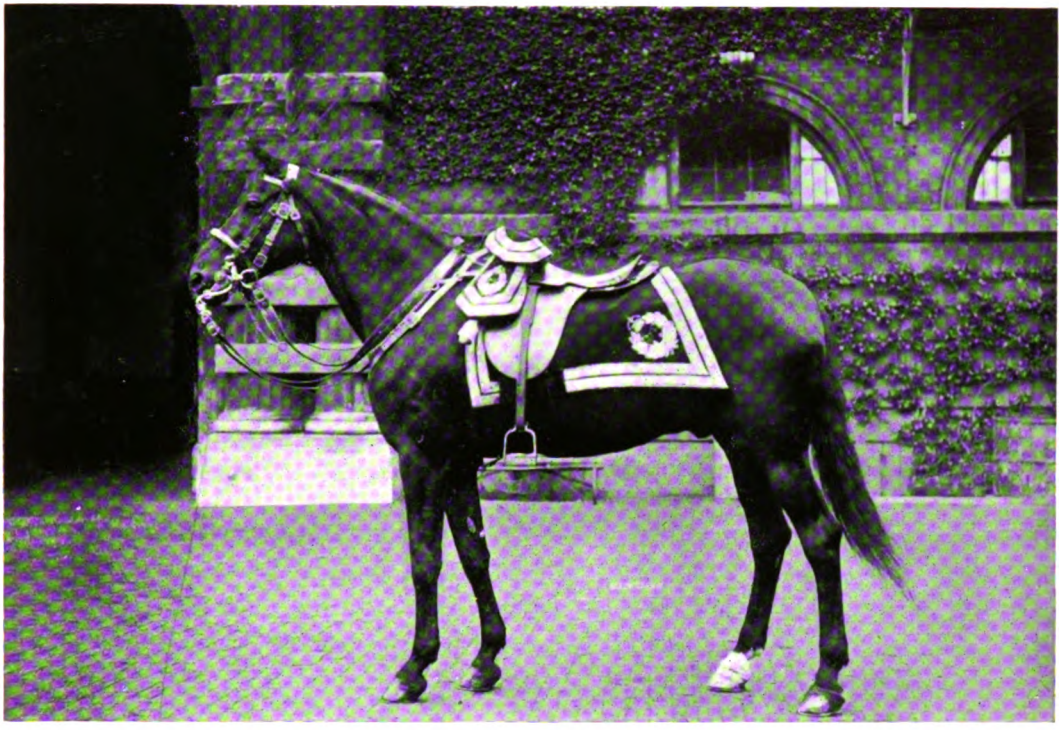
1896.	9th Lancers.	1909.	1st Life Guards.
1897.	Royal Horse Guards.	1910.	7th Hussars.
1898.	Royal Horse Guards.	1911.	9th Lancers.
1899.	7th Hussars.	1912.	9th Lancers.
1904.	2nd Life Guards.	1913.	12th Lancers.
1905.	Royal Horse Guards.	1914.	12th Lancers.
1906.	1st Life Guards.	1919.	8th Hussars.
1907.	1st Life Guards.	1920.	13th Hussars.
1908.	21st Lancers.	1921.	1st Life Guards.

We publish in this JOURNAL two photographs of two of H.M. the King's Chargers.

'Delhi' is a brown gelding, 18 years old, 16 hands high, and is used as a charger by His Majesty the King. He was bought in India and bred in Australia, but we have no particulars respecting his pedigree.

'Erskine' is an aged dark bay gelding. He was presented to the King by the people of South Australia, and the

Digitized by Google



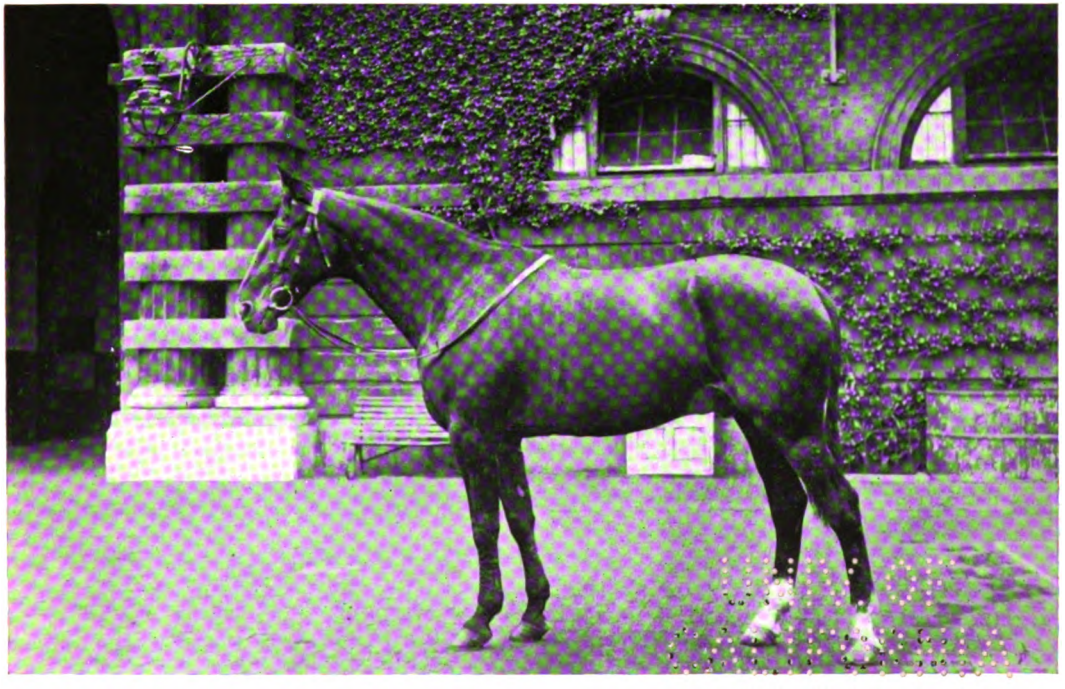


Photo : W. A. Rouch, 161, Strand.

HIS MAJESTY THE KING'S CHARGERS DELHI AND ERSKINE.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

presentation was made by the Hon. Sir Edward Lucas, the Agent-General for South Australia, in the grounds of Buckingham Palace on June 2 last. He was bred by Mr. R. J. Dennis of Crystal Brook. He is by Lord Collingwood out of a blood mare.

International Horse Show, 1922

The show was held at Olympia, June 17–24. It is gratifying to learn that it was sufficiently successful to warrant a continuance in 1923.

There was a good show of all grades of horses, but these notes refer to Military and Jumping classes only.

The Heavy and Light Weight Charger Cups were won respectively by Cavalry School Job (winner also in 1921) and Lieut. Baron Sirtema van Grovestius (Dutch Hussars) with Jopie Slim. There was a good entry for the officers' horses exceeding 15·2 hands, but only a poor entry for those not exceeding that height. It is thought that a better entry would be forthcoming for the latter class if it was specified in the conditions what class of animal should be shown.

The following were the prizewinners in the Jumping Competitions :—

No. 1, *Sect. A.*—Capt. Alvozi with Ombrello, Major Caffarati with Sperone, Lieut. Lequio with Trebecco.

No. 1, *Sect. B.*—Cavalry School with Broncho.

No. 1, *Sect. C.*—Capt. Challan Belval with Migou.

No. 2, *Sect. A.*—Sir R. A. Gallenga Stuart with Trésor, Capt. Count Bettoni with Scoiattolo.

No. 1, *Sect. B.*—Lieut. Clavé with Le Trouvère.

No. 2, *Sect. C.*—Capt. Challan Belval with Migou, Mr. F. Allison with Temptress.

No. 3, *Sect. A.*—Mr. T. Makin with Springbok.

No. 3, *Sect. B.*—Riding Establishment R.H.A. with War Baby, Lieut. Count di Santa Rosa with Queen II.

Canadian Cup.—Lieut. Lequio with Trebecco.

Prince of Wales Cup.—1st Britain, 2nd Belgium, 3rd France.

King George V. Cup.—1st Major Count Antonelli with Bluff, 2nd Lieut. Clavé with Affronteur, 3rd Major Caffarati with Sperone, and Lieut. Lequio with Trebecco.

Digitized by Google

Connaught Cup.—1st Major C. T. Walwyn with Mrs. Green, 2nd Cavalry School with Broncho, 3rd Lieut. H. G. Morrison with Bobalink.

Champion Cup.—1st Capt. Count Bettoni with Scoiattol, 2nd Capt. Cacciandra with Sempre Cosi, 3rd Cavalry School with Broncho, Lieut. H. G. Morrison with Corintho and Lieut. Lequio with Fortunello.

High Jump.—1st Mr. A. E. Merrett with Comrade, 2nd Mr. T. Glencross with Thumbs Up, 3rd Mr. E. Adcock with Novice.

It may be of interest to see the winners of the two chief International jumping cups :—

King George V. Cup.

1911	Russia	Capt. Dimitri d'Exe	with	Piccolo.
1912	Belgium	Lieut. Delvoie	,,	Murat.
1913	France	Lieut. Baron de Meslon	,,	Amazone.
1914	,,	,, ,,	,,	,,
1920	,,	Capt. Laissardière	,,	Dignite.
1921	Britain	Lieut.-Col. Geoffrey Brooke	,,	Combined Training.
1922	Italy	Major Count Antonelli	,,	Bluff.

King Edward VII. Cup.

1909	France.	1912	Russia.	
1910	Belgium.	1913	,,	
1911	France.	1914	,,	(Won outright).

The team that won this cup outright was composed of officers belonging to the Dowager Empress of Russia's Guards Regiment. During the latter part of the Great War we saw a good deal of an officer who belonged to this famous regiment. He told me he was one of the team selected to represent the regiment at Olympia in 1915. He lost all his money and estates owing to the revolution, but we believe what he regretted most was not being able to jump at Olympia as one of the regimental team in 1915. The Cup, he said, the regiment looked upon as their most valuable possession. It has been hidden with most of the regimental plate, and he still hopes to see it again on the sideboard in the regimental mess. The flag of the regiment is also in safe keeping, and, according to Russian Army traditions, as long as the flag is safe the regiment is bound to come into its own again. We sincerely hope this may happen at no distant date.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Prince of Wales Cup.

1920	Sweden.			
1921	Britain	Lieut.-Col. Geoffrey Brooke	with	Combined Training.
		Lieut.-Col. Malise Graham	„	Broncho.
		Lieut. H. G. Morrison	„	Corintho.
1922	„	Lieut.-Col. J. H. Gibbon	„	Sirdar.
		Lieut.-Col. Malise Graham	„	Broncho.
		Major C. T. Walwyn	„	Mrs. Green.

Shooting and Gundogs

We are pleased to see that the Board of Agriculture reported to the Kennel Club the case of the two ladies who were fined at Southampton for trying to smuggle a dog into England, and so avoid the quarantine regulation, not caring whether they brought more rabies into England at the same time. The Kennel Club went into the case, with the result that they have both been 'warned off,' which means that they cannot show dogs at shows or run at Field Trials. This in the dog world is the same as being warned off the Turf by the Jockey Club and is a very serious punishment. We hope other people will make a note of it and not try in future to avoid the regulations.

Some big prices were obtained at Aldridge's Sales in July for Gundogs. 255 guineas, 205 guineas and 200 guineas were given for three Labrador retrievers. A brace of pointers were bought in at 600 guineas. There is money in well-trained gundogs but they must be well trained: a badly trained dog is only worth the price of a cartridge.

Grouse have been good in many parts of Scotland and very little disease has been reported.

Partridges are patchy, good stocks in some parts and bad in others.

Pheasants are reported to have done well.

October will be a very busy month for men who go in for Retriever Trials. There are meetings nearly every day in October and they go on into November.

Many Spaniel Trials are also arranged and this kind of sport is even more popular than it was before the war. It

Digitized by Google

is a good sign, as it shows that shooting men are taking more interest in the education of their dogs. A dog that has to be brought out on a chain is a disgrace to his owner.

We are indebted to Mr. J. C. Tunnard for the very nice picture of a man handling a Pointer and Setter on the Moors which is produced in this JOURNAL.

GERMANY

From Cologne Lieutenant Colonel Browne of the 14th Hussars sends the following particulars of the successes of the Regiment:—

Horse Show held by the American Army at Coblenz.

In the team event of the above Horse Show, open to the Armies of Occupation, the following represented the British Army of the Rhine, and were 1st, each officer receiving a Silver Cup:—

Name.	Horse.	Regiment.
Captain O. J. F. Fooks ...	Delight ...	14th King's Hussars.
Captain G. M. Hamer ...	Noreen ...	"
Lieut. C. C. Whadcoat ...	Fiddler ...	"
Lieut. A. R. Sturt ...	Madcap ...	"

14th King's Hussars.

Record of performances by competitors from the Regiment in the Inter-Allied Jumping Competition at the French Army Horse Show, held at Mainz:—

Name of Horse.	Rider.	Event.	Prize.	Faults.	No. of Competitors.
Delight- -	Capt. O. J. Fooks	Prix de Kostheim (1st Series).	6th	2	40
		Prix de Kastel (1st Series).	6th	6	23
		Prix de l'Ile des Sports (1st Series).	9th	7	22
		Prix du Rhin (Championship).	2nd	3	22
		Prix de Coupe de Mayence.	16th	7	39

Digitized by Google

Name of Horse.	Rider.	Event.	Prize.	Faults.	No. of Competitors.
Sea Count -	Capt. G. M. Hamer	Prix de Kostheim (2nd Series).	3rd	1	55
	Lt. A. R. Sturt -	Prix de Kastel (2nd Series).	8th	2	63
		Prix de l'Ile des Sports (2nd Series).	10th	5	26
		Prix du Rhin (Championship).	1st	1	22
		Prix de Coupe de Mayence.	11th	5	39
Fiddler -	Lt. C. C. Whadcoat	Prix de Kostheim (2nd Series).	2nd	0	55
		Prix de Kastel (2nd Series).	13th	4	63
		Prix de l'Ile des Sports (2nd Series).	5th	5	26
		Prix de Coupe de Mayence.	17th	9	39
Flighty -	Lt. A. R. Shurt -	Prix du Rhin (Championship).	5th	3	22
Noreen -	Capt. G. M. Hamer	Prix de Kostheim (2nd Series).	12th	2	55
		Prix du Rhin (Championship).	8th	4	22
		Prix de Coupe de Mayence.	10th	5	39
Madcap -	Lt. A. R. Sturt -	Prix de Consolation -	6th	4	32
		Prix de l'Ile des Sports (2nd Series).	11th	8	26
Flashy - -	Mrs. F. B. Hurndall	Ladies' Hacks.	2nd		
The Lobster	Lt. C. C. Whadcoat	Prix de Kostheim (2nd Series).	5th	2	55
White Mist -	Sgt. W. S. Dilley -	Prix du Main.	5th	3	40
Ramnugger -	Cpl. J Attfield -	Prix du Main.	17th	7	40
Whirl Wind -	Cpl. H. Brown -	Prix du Main.	20th	12	40

N.B.—Total Prizes won by the Regiment at the Show :— 14 Medals and Ribbons. 10 Highly Commended Ribbons. 4,000 Francs.

Palestine

From Surafend, Palestine, Captain Chalmers, K.D.G.s, writes as follows :—

I am afraid that there will not be any Sporting Notes from Palestine for this quarter. As you probably know, all British

Digitized by Google

units have left here and it is now under the Royal Air Force The 31st Lancers are the only old unit and they have left Semakh and are now at Surafend. Two Indian battalions (19th Punjabis and 103rd Mahrattas) have only just arrived in the country and, with all these changes, I am afraid it will be some time before the sporting element gets going.

Col. A. J. McNeill, C.B., D.S.O., of the British Gendarmerie, Ludd, Palestine, is the Master and huntsman of the Ludd Hunt, a pack which hunt the plains and sandy downs lying between the Jerusalem hills and Jaffa on the sea coast. The vineyards and groves around the Jewish colonies are, generally, a sure find for both fox and jackal. Col. McNeill took over the pack, which consists of eight couple, chiefly foxhounds, from the Highland Light Infantry, when he arrived out in Palestine last May. Major H. A. Waddington acts as whipper-in, and they hunt on Thursdays and Sundays, the kennels being situated at Surafend Camp, Ludd. The Hunt had a good season last year, when hounds accounted for fifty jackal and a fox.

Maharajah Sir Pratap Singh's death is a loss to the Empire, for the same qualities which placed him foremost in the chase ensured that he was a wise and loyal ruling Prince.

Printed by EYRE and SPOTTISWOODE, LTD., His Majesty's Printers, East Harding Street, E.C. 4.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

RETURN TO the circulation desk of any
University of California Library
or to the
NORTHERN REGIONAL LIBRARY FACILITY
Bldg. 400, Richmond Field Station
University of California
Richmond, CA 94804-4698

ALL BOOKS MAY BE RECALLED AFTER 7 DAYS
2-month loans may be renewed by calling
(415) 642-6233
1-year loans may be recharged by bringing books
to NRLF
Renewals and recharges may be made 4 days
prior to due date

DUE AS STAMPED BELOW

[redacted]

LIBRARY USE AUG 22 '86

DEC 24 1989

REC CIRC DEC 12 1989

Digitized by Google

YD 12992

M86379

UE1
C3
v.12

THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google